













Smith, Elder & Co. London

AN  
AUTO-BIOGRAPHICAL MEMOIR

OF

Petrus Borchardus Borchards, Esq.,

LATE

CIVIL COMMISSIONER OF CAPE DIVISION AND RESIDENT MAGIS-  
TRATE FOR CAPE TOWN AND DISTRICT THEREOF, AND  
CAPE DISTRICT.

BEING

A PLAIN NARRATIVE OF OCCURRENCES

FROM EARLY LIFE TO ADVANCED AGE,

CHIEFLY INTENDED FOR HIS CHILDREN AND DESCENDANTS,  
COUNTRYMEN AND FRIENDS.

CAPE TOWN:

A. S. ROBERTSON, ADDERLEY-STREET.

1861.

SAUL SOLOMON & CO., PRINTERS, CAPE TOWN

DEDICATED BY PERMISSION TO

SIR GEORGE GREY, K.C.B.,

GOVERNOR AND COMMANDER-IN-CHIEF AT THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE

AND

HIGH COMMISSIONER OF BRITISH KAFFRARIA, &c., &c., &c.,

WITH ESTEEM AND REGARD

BY HIS MOST HUMBLE AND OBEDIENT SERVANT,

P. B. BORCHERDS, Senior.





## P R E F A C E.

---

HAVING been spared to reach my seventy-first year, and to serve my native country as a civil servant for about fifty-six years, and being father of a family of

Children,     ...     ...     ...     ...	17
Grand-children,     ...     ...     ...	30
Great-grand-children,     ...     ...	10
Children-in-law by marriage,     ...	12
	<hr style="width: 20%; margin-left: auto; margin-right: 0;"/>
Total	69

with the prospect of leaving a numerous descendancy, and being as yet favoured with the partner of my life by my side since 1806, and enjoying a day of rest (having retired from the public service), and thank God! still in possession of the faculties of mind and body, I undertake the task of giving to posterity a plain account of my life, intermixed with such historical sketches as I may consider of some interest, partly from memory, partly from information, notes, and documents in my possession.

It will, I am confident, be gratifying to my family and friends and pleasing to myself to recall to mind remembrances of days long past, and give me opportunity of paying a tribute of gratitude to parents and valuable friends for the many acts of love and kindness and consideration which I have been favoured with, and especially of those friends to whom I am indebted for promotion in my public career and many blessings which have attended me through life.

It will afford me opportunity to recall to memory my early time, the companions of my youth, the happy days of home

and family circle, and the pleasures enjoyed amongst the villagers of that beautiful little town Stellenbosch, where up to my fifteenth year I spent my early days, free from the care and trouble which attend after-life.

It will further bring me back to the period when, under the auspices of Government, I had opportunity of seeing my native country, travelling to assist in exploring the interior beyond the Orange River and to open communication with various tribes of the bordering aborigines.

Moreover, it will lead me through the various occupations and employments of a public servant from 1801 to 1857, and leave room to communicate events and observations during the changes of Government and under the administration of twenty Governors and Lieutenant-Governors, and the public men with whom more or less I had the good fortune to come into contact, and to indicate how far I took a share in those institutions which were created to promote education, literature, and science in this colony.

Whilst planning so extensive a course over so wide a field and extending over a period of upwards of half a century, I feel almost discouraged; for my education was restricted to the limited advantages enjoyed by the colony in my youthful days,—days far less favourable and advantageous than the present, and not comparable with the enlarged scale established for mental improvement enjoyed by the youth of our day.

Indeed, it is only trusting that the good intent and object in view will be kindly considered that induces me to make the present attempt, hoping that He who has so mercifully guided me through life will not withhold the means and ability, so that my offspring may read with satisfaction this plain account of their ancestor, that my countrymen who, through their representatives in Parliament, were pleased to bestow on me a public testimonial and recognition of my past career when advanced years compelled my retirement from service, and my other friends may judge of my proceedings during an interesting course of public and private

life ; and my young fellow civil servants be taught that a strict adherence to duty continued with zeal and integrity, the colonial service ensures ample reward to those who will persevere and surmount obstacles and who are true and faithful to their task, and that the South African public feel and are capable of appreciating and estimating the public servant whose life has been devoted to their welfare and interest.

P. B. BORCHERDS, Senior.

Bellevue, Wynberg, January, 1858.



# CONTENTS OF MEMOIR.

---

## SECTION I.

### MY ANCESTRY.

Writer, when and where born—Parents—Ancestors—Rev. M. Borchers' appointment as Minister for the Cape—His voyage and arrival—Marriage and family—Appointment as Minister in Cape Town and afterwards at Stellenbosch—Additional duties—Pension—Death—Mrs. Borchers' demise—The burial and ceremony—Effect of their loss—feeling of the parish—His state of mind after her death—Causes which led to leave his native country and seek foreign employment—Effect of a fire in his family mansion—Government letters approving of his conduct as Minister—Course of his study—Descriptions of the fire in his mother's house—Original note thereof and his mother's distress—His doctrine and general character—Sociality—Principles—Learning—Love of poetry—His framing the family register—Contributions to the Cape press—His poem "De Maan" (The Moon)—His acting as secretary and preses of the Synod—Presentation of a silver vase by his congregation after forty years' service—Prayer on the last birthday of Mrs. Borchers—Number of his family—Duties performed—Sums collected—His salary—Prayer and thanksgiving in June, 1830—Barend Borchers, a heemraad, supposed to be the ancestor of the family Burgers—Origin of the family Borchers—Family arms—Comparative description of his native country—Last production—Depression of spirits—Origin of the family de Wit or White—The maternal ancestor—Employment and situation of Mr. de Wit, the grandfather—His connection with the English—Loss of family papers. . . . . Page 1

## SECTION II.

## DAYS OF CHILDHOOD AND BOYHOOD.

Village school—Schoolmaster and parish clerk—Author's elementary instruction—Parish school described—Extent of instruction—Object—Duties of parish clerk—His cleanliness and habit of teaching it—Failure of appearing with clean shoes—First and only punishment—Schoolmistress—Her cakes—The master's birthday—Scholars' expression of gratitude—Meeting of school-fellows on play-ground—Bathing in Eerste River—Canary birds gathering in front of the school—Reflection on happy days of boyhood—Family trip to Overberg (over the mountains)—The ancestor of the Theunissen family—Sunday service under trees—Bontebuck excursion—Shooting an ostrich—Good effect of the pastor's visit—Difficulty of reaching church—One matrimonial court only in Cape Town—Inconvenience of reaching that court—How composed—Questions put to parties—Ceremony—Arrival of English fleet in 1795—Signal guns—Effect at Stellenbosch—Departure of the burghers—Numbers of their companies and men—Distress of their families—Arrival of families from Cape Town to seek refuge—Annual exercise of the burghers—Cavalry—Kermis (fair)—Visit of Governor and authorities and others from town to witness the parade—Refreshments—Description of a burgher officer mounted and in uniform—Visit of Swellendam burghers—Effect of martial spirit on the boys—Capitulation and particulars—Disturbed state of the colony in 1795—Difficult position of Mr. Commissary Sluysken—Complaints of the burghers—Names of members of court of policy. . . . . Page 18

## SECTION III.

## TRAVELS TO INTERIOR OF AFRICA.

Author leaves home—Employment as assistant secretary to a Government expedition to explore the interior of South Africa—Kind conduct of Commissioners Truter and Somerville and Secretary Daniel—Publication of plates by the latter—Departure from Cape Town with six wagons—Outfit

—Merchandize sorted by Mr. G. A. Watermeyer—Expense of the expedition—Journey from Cape Town to the boundary—Route—Occurrences when travelling—Description of Roodesand (now Tulbagh)—Present Worcester—Hex River's Kloof—A troop of baboons—Violent storm—Stay at a shoemaker's at Verkeerde Valley—Kindness of Field-cornet Jacobs and his wife—Intense cold—Entering the Karoo—Difference of country—Oxen strayed—Preparations made by Landdrost of Stellenbosch—Meeting Messrs. Wium and Verster—Disappointments—Desire from author's father for his return—His reasons for proceeding with commissioners—Roggeveltsberg unoccupied—Inhabitants had left for the Karoo to save their flocks—Addition of another wagon—Six farmers joined to guide and protect expedition—Suffering from cold and rain—Fishing in Riet River—Description of the fish—Success and cooking—First tracks of a lion—Leaving Great and proceeding to Little Riet River—Two farmers joined—Description of country passed—Bokkeveld—Inhabitants—Places—Remarks or manners, productions, &c.—Custom of farmers moving from Rogge and Bokkeveld to Karoo in winter—Descriptions of habitations—Mountains passed—Appearance of country—Ascending Roggeveltsberg—Description—Appearance of land beyond—Heaths—Mode of living—General character and occupation of inhabitants—Manners—Religious disposition—Roggeveld then belonging to Stellenbosch—Commandoes—Annual disposal of cattle and produce—Butchers' servants—Dress of farmers—Their happy state—Disposition—Want of education and information—Peace with Bushmen—Privations—Reaching boundary. . . . . Page 41

## SECTION IV.

### ROUTE FROM BOUNDARY TO LETAKO.

Route and distances—Nieuweveld—Missionary station—Sack River—First meeting with Bushmen—Description of their conduct—First quacha shot—Description—Kruger's grave—Another visit from Bushmen—Their conduct—Presents—

First track of the rhinoceros—First springbucks seen—Approach to Orange River—Ford—Sensations on seeing the river—Description of banks—Islands—Fish—Hippopotamus—Pebbles, &c.—Birds—Monkeys—Springhaas—Squirrel—Joined by Missionary Edwards and Jacob Kruger—Sir John Barrow's description of the latter—Sheep carried across the River by Bushmen—Their conduct—Author's attempt to swim across the river—Nearly drowned—His life saved by a Bushman—Preparation to cross the ford—Excursion to shoot hippopotami—Description of meeting some and scenery—Danger on crossing the country through holes dug to catch game—Grave of a Bushman Captain—Custom in passing it—The ford crossed—One wagon in danger—Oxen drowned—Assistance of Bushmen—White crows—First Kora or Korannah Captain—List of words in their language—Rock salt—Presents to Koras—Camp of Bastard Hottentots under a farmer Jan Kok—His discourse on regeneration—Arrival at Rietfontein—Missionary station—Church and service—Names of missionaries—Engagement of two interpreters in the Beriqua or Boshuana language—Departure—Dr. Somerville and Mr. Daniel missed—Uneasiness in consequence—Visit to cave of red earth mixed with iron ore—Used by natives as pigment—Camp at Yzerberg—Effect on compass needle—Lake Cossey—Description—First buffaloes met—Three shot—Also a wild cat—Detention—First camelopard met—Also a strange buck named Tazectzie—Arrival at a fountain Klaboeligani, after thirty hours' travelling without water—Effect on men and animals—Approach to Patant,—Chief Serakoetie—Opening intercourse with Boshuanahs—First meeting of these people—Their cheerful conduct—Real name of the tribe—Visit of chief Serakoetie—Entertained—His admiration of tents, wagons, and particularly of the art of shaving—Applied to himself at his own request—Anecdote—Description of his person—Secretary discovers the source of the Kuruman—Description of stream—Thunderstorm and hail—Kameeldoorn (*Mimosa Giraffe*).—Articles of trade exhibited to Serakoetie—Presents given—Guide left by Serakoetie—First missionary station founded at Mapiri, near Rev. Mr. Moffat's



present station—Intelligence received of Chief Molihaban's intention to give favourable reception—Commissioners proceeded unarmed with interpreter to that chief, and well received—Arrival at Letako—Camp—Molihaban's visit—Description—Surprise of the people—Appearance in arms—Author's detention to satisfy curiosity of the natives—Goes by the name of "Piti"—Object of expedition opened to Molihaban—Narrative of attack of Jan Blom on the Boshuanahs—Cruelties committed—The merchandize sorted found not suitable to the taste—Beads only selected—Agreement made about traffic cattle—Camp visited by a wolf—First Gallah buck shot—Description—Ruins of a large town near Letako—Gardens—Extent and population of town—Barrolongs—Molihaban's objection to further proceeding—His reasons—Number of cattle bartered—Departure—Presents left—Kind expression of natives on leaving—Return by natives of strayed cattle—Toy or Touw young native—Molihaban's sociability—Proceeding to Patani—Agnu shot, materially differing from the common description—Hottentot wounded by lion—Departure from Patani—Parasols of feathers—Lonely situation of Missionary Edwards and family—Rencontre with three buffaloes—Superintendent Scholtz severely injured—Narrow escape of secretary—On returning, the distance of thirty hours' travelled without water crossed in seventeen—First black rhinoceros killed—Description—And the second a white—Also three blue eland (elk) antelope—Complaints against marauders Africander and Stephanus (a Pole)—Entertained—Assistance required—Resolution to proceed to Koks kraal—Discharge of the farmers—Failure of expedition communicated to Government—Merchandize exchanged for cattle to lighten wagons—Fish caught in Orange River—Kora herds—Their singing—Loxia nests—Arrival at ford T'Keys—Crossing five islands—Rising of river—Destruction escaped—Meeting of Danzer, a Kafir captain—His narrative of Africander's cruelty—Arrival of Bastard Hottentots to attack Africander—Chapel of Stephanus—His doctrine—Arrival at Koks kraal—Expedition against Africander—His cruelties towards the Namaquas—Alarm about Africander—Project to return by Hantam

failed—Writer mounted on a pack-ox—Meeting of four sea-cows—Reception at a Kafir kraal—Gathering of locusts by Bushmen—Honesty of Kora's character—Plan of secretary and writer to kill sea-cows—Failure and loss of route—Absence of three days and two nights—Suffering—Reception at a Bushman kraal—Narrow escape—Reception at the camp—Bushmen beating the "rommelpot"—Presents to them—Departure from Orange River—Return to old route—Bushmen treated with a sheep—Their joy—Mode of dividing—State of privation—Karrie Mountains—Meeting of Rev. Mr. Kieherer at former missionary station—Eland shot—Hottentots paid off—Dr. Somerville left for Cape Town on horseback—Garden at Tanqua River—Schurfdeberg—Government letters received to come to town and leave the wagons in charge—Description of Mr. Scholtz—His habitation in the mountain—Witzenberg—First sight of Table Mountain—Kind reception of Mr. de Wet, at Roodezand—Of Mr. Vos at Maastricht—Wagons overturned—Arrival in town—Return to Stellenbosch—Reception of parents and family—Sir John Barrow—Report and accounts—Final return to Stellenbosch—Saving of twenty-five pounds. . . . Page 59

## SECTION V.

ON BUSHMEN—BASTARD HOTTENTOTS—KORAS OR KORANAHS—  
BERIQUAS OR BOSHUANAHS.

Bushmen—Their country—Wandering life—Huts—Small stature—Appearance—Clothing in karosses—Appearance of females—Weapons—Making poisoned arrows—Occupation—Pursuit—Suffering of females—Mode of obtaining food—Means to check hunger—Gluttony—Smoking—Fat smearing and drinking—Signal of peace—Music—Deep poverty—Fighting—Favourable instances of character—No religion—Property of bee-hives—Bastard Hottentots—Orange River—Its course—Borders—Production—Capability—Settlement of these people and independence—Origin of the race—Dress—Superiority—Koranah servants—Cattle—Chief subsistence—Sport—Chief Cornelis Kok—His property in sheep

—Policy about Bushmen—Mode of living—Religious habits—Power—Korahs or Koranahs—Their resemblance to Hottentots—Habits—Taking service—Division in small hordes—Government—Food of berries, milk, honey, &c.—Polygamy—Mode of carrying children—Original tribe—Contented disposition—Imposition on them by Stephanus—His doctrine—Missionary labour—Beriquas or Boshuanahs—Description of men—Dress—Ornaments—Snuff-taking—Copper earrings—Plates—Armings—Weapons—Occupation—Warriors—Hunters—Use of kerrie—Milk bottle—Karosses made by men—Their attachment as herdsmen to cattle—Wood and earthen pots—Severe task of the women—Their dress—Headdresses—Cultivating gardens—Grinding corn—Cheerful disposition—Snuff-taking—Feasts—Singing—Song—Dancing—Fire lighting—Kind-heartedness—Young companions—Effect of report of fire-arms—Horses—Area of town—Effect of first visit—Vocabulary—Reverend Mr. Moffat's missionary establishment—Progress of natives—Favourable impression left by the chief—His mode of commanding—His advice on proceeding further into the country—Regret of commissioners not being able to visit the Barrolongs—Parting from Chief Molihaban. . Page 109

## SECTION VI.

Writer's return to Stellenbosch—Rejoining office—Description and early history of that village and district—Situation—Distance from Cape Town—Establishment by Governor Van der Stell—Origin of name—First heemraden (councillors)—Their duty—Early population—First landdrost—Secretary and messenger—Undertaker—Introduction of taxes—Annual fare—Exercise of arms—Mark-shooting at parrot—Drilling Master—First corn mill—Fishing under licence—Commonage—First churchwardens—Election of heemraden—First parish clerk and schoolmaster—Planting of trees recommended—Original name "Wild Bush"—Snow on mountains—Effect of snow on orange trees—Fruitful soil—Trees—Vine—Vineyards productive—Variety of fruits—Healthy climate—Supply of water—Waterfall—River's benefit to village and

places—Population of village in 1825—Streets—Squares—Public buildings—Opening of church and school for slaves, now coloured people—Early establishment of missionaries in the colony and village—Contributions—Number of slaves in Cape Town—Desire to know the early history of the village—Events from 1670—1718—Disturbance by a rebel, Barbier—Share taken by inhabitants—Measures of Government—Robberies of Bushmen—Humane instructions about natives—Hottentot Titus cause of disturbance—Commando ordered—Representation of landdrost and heemraden on the distressed state and poverty of inhabitants in 1709—Expense of commando paid by district—Meeting of Governor Swellengrebel and his address and advice to the authorities—Effect thereof—Governor-General van Imhoff's visit—His remark on ignorance and indifference about religion in the country—Proposal to add two churches—At Roodezand (now Tulbagh) and Zwartland (now Malmesbury)—His anxiety to improve moral condition—Transport of produce—Navigation of Berg River—Extent of country required in 1745—Additional heemraden—Establishment of Swellendam—General history required—1747, a day of fasting and prayer ordered—Arrival of prisoners of state from India—Their residence at Stellenbosch—Purchase of parsonage at Paarl—Opinion against increase of population—Comparison—Price of meat—Appearance of leprosy—Poverty of inhabitants in 1757—Difficulties—Drostdy house burnt down—Small-pox appeared—Precaution of Government in 1812—Introduction of vaccine—Village threatened with destruction by overflow of Eerste River—Measures taken—Prices of provisions in 1769—Limits between Stellenbosch and Swellendam fixed—Drunken husband punished by enlistment as a soldier and sent to Batavia—Building of powder magazine—Origin of law about passes—Occupation of land by Kafirs contrary to treaty—Report of a commando—Capture of cattle and division—Proposal to build a bridge over Berg River in 1782—Establishment of Graaff-Reinet—Consideration on the introduction of taxes—Application of inhabitants of Roggeveld to occupy certain Hottentot kraals rejected—Authority to deprive vagrant natives of arms

—Amount of district revenue—Incursions of Bushmen—Landdrosts ordered to meet commander of garrison on means of defence—Plan of erecting public schools—Colony in charge of Mr. Commissary A. J. Sluysken—Law to execute slaves in the country, when disabling themselves, with capital punishment, retracted—A slave executed at Stellenbosch under authority of landdrost and heemraden—Reasons given—Last resolution of the board in 1795—Circumstances when the English fleet arrived—Resignation of Landdrost Bletterman—Introduction. . . . . Page 135

## SECTION VII.

State of the colony in 1795—Surrender to the British—Effect—Oath of fidelity taken—Duty of landdrost—Letter to board—Settling of public matters—Arrival of Dutch fleet in Saldanha Bay—Requisition of wagons and cattle—Thanks of Governor Craig to heemraden—Hottentots turbulent in Namaqualand—Capture of five farms—Murder and robbery committed—Field-cornet ordered to assemble inhabitants to resist—Orders to prevent cruelty and obtain peace—Desired effect of the commando—Retirement of disturbers to Orange River—Report of Africander's murders and robberies revived, and his retirement with a body to said river—Commando ordered—Tumultuous commotions at Graaff-Reinet—Force dispatched—Twenty inhabitants arrested—Governor's views—Public peace preserved in the district—General Dundas' personal visit to frontier—Remarks on his proceeding—Attacks of Kafirs and Hottentots—Commandos from Swellendam and Stellenbosch—Fifty whites murdered near Swartkop's River—Progress of enemy—Zuurveld abandoned—Government letter on murders and robberies committed—Commando from Stellenbosch ordered under Mr. J. G. Cloete, commandant—Sensation at their departure—Dragoons stationed for protection of inhabitants—Africander continues to disturb—Reports of further murder of a family in Roggeveld and disturbance in Hantam—Commando authorized—Murder of Cornelis Coetzee by his own slaves and Hottentots, and extensive plunder—Pursuit—

Report of Field-cornet Kruger—Wheat collected for British garrison and expected Batavian troops—Peace in Europe—Colony to be returned to the Dutch—Kafirs and vagrants—Advanced as far as Plettenberg's Bay—Commando ordered—Reverend Mr. Borchers' remarks and comparison—Close of British administration—Prosperity enjoyed in the village—State of religion—Introduction of printing press—Effect of proclamation that the colony was restored to the Dutch—Peace of Amiens—Relief of oath—Advice of Commissary-General de Mist against patrolling, for fear and apprehension about the Hottentots, and his views—Cession of colony suspended—Reception of order—Measures adopted by British commanders—Agreement between them and the Dutch governor and commissary general—Dutch garrison encamped near Wynberg—English troops re-occupy castle and barracks—Orders to proceed with cession received—English troops embark—Writer on the point of leaving parental roof—Intention to make some remarks about the village previous to departure. . . . . Page 162

## SECTION VIII.

### DESCRIPTION AND OBSERVATIONS RELATIVE TO STELLENBOSCH.

The old parsonage—Description thereof—Good feeling of parishioners—Writer's parents—His happy position—Family proceedings and mode of living—Church—Sabbath service—Baptismal and marriage ceremonies—Catechism—Closing of service—Slaves, their instruction—Form of confirmation—Admission of coloured people—Election of ministers—Poor children—Drostdy house—Public buildings—Extra allowance to landdrost for entertainment—Duties of former landdrosts—Board of landdrost and heemraden—Finance—Jurisdiction—Secretary—Field-cornets—Messenger—Police—Writer's respect for the board—Meeting of the board—Their mode of proceeding—Selection of heemraden—Matrimonial court—Marriage by that court made legal—Repeal of authority—Order to be solemnized by ministers—Registry of marriage continued—Scenes in the matrimonial court—

Description of inhabitants—Classification—Affluence—Tenacity of rank—Hospitality—Establishment of young beginners—Maintenance of rights—Family government—Usual habits, Bible and religious books—Family instruction to slaves—Opinion on slavery—Power of punishing slaves—Opinion on corporal punishment—Comparison of former and present system—Homes of respectable families—Family scenes—Society of Stellenbosch—Excursions in the vicinity—To Waterfall—Description thereof—Anecdote of danger caused by baboons—Hottentots' Holland—Visit to Strand—Pic-nic—Zandvliet—Kindness of people—Fishing—Mr. H. Cloete, of Nooitgedacht—His hospitality, &c.—Danger of child carried by a baboon—Description of a morning and evening scene—Remark on the foundation of the village—Its original inhabitants—Reference to village pastor—Summer morning—Conversation—Paternal lessons—Dawn of day—Continuation of lessons—Rising of the sun—Religious remarks and observations—Feelings between parent and child—Winter evening—Fatherly lessons continued—Beauty of winter days—Production of flowers, &c.—Feelings about the country—Family altar—Lessons to a lad closing his fifteenth year—Evening hymn—On closing the day—Writer's farewell to village. . . . . Page 176

## SECTION IX.

Preparation for profession—Change of destiny—Appointment as amanuensis and clerk in the office of the Court of Justice—Constitution of Batavian court—Act of amnesty for political offences—Opportunity to obtain legal knowledge—Employment in Governor's office—Performance of burgher duty—Reception of colours—Ceremony on the occasion—Militia duties—Secretary to board of discipline—Uniform—Preparation to join battle at Blueberg—Close of martial occupations—Hospitality of grandmother and uncle—Her death—Description of former appearance of Keyzers and Heerengracht—Sociality—Habits—Newspapers—Hospitality of residents in vicinity of Cape Town—Government garden—Public amusements—

Society-house—Mode of living—Church attendance—Holy Sacrament—Appearance of Reformed Church—Police and Municipal bodies—Garrison—Government—Town and country establishments—Events on return of the colony to the Dutch in 1803—Day of public thanksgiving ordered—Engagement of Hottentot servants—Support of burgher senate—Report of General Janssens about the interior—Establishment of Society “Tot nut van ’t Algemeen”—First apprehension of disturbance of peace in Europe—Preparations for defence—Principles of burgher duty—Military execution—Rumours of war—Two Government places, “Rustenburg and Paradys” offered for sale—General release of Kafir servants—Commissary General visits the interior—General’s address to inhabitants to co-operate in defence—Limits of Swellendam, Uitenhage, and Graaff-Reinet fixed—Four Bushmen killed—Investigation—Damage to waterpipes—Enlistment in militia corps in town—British subjects ordered to Stellenbosch—Caution—Signals established—Wagonpark—Requisition of forage—Powder magazine at Swellendam—General’s plan to occupy the interior—Paper currency—Plantation of wood encouraged—Commissary-General’s farewell address and departure—Desertion of Hottentots—Attack—Burghers killed—Educational establishment—Law about missionaries—Foundation stone of water reservoir on Parade—Post-wagon to Stellenbosch—School ordinance—Scarcity of wheat—Governor’s queries to notables on state of the colony—Church regulations—First post-wagon started—Ordinance for country districts—Requisition for forage at low prices—Voluntary supply of wheat by inhabitants—Last slave sale—First intelligence of an English fleet—Contingent of Hottentots ordered for military service—Arrival of English fleet—Preparations for defence—Strength of land force—Detachment to Blaauwberg—Movements and march of Dutch troops to field of battle—Account thereof—Retreat of regiment of Waldek—Strength before and after battle—General Janssens’ retirement to Hottentots’ Holland mountains—Correspondence with the English General—Honourable capitulation of town and



country—Loss in battle—Strength of British force—March into town—Writer's continuation in office—Close of Dutch Government—Account of Van Riebeeck the founder of the colony. . . . . Page 229

## SECTION X.

Van Riebeeck—Writer's object—First settlement—Van Riebeeck's first arrival at the Cape—His representation to settle the colony—His considerations and suggestions—Teaching native language and religion—His proceeding in three vessels under special instructions—Arrival—Term of service—Chief object of settling—His zeal—Desire to be removed—His salary—Closing of his service and council's opinion—Departure—One of his sons (Cape-born) Governor-General of India—Memorandum left for successor—Names of tribes—Recommendation to keep peace with the natives—Van Riebeeck's character—Religious inclination—Annual celebration of the day of landing—Fasting and prayer—Stringent regulations—Introduction of religion—Eva, a Hottentot girl, taught by Mr. Van Riebeeck—Her account of the reception of religious instruction by the Hottentots—First admission of natives to a prayer meeting—Encouragement to instruct slaves—Mode of opening communication with the natives—Trade—Cruel advice by a Hottentot Captain, Harry—Van Riebeeck's observation on seeing thousands of cattle and sheep—His declining to join in wars—Estimation of Van Riebeeck's services by Commissary-General de Mist in 1803—Introduction of his coat of arms at Town-house—Ceremony on the occasion. . . . . Page 262

## SECTION XI.

General Baird's first proceeding—Warning against warfare—Mr. Van Ryneveld appointed chief civil magistrate—His proceedings—Sorrow expressed on his death—Burial—General character—Writer's proceeding to Stellenbosch after the capitulation—Sir David Baird's peaceable disposition—

Noble expression regarding General Janssens' troops—Capitulation of garrison—Writer continuing as clerk under the British Court of Justice—Promotion—Duties—Notarial practice—Marriage—Customs and ceremonies on the occasion—Day of marriage—Decorations—Kindness of relatives—Feeling after union of nearly fifty-two years—Case of insurrection of slaves in 1808—Detail—Meeting of an old friend—Promotion to secretaryship of Stellenbosch—Happy result—Lord Caledon's opinion on the promotion—Public events between 1806 and 1810—Sir David Baird's departure—Addresses to His Excellency—Supreme medical committee—Evening gun loaded with shot—Reward offered to find the offender—Arrival of Lord Caledon and Secretary Barnard—Court of Appeal and Vice-Admiralty Court appointed—Encouragement to wool-growers—First wagon with wool arrived in town—Lombard and Discount Bank—Rds. 150,000 advanced—Appointment of Mr. Van Ryneveld as president, and Mr. J. A. Truter as Fiscal—Establishment of Cape district—Pardon to all deserted slaves—Hottentot contracts introduced—Promotion as Deputy Fiscal—Departure from Stellenbosch—Effect of change of office—Disappointment and subsequent increase of salary—Close occupation—Extra duty—Secretary to Commission of Inquiry—Sir John Truter chairman—First intimacy with him—Appointment as member of a committee to frame general placaat—Promotion as member of the Court of Justice—Sir John's letter on the occasion—Judge on two circuits—Appointment as permanent Sitting Commissioner—Jurisdiction—Appointment as Judge of Police—Justice of the Peace—Commissioner of Matrimonial Court—And Court of Request for Slaves. Page 282

## SECTION XII.

Writer continued as Judge of Police and Resident Magistrate till May, 1834—Sir Benjamin D'Urban's communication that offices of Civil Commissioner and Resident Magistrate were to be united—Salary of £800, reduced to £500, with house-rent and travelling allowance—Judge of Police separated from magistracy—Increase of duty and responsi-

bility—Nature of the same—Retirement and pension offered—Service continued—£100 house-rent allowed—Effect of reduction—Hope of redress—Secretary of State admitted that the measure pressed severely—Hope given on improvement of colonial finances—In reply to Sir Benjamin's dispatch representing the case most strongly to favourable consideration—Second memorial—Case again and urgently recommended—The Secretary of State's deep impression of the hardship of the case and strongest wish to afford relief, but no redress—Third memorial—Earnest recommendation of Governor to favourable consideration—Secretary of State's answer—No redress—Painful position—Retired life—Promotion sought—Memorial noted—Application for only £100—Sir George Napier's favourable despatch—After attempts unsuccessful—Account with Government—Result and effect—Application to Lieutenant-Governor Darling, to ascertain pension—Writer's gratitude for being spared—Reason for recapitulation—Parliamentary grant of gratuity of £2,000. . . . . Page 314

### SECTION XIII.

Lieutenant-Governor Darling's despatch forwarding writer's memorial for favourable consideration—His Honour's opinion of service performed—Reference to Parliament—Motion in House of Assembly—Opinion of the House—Message of Lieutenant-Governor—Motion in Legislative Council—Resolution adopted—His Honour's reply by message—Addresses forwarded to Secretary of State—Sir George Grey's message to House of Assembly calling attention to Mr. Borchers' case—Gratuity granted—Allowed by Legislative Council—Sir Andries Stockenstrom—Sir John Wylde—The Honourable Godlonton and Ebdon's speeches in support—Address to his Excellency the Governor to place the gratuity on the estimates—His Excellency's message in return—Letter from Colonial Office, placing the grant at disposal—The Governor's opinion—Reply thereto—Additional duty as acting judge and superintendent of police—Indisposition—Medical opinion—Application for retirement after fifty-six

years' service—Governor's reply granting request—Full pension of £600 allowed—Notice thereof in *Government Gazette*—Reply—Resignation as chairman of Central Road Board—Appointment as unofficial member—Situations still held—Subscription for a piece of plate as a testimonial—Names of committee—Inscription—Presentation by Attorney-General at a public meeting and address—Writer's reply—Expression of feeling—His object in publishing this memoir. . . . . Page 322

#### SECTION XIV.

Report that the coloured classes intended to attack the white population—Writer's appointment as one of the commissioners of inquiry—Instruction to commissioners—Proceedings—Result—Report—Letter of thanks—Kafir War Fund—Public meeting—Proceedings—Sir Andries Stockenström's speech—Lieutenant-Governor Darling's letter on writer's election as chairman and course pursued—Government letter on returning the fund—Appointment as chairman of Commission of Inquiry on Robben Island affairs—Commissioners' report and suggestions—Letters of thanks. . . . . Page 347

#### SECTION XV.

Appointment as chairman of Central Road Board—Address at first meeting—Board's proceeding on the occasion—Commissioned by Lieutenant-Governor to open Bain's Pass—Account thereof—Board's arrival at the Paarl—Address to the meeting—Naming Wellington Bridge by Mrs. Borchers—Arrival at Wellington—Proceedings on visiting and naming Bain's Pass—Address on the occasion and proceedings beyond—Naming Darling Bridge—Speeches on the occasion by Captain Pilkington and others—Account of the visit at Worcester—Return tour—Inspection of roads to Karoo Poort—Opening of Breda's and Grey's Bridges—Inspection of road to Clanwilliam by Piketberg and Pike-nierskloof (now Grey's Pass)—Site of bridge over Berg River—Position of Road Board in 1855—Ceasing of board in

1858 under Act of Parliament—Governor's thanks—Writer's appointment as member of Road Commission—And closing of that board on the 31st December, 1858. . Page 371

## SECTION XVI.

Case in Magistrate's Court—Opinion of the press on postponements—Writer's explanation—First election of members of the House of Assembly—Election as chairman—Proceedings of the meeting, and closing address—Opinion of Honourable Mr. Justice Watermeyer when advocate in writer's case—Sir Andries Stockenström's speech in council on the same subject—Documents to which Sir Andries referred. . Page 414

## SECTION XVII.

Writer's removing from Town to Wynberg—Building Bellevue, on Wynberg Hill—Description—Feelings after retirement from service—The Golden Wedding Day kept and described—Congratulatory Poem of Mr. Suasso de Lima—Presentation of gilt silver cup and salver—Inscription—Distribution of medals among the children—Description of table and decorations—Guests—Silver vase presented to Reverend M. Borchers—Reverend A. Faure's address and Reverend Dr. P. E. Faure's congratulatory poem—Presents of fruit, &c., received from kind friends—And proceedings of the day. Page 450

## SECTION XVIII.

Mrs. Borchers' death and funeral at Wynberg—Reverend Doctor Faure's address on burial-ground. . Page 472

## SECTION XIX.

### TRIBUTE OF GRATITUDE.

To parents and friends for their kindness and love, and several gentlemen for the interest shown in writer's welfare and progress in public and private life—Conclusion—Observations on writing this Auto-biographical Memoir. Page 477



# AUTO-BIOGRAPHICAL MEMOIR, &c.

---

## CHAPTER I.

### SECTION I.

I WAS born in Cape Town on the 8th of July, 1786, at the house of my grandmother, the widow of Petrus Johannes de Wit, formerly a member of the court of matrimonial and petty civil cases, orphan board, and burgher senate. Her maiden name was Aletta Jacoba Blanckenberg. The house itself is situate at the corner of Adderley and Darling-streets, and now belongs to Mr. Alexander McDonald.

My parents were the Reverend Meent Borchers, a minister of the Dutch Reformed Church, and Aletta Jacoba de Wit. He was born at Jemgum, a village in East Frisia, on the 3rd September, 1762, being the junior of the family: his father was Borchardus Borchers, and his mother, Titia Kempen. My mother was born in Cape Town on the 31st May, 1762.

My father completed his studies in theology at Groningen, and received the appointment of minister for the Cape, from the Honourable the Dutch East India Company, in 1784; and left his mother-country on the 22nd December, 1784, in the Dutch East India Company's vessel, *Het Meeuwkje* (Little Sea-gull), and

arrived here on the 19th April, 1785. On the 13th of May, 1785, he was appointed as third minister to the Dutch Reformed Church in Cape Town; and on the 4th September following, he married, and the issue of that union was three sons and seven daughters.

Being weak in constitution, he applied to be removed to the country, and the governor and council granted his request. His delivery and voice were better suited for a small church, and his inclination led him to prefer a quiet country life to town; and on the 17th September, 1786, he received his appointment as minister at Stellenbosch, with the happy result that he officiated in that parish, and occasionally, in addition, at the Paarl, and what is now known as Somerset (Hottentots' Holland), under special appointments of Government, consecutively until 9th December, 1830, when his faculties of mind and body sunk, and Government was moved to grant him, as emeritus, a pension of £300, under the twenty-sixth section of the Church Ordinance, which he continued to enjoy until it pleased his Heavenly Father to summon him to leave this earthly abode, and exchange it, I hope and trust, for the regions of the blessed. This happened on the 28th of February, 1832. He was buried at Stellenbosch in the same vault with my dear mother (who had departed this life on the 12th of October, 1830), deeply regretted by children and friends, and the congregation for whom he had laboured upwards of forty-four years.

His mortal remains were, previous to interment, carried, by members of his congregation, before the pulpit which he had filled so many years, together with the remains of one of his dear friends, the wife of his



successor, the Reverend Tobias Herold, who departed this life at the same time. The pulpit was covered with mourning; and the Reverend Abraham Faure, now a minister in Cape Town, who had enjoyed many lessons from him previous to leaving for Europe in pursuit of his studies, and whom the deceased minister was wont to speak of as his young Timothy, delivered a most affecting funeral address, suitable to the solemn occasion, to a large number of the congregation; and when this mournful ceremony was closed, both coffins were carried to the vault, followed by the afflicted family and friends, and deposited a few yards behind the church, where, for some time, stood the bereaved, to take a last farewell glance at the remains of the departed: the sombre and last abode was then closed, and embosomed these reverend and beloved members of the congregation. The village appeared as if in mourning, and long afterwards, even up to this day, their memories are kindly remembered and respected among those who knew them, and shared in their social and religious intercourse. My father had confirmed many as members of the church, had joined almost all the couples then living in the happy union of matrimony, and had administered to all the sacred sacraments. These sacred duties had engendered, on the part of his parishioners, feelings of no ordinary attachment; and the endearing appellation by which he was usually known among them, for many years, was "*Father Borchers*."

It happened when my poor mother suddenly died, that he was in Cape Town. During his absence, she had visited my sister Anna, who married Mr. Hendrik Cloete, Dirk's son, and resided at Mariendahl, near

Klapmuts, where she expired. The notice of her death was received by my father with apparent calmness and resignation ; but soon after, deprived of her who so many years had faithfully and affectionately shared life with him, his feelings were overpowered : it showed itself by deep grief and despondency. Some were of opinion that medical treatment might have prevented that result, for it was clear that, when attacked occasionally, a termination of blood towards the brain operated, and caused despair and lowness of spirit ; but I am inclined to believe that, previous to my mother's death, the mind was predisposed to a sombre view of matters ; for, in the beginning of 1830, he believed that he was suddenly to be removed from his parish. However, the Secretary to Government (now Sir John Bell) kindly wrote to him, and relieved his apprehension.

On referring sometimes to his native country, he used to mention how melancholy events had led to his choice of leaving for the Cape. His father was in the mercantile profession, and in good circumstances, when part of his property was suddenly lost by the overflowing of the river Eems during the night ; the grandmother was thus left in reduced circumstances, but from the little she saved the expense of my father's studies were met, and when he was near the completion of his course a fire broke out and deprived her of all. When ordained, he left her then at the age of sixty years and a poor widow, with the view of contributing to her support by seeking foreign employment ; and he was gratified in being enabled to send her from hence some support. But she did not enjoy it long. Many were the narratives and particulars of these melancholy events, and in commu-

nicating them to us in the family circle, my father was at times overwhelmed by the feeling and affection he entertained for his beloved and bereaved mother.

I have found letters of Government approving of his conduct and pastoral care, when he received an increase of income ; and expressing regret at the circumstances which caused his ceasing to officiate.

After his first examination, in 1783, in the classis, he became candidate, and in the same year he passed his second examination at Embden, and obtained his *licentia concionandi* of the Royal Prussian East Frisia Consistory ; and he was expecting to be appointed in the neighbourhood of Groningen, when a single spark, which originated an extensive fire in the place of his nativity, determined his fate and choice. Amongst the forty-four buildings destroyed, was the house of his aged sexagenarian mother. He was at that moment in church at Leer, under the audience of Professor Chevalier ; on receipt of the disastrous intelligence, he drove off to the spot, and the following is a part of the original note he made, which shows the affection he felt for his distressed parent :

“ I left the vehicle and ran with all possible speed to my parental home ; the front stood, but the back part, commonly called the *schuur* (store), was burnt to the ground ! I ran through the few rooms left and found no human being ; but to my consolation, my small library had escaped, and the room in which I studied had hardly suffered any damage, but a store with cloth and other manufactures, which formed the means of livelihood to my family, was much damaged, and in many spots of the lower part (for the house was double-storied) I saw the

fire smothering. A deadly silence and solitude prevailed now in the house, which I had left so cheerfully the same morning ; but out of doors the noise was so much the more awful, from the lamentations of the unfortunate sufferers in the neighbourhood, which arose from the burning ruins of their burnt habitations, and the shouting of some hundreds of people working at the fire engines about one hundred yards distant, attempting to arrest the progress of the fire. I also recollect distinctly to have heard the crushing of the gables and other parts of the destroyed buildings ; it was then about ten o'clock at night, and dark ; but beams, burning in full flames, and several other ignited objects, afforded sufficient light to distinguish everything at that scene of misery.

“No person, however, could inform me what had become of my aged mother and family, or those belonging to the household. One ought to have seen such calamity to represent the awful effect it had. Finally, I found her in a bleach-field of one of our neighbours ; I saw a heap of linen, and there sat, solitary and sighing, my *aged, beloved, and good* mother ; I embraced her with all the cordiality of a deeply sorrow-struck son—but neither of us could speak. Ultimately, she called me by my name, entreated me not to press her arm for she had been bled by a surgeon, hastily, a few moments before, and was apprehensive that the bandage might be loosened. And now I really began to feel the danger which threatened her ; I snatched at a burning piece of wood lying a few yards from us, and saw how the blood was flowing from the wound ; but I was successful in drawing the bandage more tight, and thus her life was saved, whilst I relieved her with a drink of cold water, and afterwards by

strengthening and refreshing draughts and with the assistance of our servant maid, who had meanwhile arrived, I further provided for her."

And this circumstance brought him to the positive resolution to proceed to this country ; he applied to the Rev. Herman Hubert at Amsterdam, who was anxious to engage clergymen for the East Indies, and under patronage of his humane friend (for thus my father designated him), and having passed another examination of the classis there, he obtained his appointment as clergyman for this settlement.

As a minister, he was in doctrine and conduct sound and blameless ; versed in the sciences required for his calling and station, he judged and reasoned with sound understanding, and disapproved of fanaticism ; he was not attached to exterior formalities, but appreciated the inward state and Christian feelings of man, the quiet and unobserved communion with God and acknowledgment of the Saviour's merit, and the observance and exercise of religious and moral duties, as fundamentally necessary to raise the building of Christianity. He was tolerant and knew how to impart in conversation the beauties of the Christian religion in such a manner as to teach others to derive from it consolation in life and in the hour of death. He spoke amiably and to the point. Being a great admirer of nature, his attention was fixed on the starry heaven at night, and the wonders of the earth, and he often contemplated them to the honour of the Creator, and His almighty power. Those who had the good fortune to meet him familiarly on a fine evening, at the little summer-house, or at the beautiful, clear stream behind his favoured dwelling "La

Gratitude," can never forget his communications expressive of the greatness and power of God. Cheerfully was he inclined to be a leader to youth and to those destined to follow his profession; he was a cordial friend and adviser; he gave most readily full drafts from the fountains of science, and was really happy to find his attempts successful. Nothing was to him more dear than meeting the brother in faith, and pave to him the course in pursuit, and his feeling was never more touched than when brought to recollection of the days spent at the university with his contemporaries. When, sometimes, the conversation of the domestic circle turned on his native country, and the friends left behind, his heart was deeply struck; anxiously he often desired to return, but his numerous family, and limited income, were insurmountable bars; in latter days, however, and under increasing connections in this country, he became less desirous to repatriate.

As father of a family, he was indefatigable: his salary which until 1812, only amounted to 1,000 rixdollars, (£75) per annum, he found insufficient to maintain those entrusted to his care. He therefore bought a piece of land, and cultivated and divided it in his leisure hours; and it pleased Providence to bless this undertaking, so as to produce further means of support to his family. On part of that property, he built a house (still in existence), and named it "La Gratitude," as a proof that he considered all owing to the kindness of Providence, and placed in the portico the emblem of the "all-seeing Eye," which in this the country of his sojourn had watched over him. In high spirit and tone, he would at times praise and thank the

Omnipotent for this blessing. He used often to repeat this to his children, when exhorting them to trust to God's Providence, relating how he had arrived here with only one golden "ryder," and had been blessed far above expectation. He was, with regard to the stranger, hospitable; and under his roof the "welcome" was the reception of the visitor. Thus lived this village pastor, many years by the side of a faithful and amiable partner, at the head of his family of children. He governed his household gently—pure religion gave the leading tone—the friend was united in the father—sociality charmed the stranger and countryman, and happiness appeared at least temporarily to have taken her seat in that house and family.

Of extensive reading, and gifted with a good memory and lively spirit, he was courted by the social, and the village circles were kept alive during his presence.

He was an ardent lover of poetry and an amateur friend of the muses, and his pen often produced pieces of mental and moral worth; while, as a colonial historian, he was meritorious, and amongst the first.

In 1812, he framed a family register, considering himself bound to do so as the paterfamilias, and thereto solicited by his children; and between the ascendants and descendants he placed a poem, in Dutch, which is difficult to translate with sufficient accuracy; but, as it is worth preserving to posterity, I give the original Dutch, and add an attempted translation, both of which will be found in the Appendix.

When, in 1800, the first printing-press was introduced into this colony, he produced a poem, thankfully received by the original "Society to promote Agriculture,

Arts, and Science," established under the patronage of the Governor; and also another, entitled "de Maan" (the moon), and these were the first *literary* productions of the Cape press. He used to complain, however, of the sad want of taste for reading in those days, inasmuch as even the paper expended in printing was not paid for.

In 1824, he acted as secretary at the first meeting of the General Synod, and afterwards as *præses*, and he was active in co-operating to establish the fundamental rules and regulations which were to guide the colonial Dutch church for the future.

On the 26th of October, 1826, when he preached a sermon on the fortieth anniversary of his service as minister of Stellenbosch, the churchwardens and congregation presented him, in the church, by the hands of the civil commissioner, D. J. van Ryneveld, Esq., with a silver vase, bearing an appropriate inscription. (*Vide Appendix.*)

When the service closed, the whole congregation rose, and following their pastor, sang the 133rd Psalm, with feelings showing their cordiality and attachment; for during so long a period most were known to him as having been confirmed as members of the church, or married, and themselves or their children christened during his ministry: they cherished indeed a filial affection for him in return.

The 31st of May, 1830, was the last anniversary of the birthday of my beloved mother; and after my father had mentioned at length some particulars of family history from a written memoir, he closed thus:

"But at present I will write no more; and now I offer to Thee, O true and living God, whose doing is



majesty and whose acts are holy, my cordial thanks that Thou hast granted to me and my dear partner, life and health, and the means to clothe and maintain this numerous family, and to give them a suitable education, so that most of them have been provided for far above our expectation. Thy great name, O Lord, be consequently thanked and praised, and, for the future, I also entrust my cares with Christian confidence to thee, O Lord, and recommend them and ourselves to Thy gracious and powerful protection, and, O God, to Thy holy and safe guidance. A painful experience has often taught me how vain it is to trust to human aid. But Thou, O Supreme, hath never abandoned or forsaken me, Thy unworthy servant. On Thee alone shall I further fix my confidence and trust, for in Thy hand are all human hearts, both of friends and enemies ; they all are Thy servants, Lord, and, therefore, I pray Thee in private forsake not me or my partner in life, whilst age and grey hairs are attained ; be to us and to our numerous offspring, now and ever, a light in darkness, a comfort in sorrow, and power in weakness. Take us further, O Gracious and Almighty God, as our heavenly Father, by the right hand, lead us according to Thy counsel, and when once we shall have served accordingly, take us into eternal glory, for Jesus Christ, Thy beloved Son, our Mediator's sake. Amen."

On the 8th of June, 1830, the family consisted of : children, 10 ; grand-children, 26 ; great grand-children, 5 ; by marriage, 6 ; total, 47. Add to them both parents, 2, will make in all 49. The whole of the family Borchers,—namely, descendants of, and those connected by marriage with, the Rev. M. Borchers

amounts in number at present to 158, including the departed.

He calculated to have preached 2,670 sermons, to have given 2,200 lessons as catechist, christened 4,559 children, confirmed 2,125 members, married 879 couples; and the collections under his ministration amounted to rixdollars 87,600, or £6,570; his income to rixdollars 73,000, or £5,475, or, on an average, annually about £125.

Having considered these blessings, he thanked the Lord, under date 16th June, 1830, thus:

“The Lord be praised for all his innumerable blessings and support under public and domestic avocations, singular relief from many difficulties and cares, remarkable protection in danger, and against machinations and oppression of my enemies, so that having received succours from God, I may stand in public and private welfare. But I perceive that age has approached, and I know not the day of my departure; therefore I pray Thee, O true and living God, who alone canst save and annihilate, graciously to forgive and expunge all my sins, both of neglect and trespass, in public and private life, against Thy holy law, for the sake of Jesus Christ, Thy beloved Son, and grant me Thy Holy Ghost, this consolation to my soul, that they shall not tell against me, and such, on account of his merits. Grant that, further, I may spend my days, which are few, in peace, my years in loveliness; keep me and my partner, children, and further descendants by Thy right hand. O, Father, who art in heaven, lead us further according to Thy will, and where and whensoever we shall have served it full, take all of us into Thine eternal glory and salvation. Amen.”

In the books of resolutions of Heemraden at Stellenbosch, he found the signature of *Barend Borchers*, in 1700, a heemraad and captain of a burgher corps, and this led him to suppose that this man might have been an uncle, missed about that time, and probably enticed by a recruiting gang into the service of the East India Company; and that, most likely, he was the ancestor of the family *Burgers*, settled about the Twenty-four Rivers, and elsewhere in the colony. It is remarkable that when I visited, in 1853, the Olifant's River bath, in occupation of a Mr. Burgers, that, amongst the many names cut since 1700, in the door of the bathing-room, I found one, apparently of old date, of *Borchers*. This confirmed me in the opinion above mentioned. As far as my recollection goes, the Burgers family held that bath in occupation.

Tradition states the family Borchers originated from Westphalia, near Halte, a village on the southern limits of East Frisia. They were mostly agriculturists; near their dwelling stood an uncommonly thick trunk of an oak-tree. These trunks are there named *Bor*; the name is thence taken, as the family arms show. Our arms, like our crest, consists of an oak trunk, with a bough projecting from it. One of my ancestors, having distinguished himself in the presence of the Emperor of Germany and the King of France, received an honourable augmentation of the family arms,—namely, the imperial eagle dimidiated with the lilies, the arms of Borchers being borne in base of the last.

One of my father's last writings was a description of a flood in 1773, and another in 1775, in his birth-place, and details of the ransom exacted by the French in East

Frisia, whereby his parents had suffered considerably. Having mentioned his sense of gratitude of his favourable position in life, he feelingly expressed himself with respect to his native country in eloquent terms, of which I give an extract in the Appendix.

Thus sung, for the last time, this affectionate lover of his native country, and dear parent, happy in the circle of his partner and family ; when, suddenly, a cloud of adversity gathered over his grey head,—an arrow was shot, which wounded the heart, and consummated the despondency to which he seemed previously disposed ; and on the 6th September, he wrote as follows :

“O ! how has my fate been painfully changed since I wrote my last unfinished line (this was 28th June previous) ; but I bow, great and awful God, with confession of guilt, before thy striking rod. I suffer much, and may suffer still more,” &c.

On the 12th of October following, he was suddenly bereaved of his partner in life. This was to him the last overpowering stroke ; he lost her to whom he imparted his cares and sorrows, and was thus weaned from the earth by the dispensation of Providence ! Suffering from age and infirmity, his apprehensions and doubts increased ; human aid and consolation failed. In the last days, however, when growing weak, it appeared as if the mind was more calm. He prayed his Creator and Mediator, with tears, for support ; and, desirous of changing life, he died in his residence of “La Gratitude,” which he had built, leaving two children unprovided for, for whom he sometimes felt the greatest anxiety. I am unwilling to extend these discursive memoirs unnecessarily, but I think an

occasional notice of some of the old Cape families with which I am connected will not be uninteresting to the colonial genealogist.

It is reported that the name of my maternal ancestor, *De Wit*, was originally *White*, and his Christian name *John*, and that he arrived in this colony about the year 1700. Amongst the relics in my possession is a copper-plate of his coat of arms, found in his estate by my uncle, Mr. Johannes Henricus de Wit, an officer in the Dutch navy; the label at the foot of the arms bears the name of "*John White*." I have also a seal (he left a similar one to each of his children), and porcelain plate (one of a service), bearing the same arms, namely, argent a lion's head, or, on a chevron between three wolves' heads, erased sable; crest—a wolf's head, erased sable. These arms are still borne by the English family of Stanton White, of Norfolk. A letter was also found in John White, *alias* De Wit's estate, dated New York, 23rd February, 1755, in answer to one he wrote on the 18th of May, 1754, bearing the signature of Peter and Jane White, but the address runs thus :

"A Mynheer D'Heer Jan de Wit

"Oud Burgerraad tot Cabo de Goede Hoop"  
and it commences—

"Mr. John White and Espouse.

"Dear respected Uncle and Aunt."

This is in my possession, written in English, and proves that the present Cape family of De Wit is, in fact, of English origin. Mr. White, or De Wit, married a widow lady, named Adriaansen, and left a considerable landed estate to my maternal grandfather, who was born

23rd August, 1716, and named *Petrus Johannes De Wit*; and who possessed, besides several houses in Cape Town, a grant of the farm Stellenberg, in 1772, at Wynberg, a place at Blaauwberg called "Keert de Koe," in 1771, and another in Swellendam (now Riversdale), and left a great quantity of silver plate. I witnessed the division of some amongst his children, of which my mother got her share.

Mr. White, or De Wit, was appointed, in 1744, a commissioner of the court of matrimonial and petty civil cases. In 1761, he produced the first sample (two hundred pounds weight) of Cape aloes, extracted on his farm at Swellendam; this was purchased by the East India Company, to send to Holland. The medical practitioners declared it to equal the *aloe socotrina*, if not superior to it. In 1762, again, two or three hundred pounds were exported; and, in 1764, one thousand pounds, at the rate of thirty stivers per pound, were purchased from him. In 1761, he was one of the orphan-masters.

Family tradition states that our ancestor was a member of a respectable English family, who had been in possession of extensive landed property; not unlikely, he was either a younger son, proceeding abroad in search of a fortune, or was one of those compelled to leave home, under the disturbed state of the country, about the date of the English revolution. I refer my readers for a curious tradition to the Appendix.

I have been informed that, previous to the capitulation of the Colony in 1795, my grandfather's house was frequented by the principal English officers and families going and coming from India. Among them, were

Lord Macartney and his suite, then proceeding on the well-known embassy to China. In fact, his home appears to have been the resort of all the English in Cape Town ; and I was also informed that his funeral was attended by an English admiral and staff.

I also used to meet the British commanders residing at the house of my grandmother, immediately after the capitulation.

I believe that when he had determined on making the Cape, then a Dutch settlement, his home, he translated his patronymic to *De Wit*, a well-known Dutch name, corresponding with White, as in like manner did some of the French refugees, on their settlement here, translate their names, or assimilate them to the Dutch pronunciation, so as to be better identified with their adopted country.

My grandfather was one of the commissioners appointed by Government to sell an English vessel, the *Desire*, in 1777, and the *Colebrooke*, lost in August, 1778.

I regret that the loss of family papers deprives me of the opportunity of collecting more information regarding this ancestor ; perhaps, the coat of arms may lead to further discovery, and I therefore recommend my children to preserve it carefully.

Having now given a brief account of my progenitors, I will commence my own memoir, and step back to the days of childhood and boyhood.

## SECTION II.

OCCURRENCES PRIOR TO 1795.

WHEN I was about three months old, my parents moved from Cape Town to Stellenbosch (in 1786); and when at the age of seven years, I was sent to a Dutch school under the master *George Knoop*, the parish clerk, commonly called the *Dominie*, and remained under his tuition until my tenth year, receiving instruction in reading, writing, arithmetic, the Heidelberg Catechism and "Hellenbroek," a book containing questions and answers upon the whole religious system as taught in our church, and used when candidates were catechised and subsequently examined for admission as members.

I will attempt to describe a parish school of that time. The master was a gray-headed man, of florid complexion, and lively eye, precise to a nicety, remarkably clean in appearance and habit, wearing spectacles, and generally a fine linen cap and chintz gown. He sat at his elevated little table, with a library at the back, and the various scholastic implements, such as rulers, pens, &c., spread before him, while the instruments of discipline then in use hung on the wall by his side. In front, stood the large writing-table and benches, generally occupied by about forty or fifty of the rising generation, of all colours, some paying, others admitted gratis,—the latter chiefly from the poor maintained by the church funds. The school-fees ranged from four pence half-penny to one shilling and sixpence a month; and a roomy house near the church and garden, and suitable outhouses, were allowed by the parish, in addition to the master's small salary.



Silence was the watchword, and eyes constantly fixed on the books was the rule. The school was opened and closed with prayer. The Bible was first read, then spelling, reading, arithmetic, and writing classes were put in action, the seniors hearing the lessons of the juniors, the master taking the higher classes. Wednesday and Saturday were especially destined for religious instruction in the catechism and the Hellenbroek. Attendance was regular, from eight to eleven in the morning, and from one to four in the afternoon. On Wednesday and Saturday half-holidays were allowed, three days during Easter and Whitsun weeks, and eight during Christmas,—and these were the only holidays during the year; the last included New Year's Day. Thus were the youth of the day plainly instructed in our village, in a manner both suited to their future various secular occupations in life, generally occupations in husbandry, or some mechanical craft, and to qualify them for admission as members of the Dutch Reformed Church, then the predominant and only one in the village; and this last was considered the highest degree of qualification. The Dominie was generally seen on Fridays, about eleven o'clock, preparing to meet the pastor. He usually dressed in a black coat, cut in the orthodox clerical style, knee breeches, and silver knee and shoe buckles: the shoes high, well blackened, and shining. He wore a wig with two rows of curls, and a small three-cornered cocked hat; and carried under the left arm a fine rattan walking-stick, silver mounted; and walked with a grave and stately face to the parsonage, to receive the minister's directions for the service of the next Sunday, the Psalms intended to be sung by the

congregation,—so as to prepare himself to lead the singing as harmoniously as practicable, and to draw out lists of intended marriages, christenings, &c., to be entered in the parish registers.

That day was also set apart to examine our habits, hands, shoes, &c. ; and this little school parade caused much anxiety, for the good old master was determined to teach us cleanliness, and to be neat in appearance. I recollect one afternoon, being anxious to excel, I had had recourse to the point of a raw sheeptail, for the purpose of giving a *shine* to my shoes. The shoes rubbed with the grease shone when I left home, but the streets were dusty ; and unfortunately, before reaching school, my little feet exhibited the sad spectacle of a dark-brown pair of pantoufles covered with dust. The hour did not allow of my returning, for it had struck *One*, and when called, amongst the rest, to exhibit myself, I made but a sorry show. I can even now fancy I see the master's astonished look ; no excuse could be made, or satisfactory explanation given ; the crime of not having the shoes properly brushed was proved by the unlucky tail sticking out of my jacket pocket. It was extracted, and produced before my schoolfellows as the *corpus delecti*, and an example. I received, with the little black strap, circularly shaped at one end for the delinquent's palm, four strokes on the hands, and was made to stand at the door, to deter others from copying my mode of cleaning shoes. This punishment made a deep impression on my mind, for it was the *only* one I ever received at my master's hands : his eye told the reluctance with which it was administered, for Peter (such was my school-name) was his little favorite.

With the schoolmistress I was also on the best of terms. The little silver dubbeltje (a Dutch coin), which was my Sunday allowance, was always spent in the cakes which she so nicely baked ; and on the master's birthday, when the schoolboys greeted him with wishes and congratulations, and little addresses, written under every exertion to please, I was favoured by being invited to be a guest at his family table. Good man ! how, even now, I love and respect thy memory, for you were the *only* one from whom I ever received public instruction, and to whom I stand deeply indebted for the elementary part of my education. The Dominie had a good musical ear, and, leading us in the Psalms, he accompanied his voice with the violin, so that we were taught to modulate the tone of our voices, and were generally considered to be good performers. This good tutor, after serving the church for many years, died, regretted by his disciples, and respected by his minister and congregation : he rests in peace in the churchyard at Stellenbosch.

Relieved from school labour, I retired generally with my young school-fellows to the playground, now Queen-square, where kite and ball, and the "*kennetje*" game, amongst others, amused us ; or, in summer, we visited that beautiful, fresh brook, the Eerste River, which runs through the village, to enjoy a cool bath in its clear waters, before we retired to our homes. Sometimes, in winter, we retired to the school, in front of which stood two lofty oaktrees, some sixty or seventy feet high, at this period stripped of their leaves, to listen to the hundreds of canary birds whistling their last song before the day closed, as if cheerfully acknowledging their being spared to exist, and preparing to roost in the

branches. Happy, happy days! Even now I rejoice in the recollection of the past enjoyment, and the fine open and cheerful countenances of my now departed play-fellows. The days of childhood and boyhood were thus usefully and happily spent in and out of doors. Whilst at home I enjoyed every comfort which a dear mother could devise and my beloved parents afford to their young offspring.

One event which left also an impression on my mind was the travelling tour of the family to Overberg, beyond Hottentots' Holland Mountains, to Sweetmilk Valley (Zoetemelks Valley), then the residence of old Mr. Marthinus Theunissen, a European, and ancestor of the Theunissen family, of which one representative, a grandson, resides at present at Vergelegen, Hottentots' Holland, formerly an estate in possession of the famous Governor van der Stell, a personage well known in the history of the colony.

This old gentleman was the superintendent (*baas*) of the Company's outpost, and had the supervision of the extensive public woods at River Zonder End. He had the kindness to send his wagon and oxen for our family, not only to enjoy the excursion, but also to give my father an opportunity of visiting that part of the parish, for Caledon belonged in those days to the Stellenbosch church. There was no place of worship between that district and Swellendam.

One particular Sunday (it was a beautiful day) the neighbourhood had been invited to attend divine service. In the morning a considerable number had congregated, and as the house was not sufficiently spacious to hold them all, the sermon was delivered in the open air,

under a large oak-tree ; and I sat before my mother, on a footstool. Even the distance of time has not effaced the recollection of that day. I ever since bore it in mind.

Another reminiscence of that excursion was my seeing, one morning, old Mr. Theunissen, and some of his sons and neighbours, setting off with a wagon, taking the pastor with them, to see the number of bontebucks then abounding in that part of the country. The wagon returned loaded with game,—amongst them some of that noble species ; and great was the triumph of my father, who had shot an ostrich. The ball was preserved, as a trophy, for many years in his escritoire ; and the gun with which he performed that sporting exploit he left me as a present. It stands now before me whilst writing this record.

These visits must have been welcome to many members of the church, for, on such occasions, a number of children was baptized. The farmers of that part of the country were generally poor. They could not conveniently reach their church, without travelling with their families for days in an ox-wagon ; and I have often seen more than one child of the same parents brought to be baptized at the parsonage at the same time.

Much inconvenience (now happily removed) was caused to parents living so remote, not only in getting their children baptized, but also in having them examined and admitted as members of the church. But the greatest of all difficulties, in those days, was to get married. There was but one matrimonial court in the colony, holding session every Saturday in an upper room of a building occupying the site of the late Cape Town prison, and all couples inclined to devote

themselves on Hymen's shrine were obliged to travel,—some from Graaff-Reinet, some from the borders of the colony, to Cape Town.

The members of that board made a stately appearance when sitting. They were clothed in black, and generally were powdered according to the fashion of the day ; and the happy solicitants for their sanction were ushered in not without ceremony,—to wit, the man who swept the stairs with an ornamented broom, the messenger, bowing and scraping, and were thus conducted before this body, consisting of a president and six members, and having satisfactorily answered the questions, namely of age and residence, consent of parents or guardians (of which a certificate had also to be produced), whether or not related in the prohibited degrees of consanguinity or under prior engagement, and, in case of widowers or widows, of having passed the deed of *kinderbewys* to make provision for the inheritance of children of former marriage, the court rose, particularly when the applicants were above the ordinary class, and congratulated the parties on their prospect. Sometimes the bride was specially honored by a kiss from the president. The secretary, having ascertained that the banns were duly published, was authorized to issue the certificate permitting the marriage. This ceremony occupied the engaged pair sometimes two months travelling, by ox-wagon, from their homes to town and back again. On their arrival in town they were supplied with suitable dresses, borrowed or hired for the occasion, often not of the neatest fit, and scarcely decent to appear in before the matrimonial board (*om voor commissaris te gaan*). A tale is told that on one of

these long journeys, the parties changed their minds, and amicably exchanged for other partners.

A notable event of my boyish days, which produced a deep impression, was the arrival of the English fleet under Admiral Elphinstone in False Bay, in 1795. I recollect walking with my father in his garden, and hearing, towards the evening, the firing of guns in the direction of the bay. The next day the signal guns were fired from the several heights where they were planted over the country districts, to call upon the militia (*burghery*) to proceed with all speed to Cape Town, in order to assist the garrison in the defence of the colony.

In those days, when vessels approached Table Bay the first signals were made from Lion's Head, namely, a gun was fired for each vessel seen, and a flag hoisted. On the approach of an enemy further signals were made in the country districts to summon the burgher forces to Cape Town, by firing guns at the signal-posts, under direction of some near resident, who was appointed signalman, and by hoisting a flag, and kindling a beacon fire, so that the smoke should attract notice. In the castle, a red flag (the "blood flag") was hoisted to indicate war.

These signal posts were, to the best of my recollection, stationed at Salt River (near the present Montagu-bridge); Vlaggeberg, on the road to Stellenbosch; Hottentots' Holland, Tygerberg, Klappmuts, Groenberg, Riebeeck's Kasteel, Honigberg, Piketberg, and Tulbagh Mountains; and thus the intelligence of an approach of the enemy was communicated in a few hours.

The bustle, consternation, and anxiety, on the arrival of Admiral Elphinstone, was naturally great. The five companies of cavalry, under the green, blue, red, white,

and yellow standards, assembled in the village, or rode direct to town. The force thus consisted : Under Captain Laubscher, 105 men ; Captain Meyburg, 156, Captain van der Byl, 144 ; Captain Hoffman, 124 ; Captain Cloete, 129 : total, 658 men.

The lamentations of wives, mothers, and families were heard almost from every habitation. The pastor did all he could to pacify them, recommending submission to the duties which the government required. The houses in the village were soon crowded with families who had removed from Cape Town, dreading the calamities of war ; and the parsonage received two or three families of relatives under its hospitable roof.

These bodies of cavalry used to exercise annually in the village, on the "Braak," now Queen's-square. In the month of October, eight days were kept, devoted to drilling during the day, and cheerful meeting of parties in the evening. Every house was thrown open, and the inhabitants received exclusive privilege to sell cakes and refreshments during this period, which was known under the name of "*de Kermis*."

Several families from Cape Town and the environs spent the *kermis* at Stellenbosch. I faintly recollect and understood since, that the last of these reviews, in 1794, was attended by the acting governor, Mr. Commissary Abraham Josias Sluysken and some members of the Court of Policy. The select visitors, the landdrost and notables of the village were assembled on the day, 24th October (*optrek dag*), in an alcove of oak trees, called the Tent, of which the remnant is still to be seen, facing the square by the side of a brook leading to the village watermill. The commissary sat in state in an



arm chair, whilst the corps defiled by, the officers passing the tent saluting. Music was introduced, and many a pipe of *lekker kanaster* smoked during this animating scene, and a *feu de joie* closed the parade. Refreshments in the tent were abundant, and I recollect being admitted with my parents, and having been liberally supplied with cakes, &c., to my little heart's content. I will attempt to describe an officer in uniform. He wore a fine blue coat, the flaps turned up, the breast decorated with silver embroidery, an orange sash, white waistcoat and breeches, high boots, covering the knees, silver spurs, a cocked hat with panage coloured according to the standard of the company, and sword (*pallas*). He was well mounted, and seated in a high saddle,—the latter sometimes lined with red cloth, embroidered with silver, as were the holsters and saddle cloth. The horses were extremely well fed, and had long tails. Many a time was my attention riveted on the splendours of my worthy friend and relative in later days, Mr. Jacobus Christiaan Faure (father of the Reverend Messrs. Faure of Cape Town and Wynberg), as he passed our house in the rear of his company, as adjutant to the corps.

We were also visited by a burgher corps from Swellendam, on their route to Cape Town, about forty-two in number, under Commandant Petrus Jacobus Delport, and an Italian, one Pisani, dressed in farmer's costume, armed with long guns, large curved powder-horns, with hats resembling the present wide-awakes, broad-brimmed, and mounted with the national cockade (red, white, and blue), then the emblem of the revolutionary party in Holland.

The martial spirit even infected the boys. Those of Cape Town and Stellenbosch amounted to about fifty or sixty, and were enrolled under Commandant Michiel Smuts (since an advocate), and Mr. Johannes Smuts, still residing in the Gardens, Cape Town, as lieutenant. We were formed in two companies of infantry, bearing blue and white colours, provided with a drum and little band. We exercised with bamboo guns in the square, and marched through the village, to the amusement of those who were left at home, and not required to frequent the seat of war. I was ensign, and bore a white standard. One day, I recollect, we were invited by the landdrost to call at the drostdy. He was a Mr. H. L. Bletterman, a kind-hearted gentleman, and, as well as his lady, the essence of politeness and civility. Cakes and tea were served in abundance, and, as ensign, I bore an ample share of the little feast.

Three months passed in the state of suspense : from time to time firing was heard. At last the capitulation was signed, and Sir James Craig as commander-in-chief, and Sir Alured Clarke, one of the generals, marched into Cape Town and took possession of the citadel.

The English fleet arrived at the Cape of Good Hope on the 10th of June, and the Cape surrendered by capitulation on the 16th September, 1795.

The fleet was under command of Sir George Keith Elphinstone, and the army under Major-General Sir James Craig, and consisted of—the *Monarch*, 74 guns, commanded by Admiral Elphinstone ; *America*, 64 guns, Commodore Blunkett ; *Ruby*, 64 guns, Captain Stanhope ; *Stately*, 64 guns, Captain Douglas ; *Arrogant*, 74 guns, Captain Lucas ; *Victorious*, 74 guns, Captain

Clark. Frigates : *Sphinx*, 24 guns, Captain Bresd ; *Echo*, 18 guns, Captain Hardy ; *Rattlesnake*, 16 guns, Captain Spranger.

The British Commanders forwarded to Commissary Mr. Abraham Josias Sluysken, in charge of the Government, a letter dated 7th February, 1795, signed by Willem, Prince of Orange, directing him to admit the British troops into the Castle and elsewhere in the colony ; and in Simon's Bay, or any other place of anchorage, to deliver up the vessels of war ; and to consider the British force as the troops and ships of a power in amity and alliance with their High Mightinesses, intended to prevent the colony from being invaded by the French.

The Commissary and Council (Court of Policy), however, rejected the proposal to permit the troops to land ; but allowed provisions, feeling inclined to avail themselves of the assistance offered in case of attack of an enemy, which they, however, declared themselves to be in a position to resist.

Meanwhile, every preparation for defence was made. Further proposals to take the colony under British protection were again declined, and all intercourse with the invading force was stopped, and orders were issued to the Resident of Simon's Town to destroy provisions. In return, ships were laid under embargo by the English ; letters seized and opened ; Table and Simon's Bays were blockaded, and troops landed in Simon's Town, and Muizenberg were taken—the Dutch forces retiring to Steenberg and Wynberg.

Pending these proceedings, General Sir Alured Clarke arrived with a fleet of fourteen ships and three

thousand troops, and took the command. Negotiations were re-opened ; but the Commissary and Court remained determined to defend the colony.

On the 14th of September, the British army marched towards Steenberg and Wynberg, calculated to be between four and five thousand strong. They were opposed by sixteen hundred and sixteen men, divided between different posts, partly in the country, partly in Cape Town, or in the batteries. The English advanced as far as the Driekoppen (Rondebosch), now Mowbray, when Mr. Commissary Sluysken, seeing the impossibility of defending Cape Town, and anxious to spare it from assault and plunder, obtained an armistice of twenty-four hours, and on the 16th, the articles of capitulation were mutually signed. In the afternoon, Sir James Craig marched into town with twelve hundred men infantry and two hundred artillery,—and the Dutch garrison, three hundred infantry and two hundred artillery, surrendered. A number of the Dutch troops had previously become insubordinate, and had left or been discharged.

On the 17th September, arrangements having been made for the reception of the British troops, General Clarke marched at the head of two thousand men infantry and a train of artillery into the town,—fourteen hundred sailors, who joined the attack of the 14th, having been sent back to Simon's Bay. The Admiral anchored on the 18th in Table Bay, and proceeded to take up his quarters in the Castle.

And on the 12th November, Mr. Commissary Sluysken left the colony for Europe with two hundred officers and men as prisoners of war.

The original force of the Dutch on the 1st of September, 1795, consisted as follows : Artillery, under Major Kuchler, 480. Infantry, under Colonel Gordon, 600. Burgher infantry and free blacks in service, 350. Burgher cavalry—of Cape district, Captain de Waal, 127 ; Captain Gous, 117 ; of Stellenbosch, Captain Laub-scher, 105 ; Captain Meyburg, 156 ; Captain Van der Byl, 144 ; Captain Hoffman, 124 ; Captain Cloete, 129 : of Swellendam, Captain Botha, 96 ; Captain Muller, 80 ; Captain de Jager, 62. Hottentot corps, under the name of Pandouras, Captain J. G. Cloete, 210. Civil servants, a corps under the name of Pennisten, commanded by Baron van Oudtshoorn, 100. Total, 2,830. On the 14th September, this number had dwindled to 1,616, of which about 600 were retained for defence of the town.

The position of Mr. Sluysken was one of difficulty, for whilst these operations were carried on, the interior of the colony was in a disturbed state.

In the commencement of the year 1795, the Landdrost of Graaff-Reinet, Mr. Maynier, had been compelled by the inhabitants to leave, and some of the heemraden and militia officers were threatened with dismissal. Commissioners O. G. de Wet, Captain von Hugel, and Mr. (afterwards Sir John) Truter, secretary to the Court of Justice, were sent to restore peace, but without success, and were obliged to leave. The Landdrost, Mr. A. Faure, of Swellendam, Captain de Jager, of the burgher cavalry, and the messenger were dismissed by the people, and a burgher, Hermanus Steyn, appointed as landdrost. The chief movers and directors of these insubordinate proceedings were a burgher named Petrus

Jacobus Delport, who assumed the title of *National Commandant*, and the beforenamed Italian, Louis Almora Pisani, a deserter, who had been banished under sentence of the court of justice, and since wandering about the country had disseminated disturbance and opposition to Government. His sentence had been remitted, and he had been admitted a burgher three years previous. Such was the state of the public mind when the English fleet arrived.

The Government, occupied with the cares of self-defence, had no power to check these district disturbances. Conciliatory letters and other palliative measures and warnings were adopted to preserve peace. At Swellendam, the General met with a little success, for seventy men proceeded to town in defence of the colony under Captain Dirk van Rheenen; but the greater number, though earnestly solicited, remained at home. A "National Convention" was held at Swellendam, and certain articles were proposed to Government; the address was signed, "Your faithful burghers to death, and by order of all the national burghers,—P. J. Delport and L. A. Pesany," which, if acceded to, they declared their readiness to spill their last drop of blood in defence of the country, and come to Cape Town.

However, some of these articles were wholly inadmissible, and the whole proposition was consequently rejected. Mr. Meyer, a member of the burgher senate, and two captains of the burghers, and Messrs. Meyburg and Horack, were sent to dissuade them for the present from pressing their proposals and to check discontent in Cape and Stellenbosch districts.

The national commandant arrived meanwhile with some of the Swellendam burghers, and a revolution was apprehended ; but the commissary pacified them to a certain extent. Pisani and two of his accomplices, also discharged soldiers, were apprehended at Tygerberg, on the 14th of August, and confined in the castle, after they had created great alarm and frightened the families of the burghers engaged in the camp.

On the 1st of September, the advanced guards of the British were attacked by some of the mounted burghers and Hottentots, five soldiers were taken prisoners of war, and two posts occupied ; but the sharp fire of the English artillery caused a retreat.

Although the public spirit was kept alive (according to Mr. Sluysken's narrative) by daily rencounters between the troops, and several were wounded and some killed, yet insubordination gained ground by the conduct of the national commandant, Delport, and his followers. Several seditious writings and letters were distributed against the commanding officers, the members of Government, and well-disposed burghers, and a rebellion threatened which might favor the English more than their arms. It affected the Hottentot corps (170 strong) who, after the attack, left the camp with their arms, though opposed by the officers, and marched to Cape Town, stating their grievances, namely, that notwithstanding their readiness to fight and risk their lives for the small pay of two rixdollars (three shillings) per month, their wives and children were ill-treated ; that they expected the same treatment after the war ; and that they had a cause of complaint generally against the burgher officers.

Mr. Commissary Sluysken, however, received them in the castle, reprimanded them gently for their culpable conduct, and promised that their complaints should be investigated and redress given; whereupon they returned the next day under escort of some burgher officers to the camp; and orders were issued for better pay and to allow them daily a "soopje" (dram of brandy) and some wine, and to inflict no punishment on account of the step taken. They were also better clothed and declared entitled to share in captures.

Under all these difficulties one of the lieutenant-colonels was accused of neglect in assisting to attack the English and placed under arrest in the castle. The country was altogether in a disturbed state and beyond the control of government. Those of Graaff-Reinet complained of the parties in authority; that taxes were levied notwithstanding they were obliged to bear the expense of protecting themselves; said they were grieved by being checked in trade by sea; and considered themselves defrauded by the paper currency. They further complained that the burghers were employed as soldiers, declaring that though not inclined to create disturbances the burden was too oppressive to be borne. They moreover expressed a wish to be relieved from the government of the East India Company, and in the last article of their address observed: "That the lesson of Titus Quintius should be observed, through whose proclamation of liberty so a large body of the people had addressed him with such acclamation, that the ravens fell out of the air; and that such certainly would again happen,"—in the event, I suppose, of their proposals being adopted.



The disagreement between government and the people was therefore so great that, had the Cape not been captured, the probability was that peace and tranquillity would have been seriously disturbed, internal commotions would have been created, which the want of power on the part of government would have left unchecked, and the country at large would have been exposed to general disorder and disorganization.

The Board of Policy at this period consisted of A. J. Sluysken, Commissary; Messrs. J. J. Rhenius, J. J. le Sueur, O. G. de Wet, C. Brand, W. S. van Ryneveld, and E. Bergh, according to Mr. Sluysken's statement to the Home Government.

Full particulars of the articles under which the colony surrendered will be found in the records of the colony. A re-publication would extend my memoir beyond the plan prescribed; but I will mention an act of magnanimity on the part of the British commanders towards a burgher officer of the Swellendam corps, a Mr. du Plessis, who had distinguished himself by resisting the troops at Muizenberg with a small party of burghers, and had attracted the General's notice by his courage. This man received (as I was told) a present of a handsome gun and fittings as a mark of the Governor's regard; and he was considered so trustworthy that the British commanders appointed him to communicate to the inhabitants of Swellendam "that the English government would preserve the peace and prosperity of the inhabitants; that all monopoly should cease, and inland trade be free; invited them to send their cattle to Cape Town; that no new taxes should be imposed, and the oppressive ones abandoned; that paper currency should

retain its value, and the English would pay in specie ; and that in case of misunderstanding, explanations should be given to any respectable parties who should come to town."

After the respective Dutch corps were disbanded a fatal occurrence followed. The commander of the Dutch troops, Colonel Gordon, the African traveller and the discoverer of the Orange River, who had first brought to notice the giraffe or camelopardalis, and who had introduced into the colony the merino sheep which afterwards supplied New South Wales, was found a few days after the capitulation in his garden below Table Mountain (now belonging to the Rev. Dr. Heyns), deprived of life ; he was supposed to have committed suicide, broken-hearted at the loss of his command, and of being suspected of treason.

On learning that the British commanders resided at the house of my grandmother Mrs. de Wet, and on hearing that the English soldiers wore red jackets and were described as "moving in bodies like red ants," I felt the greatest curiosity and anxiety to visit Cape Town. At last I prevailed on the good parents to give me leave : and papa's shooting pony Frolic, and his body servant "Hendrik" mounted on another pony, Prince, were put in service ; we started early in the morning, crossing the then sandy plains (Cape Flats), and took nearly a whole day getting to Cape Town. The next morning I breakfasted with the English commanders. They seemed rather amused with the young country traveller, whose object was explained, and supplied me plentifully with the good things of the table. Sir James was a short, rather stout man, with a sharp,

dark, determined eye; Sir Alured appeared to me more mild and pleasing. Having satisfied myself with the sight of the English soldiers, their marching and drilling, their, to me, strange dress,—for some wore long black gaiters—others, little cocked hats, I returned to Stellenbosch, telling the wonderful tales of what I had seen and experienced to the admiration and surprise of my little circle of friends and sisters, and particularly to the amazement of my “ayah,” or nurse, the kind, good-hearted Leonora, a native of Bengal.

The time now drew near that I was to leave school, soon after which my Father undertook my education. The Latin grammar, the vocabulary of Cellarius, and, ultimately, Cornelius Nepos were introduced, and my time was well occupied by morning and evening lessons, whilst, at the same time, I assisted in looking after gardening, building, wine-making and whatever else was required in the husbandry of the family, and which in after-life gave me a taste for these useful occupations. Thus glided my days of youth. We were from time to time visited by English families, and the pastor and his family became more and more known amongst strangers.

A circumstance occurred at the time which gave me unexpectedly an opportunity of learning the elements of the English language. Admiral Sir Hugh Christian, who commanded the fleet, I think, in 1798, had his eldest son (afterwards Commodore at this station) on board, and a nephew, Mr. Rushworth. The old gentleman was anxious that he should reside in our family. This was arranged, and they were accompanied by his chaplain, Doctor Dolling, as tutor, Charles, a brother of Sir William Clarke, who commanded the

84th Regiment, and Osborne a son of Brigadier General Fraser, lads about my age and who soon became my companions. The kind Dr. Dolling admitted me as one of his pupils and taught me the rudiments of the English language: under his gentle tuition the task was easy and pleasant.

The Doctor's dress was generally a black coat and waistcoat with yellow buckskin breeches, yellow top-boots, with a broad brimmed hat shaped to a point behind; he wore spectacles on an aquiline nose and had lively eyes. I enjoyed the advantage of studying English under him for some months. I used to meet my companions frequently afterwards in town, and now I am the survivor: Osborne and Charles joined the army in India and died in battle; my friend, Commodore Christian, died some years since in England,—his eldest daughter was married to one of our Judges, the late Mr. Justice Menzies. I lost sight of Rushworth; he probably is no more.

During the above period our house, "La Gratitude" was built, and we removed from the parsonage. Many are the bricks in that building that were made under my eye, and many were the hours of my superintending the works, whilst my Latin lessons were, nevertheless, expected to be duly finished. By rising at an early hour in the morning and retiring late I managed to accomplish my task so as to give satisfaction, and thus, preparing for the study in Europe of a profession, my days passed on till the year 1800. In that year the Secretary of Stellenbosch, Mr. Johannes Wege, who was attached to the board of landdrost and heemraden and the only notary in that district, had the kindness to take me

into his office as a temporary clerk. This situation gave me information, which in my subsequent career was of the greatest service. I obtained some knowledge of the judicial and fiscal proceedings of the district, had opportunities to copy notarial acts and get introduced into practice, and to become acquainted with the correspondence of the magistracy, the jurisdiction of which extended at that time over Stellenbosch, Caledon, Paarl, Tulbagh, Worcester, Piketberg, Clanwilliam, Namaqualand, and part of the Cape Divisions. While thus prosecuting my studies in Mr. Wege's office, I still had the advantage of my father's instruction at home and his encouragement to improve the mind by reading, &c.

Amongst the works he recommended was the history of Vasco de Gama's discovery of the Cape, and this little work (written in black letter) gave me a taste for travelling; and it was in 1801 that I had an ample opportunity of gratifying my anxious desire to see the interior of my native country.

In January, 1801, I received my first appointment as junior clerk in the office of the Secretary of Stellenbosch and Landdrost and Heemraden which gave me a salary of five rixdollars or seven shillings and sixpence per month. The payment for the first six months I received in July following, the whole in copper penny pieces. I counted them over and over again, assisted by my sisters; my good old nurse stood by and admired the riches of her pet, and never, I believe, was Croesus more rich, never more raised in imagination and in thought to worldly happiness: in fact, never in after life did money have such an effect as this first fruit of my entrance upon and labour in public life.

It was known about the latter end of September of that year, that Government intended to send an expedition to the countries beyond the limits of the colony, and that Mr. Petrus Johannes Truter, a member of the court of justice, was to be the chief commissioner. He was the same gentleman who kindly received my father when he arrived in this colony, and who offered free access to his house—my mother was his niece.

I immediately prevailed on my parent to apply for me to accompany the gentlemen commissioners. Mr. Truter sent a favorable reply; all haste was made to get my outfit ready, and in two days I was seated on a farmer's ox-wagon and left my family under the tenderest wishes for my safety and success. All that my dear mother could gather and my little Geneva box could hold was packed for me; even a fine honey cake, so capitally baked at Stellenbosch, and enjoyed at Letako, was added. The day after my arrival the expedition started from Cape Town; this was on the *1st day of October, 1801*.

As the following sections will relate to that expedition, and as the present has been sufficiently extended, I now close the narrative of the days of my childhood and boyhood, with feelings of gratitude to Him who preserved me when young and spared me in age and advanced years,—to my parents and friends, whose constant care and attention laid the groundwork of a happy and contented mind, and the disposition to exert myself in those duties which constitute the character of a useful member of society. This I recommend my young descendants honestly to strive at; it is the only course to gain true reward, means of subsistence and to earn the honour and love of our fellow-men.

## SECTION III.

THE period had now arrived of departure from the parental roof; I was to commence the world under the eye of strangers, and to lay the groundwork for my future destiny. Happily I met, in the commissioners and secretary, friends who took an interest in me. Under the eye of Mr. Truter I kept the journal of our proceedings and accounts; under that of Dr. Somerville, I enjoyed instruction in languages and scientific subjects; and as a companion to the secretary, I had an opportunity of closely examining most of the animals and natives who formed the subjects of that splendid collection of drawings which was published in England in coloured plates and folio.

Thus favoured, I commenced my first travels, and on the 1st of October, 1801, as above mentioned, the expedition started from Cape Town. It consisted of six ox-wagons. One fitted out for the commissioners, four loaded with merchandise, suited to the tastes of the barbarous tribes we expected to meet, such as copper, beads, knives, iron staves, tobacco, handkerchiefs, &c., and a liberal supply of medicines, provisions, &c., and which Mr. Godfried Andries Watermeyer, a gentleman of extensive mercantile knowledge, and to whom the outfit had been confided, selected with equal skill and care. The sixth wagon was loaded with ammunition, tents, &c., under the charge of a superintendent of wagons. The entire cost of the expedition was about £1,500 sterling.

The Government, then administered by Major-General Francis Dundas, had derived from various sources

some information of the state of the interior, especially relative to the abundance of cattle beyond the Orange River, belonging to the Beriquas. There was a large garrison and naval station in the colony to be provided for, and the Government proclamations of the day show that a scarcity in articles of consumption, especially grain, existed. (I refer my readers to one of these proclamations, dated 26th February, 1801, appointing a special commission to inquire into the means of procuring a supply of food under the existing scarcity, of which commission, the late Sir John Barrow was secretary).

In this state of affairs it was deemed most desirable that a trade in supplies should be opened with the aborigines and the interior of the colony explored, and as leaders of the expedition entrusted with this important undertaking, the Government selected Mr. Truter, who had been formerly employed in the Dutch East India Company's Office of Trade (*negotie kantoor*), and Dr. Somerville, Inspector of Hospitals and a man of scientific acquirements, aided by Mr. Samuel Daniel, an accomplished artist, as secretary; and hopes were entertained, not merely of opening a useful trade in cattle, but also of making interesting discoveries in the as yet unexplored and unknown inland territory.

The whole expedition consisted of the following members and suite :

Mr. Petrus Johannes Truter,	} commissioners.
Dr. William Somerville,	
Mr. Samuel Daniel,	secretary.
Mr. Petrus Borchardus Borchards,	assistant secretary.
Mr. T. C. Schultz,	superintendent of wagons.



7 Dutch farmers.

24 Bastard and other Hottentots.

4 slaves—(together 40 individuals).

120 draught oxen.

18 saddle horses.

20 muskets.

And “with the blessing of God” (as Mr. Truter observed) “we considered these our numbers and our means of defence to be fully sufficient for our protection and preservation, and, confiding in His goodness, we launched upon the karoo, or desert place, on the 20th October.”

This was the muster at Brakkefontein, three hours north of the colonial limits.

Before entering, however, the karoo plains, I will attempt to describe the journey from Cape Town to the boundary and give the simple juvenile observations taken from my notes still extant, for the sake of comparison of our present rate of travelling with that “sixty years since.”

*Route to Brakkefontein per ox-wagon :*

		Hours.
1st Oct.,	from Cape Town to Pampoenekraal (now D'Urban) . . . . .	4
	„ Pampoenekraal to Middelburg, (about 2 hours' detention) . . . . .	7
2nd „	„ Middelburg to punt at Berg River . . . . .	6
	„ Punt to Groenberg, crossing do. . . . .	3½
3rd „	„ Groenberg to Roodesand (now Tulbagh), passing the Klyne Berg River and Tulbagh Kloof. . . . .	5½
4th „	„ Roodesand to the place Liefde . . . . .	4

			Hours.
4th Oct.,	from passing Breede River and Roodedraay (now Worcester)	.	6
5th	„ „ Roodedraay to de Vos, Hexe River, much detained by repeatedly crossing the river	.	8½
6th	„ to Verkeerde Valley, passed Bokkeveld-street	.	9
7th	„ „ Field-cornet Jacob's place, Verkeerde Valley	.	2
8th	„ „ Doorn River in the Karoo, passed Bokkeveld's Poort	.	12
9th	„ „ Ongeluk's River	.	5½
	„ „ Trek River	.	2
10th	„ „ Tanquas, passing barren country and the Gousbloemsfontein, Bloemsfontein, Windheuvel, and Modderfontein	.	8
11th	„ „ Klipfontein, passing Roggeveld's Berg and Blaauw Bank	.	8
12th	„ „ Jackhalsfontein	.	5
13th	„ „ Kuylenburg	.	6
14th	„ „ Groote Riet River, passing de Beer's Poort	.	4
15th	„ „ an unoccupied place of a certain van Wyk, north of Riet River	.	2
16th	„ „ Gannakraal, passing Stinkfontein, Tigerhoekberg, Selleryfontein	.	7½
17th and 18th,	detained relays not arriving.		
19th Oct.,	to Brakkefontein	.	3
			<hr/>
			118½

Having now reached the boundary of the colony, before proceeding further let me recal some occurrences on the above route.

At Roodezand, we were obliged to alter our course for the Witzenberg, as that usual pass was in such a bad state that it could not be crossed. This lengthened our route, and we were obliged to proceed by Hexe River.

The Roodedraay was then a single farm situate between the Breede and Hexe Rivers on an extensive plain; at present it is built upon and covered by one of the most regularly laid-out towns in the colony, in extent second only to some of the oldest. It consists of four streets in the direction of its length from east to west, and eight in the direction of its breadth, intersecting each other at right angles, and forming twenty-four squares of eight acres each. The streets are wide (eighty feet), and each one is supplied with a stream of beautiful clear water from the main watercourse, which is led out of the Hexe River, a distance of about five miles. It contains splendid and extensive public buildings for the residence of the civil commissioner, offices, and court-room, with a large garden attached to it, and it is known as the town of Worcester. A beautiful Dutch Reformed church with spire and clock; a handsome chapel for the coloured people belonging to the Rhenish missionary society, besides several schools and one of the best hotels in the colony, are to be found on the former farm. It is now the seat of the magistracy. Formerly the magistrate (landdrost) resided at Tulbagh, but that place being found to be situated very much out of the way, and being considered incapable of much improvement, the seat of magistracy was changed.

Now again, however, Tulbagh has been formed into a division under a civil commissioner and magistrate resident in the village.

I mention this to show the progress of the colony since the period I visited that part of it.

The Hexe River's Kloof was then a very different pass. We were obliged to cross the river several times, as its windings were narrow and frequent. The mountains along the pass were covered with snow almost to their bases. Here I saw for the first time in my life a troop of baboons regaling themselves in a corn-field.

At the next station, the Verkeerde Valley, we were detained by violent hail-storms and rain, and obliged to take up quarters at a shoemaker's, one Mulder, who had a large family, besides some visitors, butcher's knechts or travelling servants. Poor man, he had but one room about sixteen feet square, and in this we were admitted with the family, consisting of about ten or twelve persons. The thatch was leaky, so that some of us could not escape getting wet. This was the first piece of hardship, such as it was, of our travelling adventures. Yet be it said to the credit of this poor man and his wife that they submitted themselves to much inconvenience to give us the best accommodation in their power. However, the next morning we were compensated with the sight of a large and beautiful lake (Verkeerde Valley), in front of the little house, abounding with waterfowl, and in the afternoon by the kind reception we met at the Field-cornet Jacobs' home. I cannot forget the hospitality shown by the family of Jacobs and his wife, and we felt it the more as we had suffered want of provisions and intense cold and much personal inconvenience.

From Jacobs' we were accompanied by the field-cornet, Schalk Willem Pienaar, and his brother, who most readily gave the assistance we required; and passing between two steep mountains (Karoo and Bokkevelds Poort), we reached the Karoo and encamped on the banks of the Doorn River. There I was particularly struck with the sterility and barrenness of the fields so different from those I had passed, and by the fine mimosa trees, producing a gum similar to the gum arabic of commerce, described by the traveller Vaillant and others.

Whether owing to the scanty pasture or to some other cause, some of our oxen strayed during the night. The disagreeableness of such an event can be appreciated only by the African traveller to whom the bad news is communicated; however, thanks to the activity of our field-cornet, we obtained fresh relays and proceeded without much detention.

The landdrost of Stellenbosch, Mr. van der Riet, had taken the precaution to send on two inhabitants, Messrs. Willem Wium and Verster, to arrange our relays and other details required for our further progress; and on their arrival at our camp at Tanquas River, they reported favourably of our future prospects and their arrangements. We also expected Floris Visser, a man well acquainted with the country, and some others to accompany us, but were disappointed; notwithstanding which Messrs. Wium and Verster accompanied us over that steep hill, the Roggeveld Berg, with its dangerous Blaauw Bank. Their company was particularly welcome to me, for they were residents of Stellenbosch. They brought a letter from my father

which placed me in a strange dilemma, as it contained an order to purchase a horse and return with them. This was shown to Mr. Truter. This kind gentleman (my uncle) left it to my choice to return or proceed. I hesitated, and struggled between disobedience and the anxiety to pursue the journey, the latter feeling prevailed and I wrote to my parents acquainting them with my resolve. The idea of turning back from a mere apprehension of danger when my companions were ready to encounter the risks of the journey, and thus to lose the finest opportunity of seeing a hitherto unexplored country, was so repulsive to my feelings, that in this instance I disobeyed the parental injunction, hoping that on my return a good account of my travels would pacify them and make them forget the anxieties which, under their tender feelings, they would suffer during my absence.

On the summit, or rather on the plateau, of Roggeveld Berg, the inhabitants had deserted their farms for the Karoo, to save their cattle and sheep from the effect of cold and snow,—a practice they were in the habit of following annually with their families.

At Roggeveld Berg, with the ready assistance of the field-cornet, Gerrit Maritz, we were supplied by a Mr. Cornelis Coetzee with another wagon and oxen, and provisions, such as flour, &c., a troop of sheep and lambs followed our train as we proceeded, and five of the farmers who were to accompany us on the journey for our guidance and protection, were here added to our number, viz. :

Frans Kruger.

Johannes Hendrik Cloete.

Johannes Stephanus Maritz.  
 Caspar Snyder, and  
 Pieter Jacobs.

On the mountain, we suffered much from cold and rain.

Encamped on the Riet River, we obtained intelligence from a farmer, Jacobus Erasmus, who casually joined us, that the river abounded with fish. Having to wait for relays, we accompanied him to a part of the stream, where we found a large shoal and caught in our seine about one hundred and fifty fish of three different species; the largest one foot and seven inches long, was in circumference round the belly five and a half inches, and was of a green olive colour on the back and yellow under the belly, resembling in shape our Cape mullet (*harder*). The second species had a larger head and smaller eyes, was silvery white under the belly and blueish on the back, measuring (the largest) from head to tail one foot and five inches, and round the middle four and a half inches, and the last also much resembled our Cape mullet.

Having returned to our camp, the haul was placed at the disposal of our good-natured and humorous cook Primrose, who certainly in the shape of roasts and boils produced some very savoury dishes. The only objection to these otherwise delicate fish was the many bones one has to avoid in enjoying them.

Here we saw the first tracks of a lion, so recent that he appeared to have wandered in our neighbourhood during the night.

On leaving the Riet River we passed the Van der Walt's Poort, a passage between two steep hills. Here it

was we were informed the Bushmen were in the habit of retiring with stolen cattle or sheep, and especially to that portion called the Bonteberg, which was too rocky and steep to be ascended with horses. The Riet River—Tafel Berg or Table Mountain—was also seen at a distance: it had a flat triangular form, and looked like the foot of a cone divided and deprived of its top. Travelling further northwards we were joined by two other farmers, David Lombaard and David Kruger, and four Hottentots to be added to our train. Having advanced as far as the Kleyn Riet River we were detained through not receiving expected relays; but we were again successful in catching nearly the same number of fish as before. Some of the oxen ultimately supplied were found unfit, and this caused a little embarrassment.

The muster above mentioned was made before we left Brakkefontein on the boundary.

My next section will contain our travels from the boundary to Letako. But previous to my closing this sketch, I will extract some observations from my manuscript.

Whilst travelling amongst the colonists to the boundary, I met from some of them true kindness and hospitality: they indeed proved on our arrival at their farms that hospitality was not undeservedly ascribed to them as one of their distinguishing virtues by travellers in South Africa.

The colonists of European descent settled in the country as far back as the extremity of Bokkeveld, inhabit in many parts a beautiful and productive region, cultivated by some according to their means and the extent of



their knowledge, by others neglected for want of means and inclination to exert themselves, so that there was great room for improvement ; some lived in opulence such as the country could afford, others in great poverty. Happy was the man who owned a farm unencumbered by debt, for unless he suffered great losses in slaves or cattle, or some other cause, he might be considered as settled for life, and required only the advantages which civilized society and town life afford.

The occupation of the farmers, especially at the Koebergen, Swartland (now Malmesbury), Roodesand (now Tulbagh), was chiefly limited to the growth of grain, but some cultivated vines in the lastmentioned village, Roodesand. Beyond the Witzenberg and Hexe River, in the Cold and Warm Bokkeveld, breeding of cattle seemed to be the principal occupation of the farmer, although fruits, including the cherry, are produced in perfection. In the Bokkevels the grape grows, though not fit to make wine, but much brandy is distilled, which is bought with avidity by the more distant farmers and is also largely used for home consumption, mostly in little drams called *sopies*. This word, by-the-by, I find used in the earliest days of the colony and at the time when Father van Riebeek used to treat the natives and their chiefs on their visits to the Fort.

At the end of the Hexe Riviers Kloof resided a Mr. Wouter de Vos, proprietor of a beautiful and productive farm ; he excelled in the breeding of strong and fine horses, and his reception of visitors and travellers was most hospitable. Amongst other fruits on his farm, I particularly admired and enjoyed the oranges.

Beyond the lastmentioned pass lays the Karoo, a sterile and dry part of the country, crossed by the beds of several rivers, the principal of which are the Groote River, Doorn River, Oliphant's Rivier, Tanquas River.

At times these rivers overflow, but in summer they shrink into a chain of holes containing muddy brackish water, and some are entirely dry when the rainy seasons cease; the banks are generally overgrown with fine mimosa trees.

The plants in this part of the country are commonly thorny, and among the heaths is the "Kanna Bush," the ashes of which are very serviceable in soap-boiling, and are collected during the period when the sheepfarmers of the Rogge and Bokkevelden occupy the Karoo in the winter months, and when a large pot boiling to prepare soap is generally seen in front of the house under the supervision of the wife or daughters. Several species of the Ice-plant are also found in these plains.

When the winter season approaches the inhabitants of Roggeveld and Bokkeveld leave their farms and descend to the Karoo Flats, with their movables and flocks, to avoid the danger of mortality from the excessive cold caused by the heavy falls of snow; their houses are then left solitary and closed, and the occupants, when in the Karoo, reside in small houses, or rather huts, consisting generally of but one room with a fire place and a small entrance hall, adjoining their sheep-folds (*kraals*), which are so situated that those inside the dwelling can easily protect all points by their muskets against rapacious animals or robbers: in former days, the kraals used sometimes to be attacked by Bushmen. Others of these nomads live with their families in large

wagons and under tents, contrived by spreading out the wagon covering, watching their flocks in the pasturages to which they wandered, and were constantly shifting their station as they required fresh supplies of grass and water. I have often seen flocks protected at night by large fires made by the herds, who were usually armed; these watchers, if questioned at any hour during night, could state with accuracy the hour. I have been struck with their precision, guided as they are solely by the starry heavens; the "seven stars" (pleiades), the morning and evening stars in particular, and others of magnitude, were their chief means of observation. The Hottentots were of much service and assistance as herdsmen.

The mountains we passed were chiefly—the t'Koedoe Mountains, Paardenberg Mountains, Gousbloemskloof Mountains, and Windheuvel Mountains.

The surface of the karoo is commonly flat, with rocks of a brownish colour; amongst the latter grew a variety of the aloe-plant. The soil consists of a light fine red sand, penetrating through clothing to the skin, and in some parts of small reddish stones. Quachas, ostriches, antelopes, hares, partridges, and the large korhaan (a species of bustard), the wild peacock or paauw (another bustard) inhabit these plains. Swarms of locusts appear at times and destroy the herbage, to the great privation and injury of the cattle. The tract between Bokke and Roggeveld is certainly the most barren I saw during my journey.

And now, my gentle reader, you will, I hope, patiently accompany me while about to ascend the Roggevelds Berg to the country beyond.

The ascent of the mountain is uncommonly steep and dangerous for wagons. About the middle is the *Blaauwe (or blue) bank*, requiring all the skill of an expert driver to turn round the windings, besides several rough places. However, we reached the summit without accident, and I expected to meet again with a fine country, but found myself disappointed. The Karoo plains presented from that height an extensive view of some hours' journey distance, crossed by various roads; the land appeared hardly different from the Karoo we had left behind, while I could perceive no descent from the mountain top. Being elevated several thousand feet above the level of the sea, I could easily account for that excessive cold which drove the farmers with their families and flocks to the lower plains of the Karoo; in fact, we were not long on this elevation before we could speak from experience of the severity of the climate.

Amongst the heaths which appeared to me differing very little from those in the Karoo, I found one named the "*harpuis*" (rosin) bush, containing a juice of a gluey substance, having the scent of rosin. Of this herb the sheep are particularly fond, and it forms their chief nutriment.

The inhabitants of this region did not appear to be as civilized in manners as those of the Bokkeveld. They are often content to do without bread, using "*biltong*" (dried raw meat, generally of game) as a substitute with their meat. Want of education deprived them of opportunity of mental improvement, and some of them could not even write their names. They are, however, generally good-natured and hospitable, but secluded

from intercourse with the more progressive of our colonists, and their backwardness contrasted strongly with the advancement of the age.

The pride of this people is to possess a good long gun or musket of rather large calibre, carrying the ball with accuracy at fair distance, and it is astonishing how precisely they make and regulate sights to their guns. The next desirable object is a good horse, strong and trained for the chase ; these, and a good housewife and strong healthy children, a covered or tent wagon with a strong span of oxen, to convey family and baggage, a suitable resting-place (legplek) in the Karoo, with plenty of grass in the season, and the kanna bush for soap-boiling, and a productive and sound flock of sheep (in those days, the hairy and long-tailed description), were then the summit of wishes of that plain, honest, and wandering race, the inhabitants of Roggeveld.

Their sole care seemed to be confined to the support of their numerous families, generally consisting of eight or ten children. A cripple from birth is not often seen, nor are consumptive diseases prevalent. The grown-up youth appeared strong and of florid complexion, but as they advanced in age, more or less inclined to corpulency. Medicines are seldom used,—the mother of the family is usually well versed in the art and practice of domestic medicines in cases of indisposition, and a source of comfort and help to the afflicted.

A religious spirit was natural to many, though some, as elsewhere, displayed indifference. A general rule existed in every family to sing in the morning before daybreak, and in the evening previous to going to bed, some selection from the Psalms, or the Hymn-

book of Willem Sluifers, a Dutch poet much esteemed amongst them. The missionaries to the Bushman tribes sometimes visited them, and conveyed religious instruction by assembling meetings known as “oeffeningen.”

Roggeveld then belonged to the division of Stellenbosch. The landdrost nominated the field-cornets of the different wards, who reported to him the local occurrences of the day, and every burgher was under his command to turn out, if required, in defence of the country. This service was known under the appellation of “*commando gaan*”—to go on commando—the term for an armed body of inhabitants dispatched on active service.

Most of the farmers travelled annually with their families to the market in Cape Town to dispose of their produce, such as soap, butter, &c.; this was sometimes attended with difficulty and loss of cattle, owing to the bad state of the passes and roads. Most of their sheep were disposed of on their farms to butchers’ itinerant servants, who travelled amongst them for that purpose. These persons, generally Germans or other foreigners, and commonly known as *slaughter’s knechts*, received, previous to their departure from Cape Town, certain printed instructions, and were obliged to attend at the fiscal’s office to swear that they would abide by them. This was deemed necessary to prevent fraud and deception being practised on the ignorant farmers. The knechts had extensive power to purchase cattle and sheep, and they carried with them a number of blank promissory notes ready signed by the butchers, intended to be filled up with the amount of the purchase

price of the cattle or sheep. These notes, thus secured, had such credit, that they circulated as a paper-currency from hand to hand until presented for payment to the issuer.

The farmer's dress then, as now, was plain. A broad-brimmed hat, well formed to meet the heat of the sun, adorned with a pipe stuck in the band; a woollen jacket for winter, and occasionally a great coat (*schauslooper*); a checked or blue shirt, or linen jacket in summer; leather trowsers (*from voering vel*); a pair of shoes, made of ox-hide by themselves (*veldschoenen*); this was the simple habit worn.

I made many more notes on this part of the country and its population and productions; but so much has already been written and published about South Africa that I refrain from saying more.

Happy countrymen! Many of you enjoy, in this simple pastoral life, inestimable blessings. Some of you, possessed of numerous flocks, command even wealth, and all lead a patriarchal life, whilst few are in real want and poverty. Averse to the introduction of novelties, you follow the example of your ancestors, and are, even to prejudice, attached to the customs of your ancestors. You require only information and guidance, experience and taste for improvement, and removal of some prejudices—the impression of early years. Some of you acquire a too easy habit of life, and are deficient in proper exertion; yet with rare exceptions you are on the whole an honest and good-natured race, and happy, though deprived of many comforts and blessings which civilization and intercourse with the more enlightened society of man afford.

Considerable changes have, however, been effected since the time I write of. The obstinate adherence to the breed of hairy sheep, with their long fat tails, has gradually been shaken, and many now possess considerable flocks of merino sheep. The animosity which existed towards the Bushmen on account of their murders and depredations has given way to better feelings towards the colonial races; a good understanding seems to have existed since the peace made with the Bushmen by that excellent man, the Field-cornet Gerrit Visser, in 1798. Commandos have, since that date, rarely been necessary, and we may consider that treaty and its provisions, as extended in our Placaat-books, as the foundation of the course of forbearance and humanity now exercised towards that unfortunate race.

The traveller cannot escape from the privations of the Roggeveld. Its inhabitants are deprived of those clear and beautiful streams which adorn the upper country, many being compelled to live on places with only a small fountain of brackish water, and no trees to give them shade or fruit. Yet so strong is our natural attachment to the place of nativity, that I believe many born and bred in the Roggeveld would not, if they could, change their position, so much are they attached to their flocks and simple mode of living.

Having passed the Kuylenburgs and Riet Rivers, of which the water is preferable to that of the generality of the fountains in the neighbourhood, I now close this section, opening my next with our adventures from the boundaries.



## SECTION IV.

I PREFACE this section by stating the route from the colonial boundary to Letako, the capital of the Boshuanahs.

1801.	Hours.
Oct. 20, from Brakkefontein to Commandofontein (passing several small lakes) .	6
„ 21, to Kruytfontein . . . . .	5
„ „ Sak River . . . . .	5½
„ 22, „ place of Hendrik Korf, lower part of Brakke River . . . . .	5½
„ 23, „ pan of Brakke River (the t'Kahaberg was seen in a southerly direction) .	5½
„ 24, „ Leeuwenfontein . . . . .	6½
„ 25, „ Klipfonteins River, on the south side of the Karee Mountains . . . . .	4
„ 26, halt.	
„ 27, to Schietfontein (passing the Karee Poort) . . . . .	2½
„ „ Elandskuyt (crossing the Karee Moun- tains, in appearance small Table Mountains) . . . . .	5
„ 28, „ Krugersfontein . . . . .	5½
„ 29, „ a small hill, passing the last of the Karee Mountain chain . . . . .	8
„ 30, „ Biezenfontein at the Buffelsbout .	2¼
„ „ Jonkersfontein . . . . .	7
„ 31, „ an elevated spot in sight of the Orange River Mountains in front, and the last of the Karee Mountains behind, passing two large lakes (salt) .	7

1801.	Hours.
Nov. 1, to the Groote or Orange River Poort .	2½
„ 2, „ halt on the south bank of Orange River	
„ 3, crossed the Orange River, also known as t'Gariep at Presala's Drift, and halted on the north bank of the river, according to calculation situate 29 degrees south latitude and between 23 and 24 degrees east of London.	
„ 4, halted.	
„ 5, travelled along the bank in a north-easterly direction . . . .	4½
„ 6, left the river and proceeded to an open spot, name unknown . . . .	9
„ 7, to Modderfontein . . . .	2
„ „ a kloof (t'Karaap) . . . .	4
„ 8, „ t'Akaap or Rietfontein (missionary station) . . . .	4½
„ 9, 10, 11 halted.	
„ 12, to Gatee t'Kamma, or Witwaterfontein	6
„ 13, left this fountain late and arrived in the morning of the 14th at Katzezigalee, or Buffalofontein . . . .	8
„ 14, to Joekatgoenie, or Dwaalfontein .	5½
„ 15, „ Welkomstfontein . . . .	4
„ 16, „ Makatzanie or Eenden (Duck) Fontein	3
„ 17, „ Magago or Yzerberg (iron mountain) Fontein . . . .	3½
„ 18, „ a lake Cossi, about 3,000 or 4,000 yards broad . . . .	6½

1801.

Hours.

Nov. 19, to an open space on a flat (detained three hours)	8½
„ 20, „ Klaboligani, or by the Boshuanahs Koeromanie, now Kuruman	13½
(travelled about thirty hours without water.)	
„ 21 & 22, halted.	
„ 23, to a fount Mapoetic	3½
„ 24, „ „ Moetgoaring	4½
„ 25, „ „ Gatarkomo	5
„ 26, „ „ Letako (the capital)	7
	<hr/>
	180
For detention deducted,	3
	<hr/>
Remain, hours going,	177
	<hr/>

On the 21st of October we saw, at a considerable distance in a south-easterly direction, the Nieuwevelds Tafelberg (table mountain) and Leeuwenkop (lion's head), several flocks of quachas, hartebeests, elands, and gemsbucks, and passed a missionary station at Blyde Vooruitzicht (happy prospect). This had been occupied by Mr. Edwards, a gospel missionary, under the direction of the society for sending missions into Africa and the East Indies. We found a large hut and some smaller ones, and a little garden where we collected a few vegetables. These were really enjoyed, as we had been in want of such refreshment for some time. Footmarks, probably of Bushmen, were found, and some had been seen in the last camp after our departure. We halted at Sack River, at a station formerly occupied by the

missionary Kicherer, belonging to the beforementioned society. The huts were abandoned and in ruins; only one was fit to be occupied.

October 22.—It was here that we saw the first two Bushmen, Jephta and Jacob. They appeared miserable wretches, naked and apparently perishing with hunger, as, trembling with fear, they advanced towards the camp. Their language mixed with a rapid klicking of the tongue, was wholly unintelligible, and unfortunately we had no interpreter. However, their signs were well comprehended: we gave them something to eat and a little tobacco. This cleared their countenances, and had such a reviving effect on their spirits as caused them to dance for joy. We understood they had been disciples of the missionaries above mentioned.

October 24.—Another Bushman was brought to the camp by one of our herds, named Witbooy, and was kindly treated like the others; his gestures evinced gratitude, yet we could clearly see indications of apprehension and fear of being killed, and his rapid flight on leaving us betrayed his uneasiness.

The first of the large species of animals, a quacha, was this day shot by Mr. David Kruger and Dr. Somerville. Here one of our Hottentots deserted, taking one of our horses.

The next day, Mr. Daniel, our secretary, made a beautiful drawing of this animal. On measurement, I found it to be in length 5 feet 4 inches.

circumference	4	„	4	„
neck	1	„	11	„
head	1	„	10	„
height	4	„	7	„
foreleg	2	„	6	„

I need not give any description of an animal now so well known. Suffice it to say, our Hottentots, after securing the skin, regaled themselves upon the meat, a portion of which was cut into thin thongs and dried. We also found wild onions, which were very acceptable.

At Krugersfontein is to be seen the grave of a man named Kruger, who had been trampled to death and destroyed by an elephant which he had wounded. His body was found and buried by the Coranahs.

At Biezenfontein, we perceived, at a distance, a party of eight Bushmen and beckoned them to come to us; but by their signs we made out that they wished us to approach, which we did, and found them fully armed with bows and arrows and prepared to defend themselves in case of being attacked. We attempted to remove their fear, and they exhibited a jackal's tail fastened to a stick, which they held up in the air and waved repeatedly, this being their signal of peace. Having reached our camp, we gave them leather caps mounted with copper plates, copper medals, tobacco, &c., and a sheep, which were immediately divided amongst them; but their astonishment seemed unbounded at the sight of a looking-glass and the light it reflected from the sun. This party left apparently well contented; three more approached, but only one could be persuaded to come to us. He received for himself and companions some tobacco, and left after being with us but a few minutes. Here we saw the first springbucks. At Jonkersfontein, the track of a rhinoceros was seen about five hundred yards from our camp; our search for the animal itself was unsuccessful.

At the Groote Rivier's Poort, we saw high hills and mimosas; one species in particular with crooked thorns, named the *wagt een beetje* (tarry a little), and several heaths quite different from those we had observed before. This poort is the entrance to the banks of the Great or Orange River, known by the natives under the name of t'Gariep, and leads to the ford we had to cross, called the Presocas Drift.

Imagine my pleasing sensation after travelling through the dreary karoo plains, with its brackish pools and fountains, to meet a river, the largest I had ever seen, ranging in breadth from six hundred to one thousand yards; the banks adorned with beautiful trees, such as the willow, mimosa, wild apricot, and other evergreens, with the tops of some of the branches hanging over and dipping into the water; the stream winding in some parts between high and steep mountains and rocks, sometimes divided by islands grown with trees twenty-five or thirty feet high, and the bed strewed with stones resembling the Scotch pebble and agates; the channel abounding with fish, and frequented by the hippopotamus; the bordering woods filled with pheasants, guinea-fowl, partridges, and several birds of beautiful plumage, such as the green spreeuw, various sorts of woodpeckers and kingfishers, doves, hawks, owls, and the white crow or Egyptian vulture. To this collection were added groups of the black-faced monkey playing their pranks in the branches; several species of the t'Koedoe and other antelopes were also seen approaching the stream, while the springhaas or jerboa basked and showed its white breast in the moonlight nights. Here also are found the ground squirrel, and the large wild or tiger-cat lurking for its prey.

I confess that never before or since have I been struck with such scenery, and felt such high admiration of the scenes of nature as on this occasion ; and to this moment I feel delight and pleasure at its recollection.

It was at this locality we found the missionary Edwards and his wife and family, and Jacob Kruger a farmer. This man was known to be a person of great resource and possessed of much valuable information relative to the interior and the natives, and was likely to be of great service to our expedition. Sir John Barrow writes of him : "At an early period of life his brother and himself having exercised their ingenuity in forging the paper-currency of the colony were banished for life to Robben Island, in the mouth of Table Bay, but before they had remained long they contrived, by means of a boat made of dried skins, to escape to the continent and fly to the country of the Boshuanahs, where the elder brother was trodden to death by an elephant (this was at Krugersfontein before mentioned); and the present man had been living among the savages on the skirts of the colony, an outlaw and vagabond for nearly twenty years. Informed of his situation, the party had carried with them a conditional pardon from the court of justice at the Cape, to which his long sufferings and willing services on the present occasion amply entitled him." Kruger had attached himself to Mr. Edwards on his route to the Boshuanahs (then known as Berequas), in order to assist in teaching them Christianity. Their party joined us, and this added to our train three more wagons.

At the ford or drift through which we had to pass the river was divided by an island, round both sides of

which the stream ran rapidly, and was about six hundred yards broad. At this ford I observed the Bushman mode of carrying sheep across the river.

They lay themselves on a log of wood about six feet in length, with a peg or pin of about a foot in length fixed in the middle,—sometimes two such logs are bound together,—and holding a sheep under one arm they paddle with the other, and thus cross the stream. Some of the sheep, however, got disengaged by struggling, and others got their heads under water; these were generally drowned. The flock I saw carried over, about five hundred in number, belonged to Mr. Kruger; out of these thirty-one were drowned, and the Bushmen were very happy to obtain the carcasses in remuneration for their trouble. Poor people! they were thankful, and this certainly proved the want of food under which they were suffering.

Amongst the occurrences at the ford I should state that my life was saved by a Bushman. I had been considered a good swimmer, and seeing the Bushmen crossing the river so easily, I expressed a desire to accompany them. They gave me one of their rafts, composed of two pieces of dry wood tied together at both ends, and I made the attempt to reach the island on this primitive machine; but having advanced as far as the midst of the stream, its force was so rapid that the rope behind gave way and the logs divided. I sank between them, and the front part turning towards the stream caused a painful pinching of the arms, so that I could not guide myself and began to drift down the rush of the river below the island, when fortunately I was seen by a Bushman from the banks. The kind-hearted



man jumped immediately into the river, swam up to me, rescued me from the pending danger, and thus saved my life, for had I once got into the rapids all chance of escape would have been lost. Thus, under the help of Providence, I owe my life to a man belonging to a nation described as the most savage and barbarous in South Africa.

The depth of the ford forced us to raise the lading of the wagons, and for this purpose also the Bushmen assisted us in gathering the necessary poles.

Whilst this operation was going on, Mr. Edwards informed us that about two hours' journey lower down the river the hippopotamus was to be seen, and anxious to avail ourselves of the opportunity, Dr. Somerville, Mr. Daniel, Mr. Edwards, a farmer (Frans Kruger), and myself proceeded to the spot. Description fails to delineate the scenery of this spot. Imagine the bank on the side where we stood overgrown with beautiful large trees; on the opposite bank a hill nearly a thousand feet high rising from the river edge, upright as a wall, but with a bend in the middle; beneath the precipice the river flowing through a deep pool or basin, and in that basin five or six hippopotami snorting and blowing from time to time as they raised their heads above the water. Having admired the interesting scene for some time from the thicket where we lay in ambush, our sporting spirit arose, and some shots were fired at the heads of the huge animals as they peeped above the surface. One of them was hit in the neck by Kruger; he was not seen again, and probably floated down the river to regale some horde of hungry Bushmen, while we returned to the camp

highly gratified at the scenery, though unsuccessful as sportsmen.

On crossing the fields near the river, we observed several circular and oblong holes dug in the ground, and Kruger informed us that these were pitfalls of the natives intended to entrap game. A pointed stake of hard wood was planted in the middle of the hole which was covered over with grass; the space between the several holes was obstructed by fences, and the deer approaching the river for water, avoiding the fences and naturally making for the open spaces, fell into these pits and were staked. These holes were dangerous to us, especially when riding on horseback, and required much attention to be avoided.

The grave of a Bushman captain or chief was pointed out to us here; it consisted of a large cairn of stones with branches of trees, and Mr. Edwards informed us that each Bushman on passing the pile was in the habit of adding a stone to the heap, as a mark of respect for the deceased.

On our return to the encampment, we found that Mr. Jacob Kruger had already crossed the river with his wagons. This was to us an encouragement, and on the 3rd of November, having prepared the wagons, we attempted ourselves to cross the drift. Our two first wagons, with Messrs. Truter and Somerville, reached the opposite bank in safety, but the third was carried by the strength of the stream into the midst of the rapids. The oxen not accustomed in the dreary Roggeveld to cross such roaring torrents, abandoned themselves to their fate and began to drive with the current. The Bushmen, sitting on the banks and seeing the peril, threw aside

their karosses, swam towards the oxen, cut the cords with their knives, and saved the whole span, save one : another instance of kindly feeling in this much-despised race. All our other wagons crossed safely, but evening approaching, the wagon was obliged to be left in the river in charge of some of the farmers ; however, we succeeded the next day in getting it on the bank, but not without the serious loss of those medicines which had been packed in a box on the vehicle, and were exposed to the effect of the water.

Before we quitted the camp there was an alarm that the Bushmen had taken some of our cattle ; some of the natives residing on the south-side of the river gave the information (a further instance of their natural kindness) ; but it turned out that two of our own Hottentots herding the cattle had been mistaken for thieves. On receiving the information, a commando had been dispatched to demand the return of the cattle, with instructions, in case of refusal, to retake by force ; but happily, this course was rendered unnecessary.

The commissioners rewarded two of the Bushmen chiefs and their people who had assisted us, with sheep, tobacco, medallions, rings, &c., for their trouble ; and they left apparently very happy and satisfied.

Our camp was visited by a great number of the “ witte kraai” (the Egyptian vulture or “ Pharaoh’s Chicken”), a bird something in shape like a sea-gull, but double the size, of a grayish color, with yellow beak and legs ; and also by a large brown hawk flying in numbers in the air above us.

The wagons being reloaded, we left the river on the 5th of November with the Rev. Mr. Edwards and

Jacob Kruger, who were now to be attached to our expedition, and reached, on the 7th, the residence of a Kora or Koranna chief and his horde at Modderfontein. This people resembled the Hottentots, to whom they belong; were dressed in skins, and spoke with a clicking of the tongue. Assisted by an interpreter I took down the following vocabulary of some of the words of their language. The *t'* denotes the click :

man	kgaukweep	tiger	goassaauw
woman	kalakwees	wolf	t'kohaau
child	t'kgau t'koop	quacha	t'kogle
boy	t'kaan kodaap	hartebeest (deer)	t'kam kam
girl	lato t'kodaas	gnu	ghow
house	kgoma	buffalo	t'kon
dog	alima	seacow	t'koes
cat	t'goaap	eland (elk antelope)	t'ganna
fire	t'geys	springbuck	t'koos
water	t'kamma	koedoe	geip
sun	solus	ostrich	t'kammiep
moon	t'geram	one	t'kure
star	t'kamaro	two	t'kam
earth	t'koop	three	t'nona
tree	heyiep	four	fraka
sheep	debigoe	five	kodoe
ox	goomaap	six	t'nann
cow	goomans	seven	hingoe
calf	kien t'koaap	eight	t'keive
black rhinoceros	t'kabaas	nine	goeësie
white	„ mogoe koop	ten	giese
small	„ t'kouwbahas	sea	t'koelie kamma
cameleopard	t'keep	hill	t'koema
lion	gamma		

At this place, a Bushman captain, called Caricoup, brought us a large piece of rock-salt, and to him and a Kora chief named Ilapaim presents were made of two leather caps mounted with copper-plates, medallions, tobacco, &c.

Proceeding to a pass known as T'Karaap we found, to our astonishment, a camp of Bastard Hottentots living under a farmer named Jan Kok and his family. This man discharged the duties of a missionary, and we heard from him a discourse in Dutch on the third chapter of John, chiefly on the subject of regeneration, which raised the admiration of Mr. Truter, who had been an elder for many years and political commissioner of the Dutch Reformed Church, who was not prepared for such extempore expounding of the Gospel in the desert from an illiterate man. The service was in the evening. The congregation, besides ourselves, consisted of his family, and several Bastard Hottentots who sat by a large fire: the silence of night, the scenery around us, the wild and strange appearance of those collected about us, invested this simple yet earnest religious performance with impressive solemnity.

Our forces being now all mustered, all the wagons having successively reached the camp, we left Kok's residence and reached, about half-past nine o'clock a.m., the Aakaap or Rietfontein missionary station of the Rev. Messrs. Kicherer and Anderson. On our arrival, we found them performing service in a building fifty or sixty feet long and about twenty broad, intended for a church, though more resembling a barn, built of spars and reeds and daubed with clay. We avoided disturbing them and paid a visit to the semi-globular moveable mat-huts of the Koras in the vicinity, but our approach alarmed these poor people who fled, and we returned immediately towards the church, where, after service, we were cordially received by Mr. Kicherer and his fellow-missionaries, Anderson and Cramer. Mr. Kicherer was

also attended by Mr. Jacobus Scholtz (one of my Stellenbosch schoolfellows, afterwards minister at Malmesbury, and whose son, the Rev. Dr. Scholtz, is now minister at Piketberg), and a farmer Christian Botman, who assisted in the instruction of the Koras and other natives. In the evening we had an opportunity of seeing the natives instructed in religion in a manner which met Mr. Truter's high approval. Besides the church, there was only one other building as yet half finished, intended for a school, and a kitchen of a semi-circular shape standing in the plain. This station has since my visit considerably increased in size and importance, and is at present a main station.

As we were approaching the Beriqua, now better known as the Boshuanah or Beetchuanah country, it was desirable that interpreters should be obtained, and we succeeded in engaging one rejoicing in the appellation of Kees Miklanga; and through him we secured a second, Ruyter Makarita, both Beriquas, and tolerably conversant with the Dutch language, and who were also to act as guides. Thus provided, and having been assisted by the Bastards with fresh oxen in place of those brought from Roggeveld, seventy-six in number, which were much fatigued and poor and unable to prosecute the journey, and having remunerated our native friends for sundry little items with which they supplied us and for some sheep which we bought, we parted on the 12th November from the amiable Mr. Kicherer and his fellow-labourers amidst their best wishes. We had an addition to our numbers in the person of Jan Meintjes van den Berg, a farmer, and his Hottentot, Booy, and towards ten o'clock at night we arrived at Gatie TKamma

or Witwaterfontein, where we were detained repairing the axle-tree of one of the wagons, and by a report that some of our oxen were taken by the Bushmen, which turned out to be incorrect.

On the 14th, we reached the Kabeetzie Galie, or Buffelfontein, where we saw some beautiful mimosa trees and a large number of cranes. From this place, Dr. Somerville and Mr. Daniel, Frans Krieger (a farmer), and a Hottentot, Hendrik Booy, proceeded before the rest of the expedition for the next station, with the object of examining the country and meeting wild animals previous to our arrival with the wagons: however, when we arrived about nine at night at a fountain called T'Joekatgoenie or Dwaalfontein, they had not made their appearance, to our great uneasiness; firearms were discharged without effect, and the night was spent under apprehensions for their safety. The next day a Hottentot brought intelligence that they had encamped under the open air during the night, an hour's march beyond us, and had suffered from want of provisions. We then proceeded to Welkomstfontein where we had the pleasure of meeting our friends. We were here visited by some Bushmen who appeared in a state of starvation, and gave them an ample supply of tobacco and meat, with which they departed making signs of having been rendered happy.

In our further progress we passed the T'Goaypa, or Blinkklips River, and arrived at Eende (*Duck*) fontein, so named on account of the number of wild ducks found at that place.

Hearing that at about one and a half hour's distance from our camp, a natural grotto was to be found, Dr. Somerville, one of the interpreters, and myself proceeded

to examine it, and found a cave abounding in red earth mixed with mica and iron ore. The natives dig this out and besprinkle themselves with the powder, after besmearing themselves with grease, which gives their bodies a reddish, shining colour. Above the cave was a small conical hill. The interior of the cave in itself was sufficiently deep to observe objects at its fullest extremity. Wood-pigeons inhabited its crevices, and there were several nests with eggs. The remnants of a fire indicated recent occupation. Having admired the situation of this grotto and gathered some of the ore, which was very heavy and glittered in the sun, we returned to our camp well pleased with our little excursion. We also visited a deserted kraal, where we found several horns of the buffalo and rhinoceros,—one of the latter about two feet long. At this place, the first troop of buffaloes was seen near the camp. Several of the herd were wounded but none killed.

Our next camp was at the Naggaga, or Yzerberg (iron mountain) fontein. Here the rocks on the mountains had the appearance of blue polished steel, and were so impregnated with iron that the needle of the compass placed on one of the rocks turned at least three or four times before it was steady.

On proceeding from thence to the Cossey, we saw many ostriches, springbucks, and hartebeestes about this lake, and several of the bastard jackals, differing from those in the Cape colony. “Cossey” means this animal.

The lake was about three or four thousand yards in circumference, girt with thick long reeds and to the south-west with a large wood of mimosa. We were rather surprised to find it nearly surrounded with holes about



ten feet in length and six or eight deep. Our interpreter explained that these were intended to entrap the game (which was in great abundance in the vicinity) at night when approaching for water; and we actually found a little steenbuck in one of the pits. It served to make a delicious variation to the *karbonatje*, our daily dish.

Shortly after leaving this lake, we saw three herds of buffaloes, about one hundred and fifty altogether, and our farmers succeeded in killing three cows. These animals approached the wagons in front and behind, and within musket shot. A beautiful lynx was also killed, of a red colour, white on the belly, black on the points of the ears and tail, resembling that of the domestic cat. This animal is the red-cat of the colonists.

The buffalo has been so well described that I will only say that those shot were of a dirty black colour, the horns bent upwards, the ears broad, and the hind-quarters low, so that in galloping they resembled the pig. The skinning and securing some of the meat detained us about three hours. At ten o'clock p.m., our oxen were fatigued and could not proceed, so we encamped in an open field without water. Pitiful were the cries of these animals seeking to quench their thirst. The Hottentots were also suffering for want of water, and the guides were uncertain as to our distance from any fountain. Our interpreter, Ruyter, thought that the nearest fountain was at a great distance. Those who have travelled through the African deserts without water can only imagine how dejected and low-spirited were all belonging to the train.

Early next morning, we left the camp. We observed at a distance several buffaloes and were agreeably

surprised to see the first camelopardalis or giraffe, and afterwards nine more. At a distance, they had the appearance of long trunks of trees bent on one side, of a grey colour. Dr. Somerville, who had the good fortune to approach them to within one hundred yards disguised the large brown spots. The height of the head appeared about eighteen or twenty feet from the ground. The farmers fired several shots without success. Their running appeared very clumsy, yet each gallop was a long stretch, so that the horses could not come up to them.

We also saw at distance a strange buck with a long beard, known amongst the Boshuanahs by the name of Tazectzie. None of our farmers had ever seen such an animal, nor was its existence known to them.

Towards evening we arrived at a beautiful fountain. Klaboeligani. How shall I describe the effect upon our men and the cattle? The first quenching their thirst in any manner, collecting the water in their hands and caps, or lapping it at full stretch; the second bellowing for joy, rolling in the water, and apparently insatiable. I can scarcely express our gladness and gratitude for this happy relief.

The tents being pitched, and we ourselves refreshed by bathing, Primrose, our good-natured cook, speedily converted the buffalo meat into a fine soup and other dishes, and this added to the mutton chops, which he knew how to dress to perfection, with the sight of his jolly face as he dished up, afforded one of those meals never to be forgotten. Oh! how sound and soft was my repose after the fatiguing thirty hours of travelling, and how sweet the slumber of an easy mind.

We had now arrived to within four or five hours' journey of Patani, the residence of Serakoetie, brother to Molihaban, chief of the Beriquas or Boshuanahs, and dispatched our interpreter Ruyter with presents of tobacco and other articles, to apprise him of our arrival and to induce some of the people to come to our camp. They were reported to be a very timid race, and we hoped by these means to open an intercourse and attach them to us. The same evening four of them came to the camp, and we had the good fortune to find that our attempt to open a friendly communication had succeeded. They undertook to convey to their chiefs news of our approach. In the evening, they lighted a small fire near the camp and amused themselves by singing and dancing, and this display of confidence augured to us a good reception amongst their tribe.

The name of these people amongst themselves is Boshuanah or Beetshuanah; the Koras or Corannas call them Beriquas.

The following day we were visited, first by four and afterwards by six Boshuanahs. Amongst them was Serakoetie himself, who commanded a large extent of the Boshuanah country and had extensive powers. Having learned how his people were received and were entertained, he seemed much pleased and remained in our camp.

Wonder and astonishment were expressed on seeing our tents, wagons, and the utensils and goods used; they were to them quite new.

The chief particularly admired shaving, I presume as contrasted with the painful operation of pulling out the beard practised amongst them, and begged to

undergo the process. Our secretary, Daniel, undertook to play the barber assisted by his servant, our droll cook Primrose. This comical character made all the preliminary preparations of towelling, soaping, &c., to carry out the chief's wishes; the potentate meanwhile, seemingly quite delighted, was seated on a camp chair with a looking-glass before him, in full admiration of himself. The secretary commenced in great style, but owing either to the razors being not quite sharp or not scientifically applied, the chief pulled sundry wry faces during the operation. When about half the face was cleared, he begged that his eyebrows might be also shaved. When one of them had been scraped away Mr. Daniel pretended to leave off, and Serakoetie evinced great alarm lest he should be obliged to return to his people in this ridiculous figure. However, after being kept a little in suspense, both beard and eyebrows were cleanly shaved, and the looking-glass flattered the chief's vanity, for he seemed extremely satisfied with his appearance. He was rather a tall man, and had a fine upright figure, a pleasing expressive countenance, but rather a "knowing" look; his dress was a beautiful kaross made of small squirrel skins; his hair was powdered with a mineral powder like plumbago, and his assegai in hand gave him a commanding attitude.

Our secretary, in the course of a pedestrian excursion, found, about half an hour's distance from our camp, a beautiful little river of fine clear water. The commissioners and myself proceeded immediately to the spot and saw the water flowing from beneath a caverned rock. We attempted to explore the cavity, but at a distance of about twenty-five yards, it became so dark

that we could not distinguish one another. The breadth of the stream in the cave itself was about twenty-five feet, and there were several bones lying about. Some fifty yards from the spring, the river was thirty feet broad, and a foot and a half deep. It was the source of the Beriqua, or, as the Boshuanahs call it, Koeromanna or Kuruman River. Delightful was the effect of this sight upon us who had not seen a stream since we left the Orange River.

Towards evening, we were visited by a severe thunder-storm ; hailstones fell of the size of marbles, and larger than I had ever seen. In the course of an hour we had a serene sky, and our visitors spent the evening with us, merrily singing and dancing around a fire. After the storm had subsided we walked, and I saw for the first time a wood of the tree known by the Hottentots as the *kameel doorn*, or Mimosa Giraffe. The trees were high, the leaves small, oval, green ; the thorns reddish, the wood of a hard substance, smelling like garlic ; the fruit a large white woolly pod, holding about three rows of seed, outwardly having the appearance of a green peach. The giraffes are very fond of them.

The next day Serakoetie requested to see some of the articles we had brought for trade. He appeared to be pleased with them, and insisted that, on our return, we should revisit his residence. He promised to collect cattle for us, and having received presents of tobacco and other articles, he departed, seemingly much pleased, leaving one of his followers, Moelooy, to be our guide to the residence of his brother.

We left in the afternoon the fountain which had afforded us so much pleasure and delight, and crossed

the Kuruman near its source. The missionary Edwards and his wife (formerly a Miss M. Schönnberg) remained at that spot to select a site for a missionary station. The secretary, Mr. Daniel, was the first European who visited the source of the Kuruman, and the Rev. Mr. Edwards the first missionary who, under the protection of our expedition, founded that extensive and successful missionary station now under the superintendence of that good missionary the Rev. Mr. Moffat, but removed to about three miles from the original station. We encamped at a fountain named Mapoetie.

On the 24th, we were visited by four Boshuanahs, who apprized us that their chief had already received intelligence of our approach. They received some small presents to promote our friendly intercourse, and we encamped at the fountain Moetgoaring, meeting on the road quachas, hyenas, and gnus.

On the 25th, we proceeded to a fountain called Gatarkomo, about a *schoft* (the common term for a day's journey) from the chief's residence; and the commissioners resolved on the next day to proceed on a visit to the chief, unarmed and under guidance of our interpreter Ruyter Makoeta, and to take some presents and articles brought for trade with a view to prevent the alarm which might be created by the sudden approach of our wagons and train and the people retiring, as had been experienced at Rietfontein.

On the 26th, Commissioners Truter and Somerville preceded the wagons as proposed, on horseback, attended by the interpreter. The secretary and myself followed and reached Letako with our wagons towards evening, and encamped about a thousand yards from the town,

near a small stream named t'Kakoon. Soon after our arrival, we saw the commissioners approaching with the chief Molihaban and some of his principal men, all apparently much pleased. The chief was about fifty years of age and had a very intelligent countenance. He appeared to a certain extent civilized, and was even polite in demeanor; he held a long *sjambock*, or whip of rhinoceros hide, as the staff of order, and with it enforced both respect and authority, for although a number of people had encircled us they were by his attitude kept at a respectful distance, and we saved from pressure and inconvenience.

In outward appearance and dress there was hardly any distinction between the chief and his subjects, except some red copper rings of native manufacture which he wore on his arms. The commissioners had been well received by him, according to the custom of the country. The people were amazed at seeing the horses mounted with saddles, but especially at their being so well governed by bridles. On the arrival of the commissioners, the chief having saluted them offered milk, of which they partook, and the natives expressed every sign of contentment while the chief signified his gladness and stated that he had known of our approach several days previously. The presents were then delivered; he examined them and appeared much pleased, particularly with the looking-glass. Thousands then approach our camp, mostly armed with assegais. Their great mass made an imposing appearance.

Being the youngest and smallest in size, the natives (who soon learned to know me under the name of Piti) honoured me with their more special friendly

notice. I found myself in a circle, where I had to stand a close inspection and tickling in the face, with a gentle pulling of the hair, to find out whether it actually belonged to me, a touching of clothes and long smiling stares; in fact examined as though I had been some curious animal, until, after half an hour's exposure, the darkness of the evening relieved me, with face and clothes exhibiting traces of the besmeared hands and fingers of my inspectors. I deemed it prudent to submit to this overhauling patiently and with good countenance to ingratiate myself with my new acquaintances, who overloaded us with milk brought in earthen pots of a neat regular shape. The next morning a still greater number visited us. The day was partly spent in examining the town of Letako, a description of which and of the inhabitants, with a specimen of their language, I reserve for a separate section.

On the 28th we received a formal visit of state from Molihaban, and stated to him the object of our mission, namely, to open a friendly intercourse and establish a trade in cattle on behalf of the Cape Government. The chief entered into a narrative, how that, a few years ago, he and his people had been attacked by the Bastard Hottentot, Jan Blom, and his party, armed with muskets; how their habitations had been burnt and destroyed, and most of their women and children cruelly murdered, some sacrificed in the flames, and the greater part of their cattle captured; and how, though superior in number, they were compelled to succumb, owing to the inferiority of their arms; he concluded, however, by promising, notwithstanding what had occurred, to produce as much cattle as could be spared for barter.



The merchandise with which we were supplied was then exposed, but out of the whole stock he selected only beads. It was agreed that for an ox should be given two pounds of fine glass and porcelain beads of various colours, or three pounds of small white, blue, green, red, or yellow beads, or three and a half pounds of large blue and white glass beads (the value of about four rixdollars, fifteen shillings sterling); to the knives they objected, as cutting only on one side, whilst theirs were sharp on both; to the tinder-boxes and steels, because they themselves produced fire by the friction of two pieces of wood; to looking-glasses, as being of no use; to handkerchiefs, as not being so strong as their leather caps. In fact, we found that Government had been misinformed as to their real wants, and had selected merchandise rejected by the natives as being of no value.

Our camp was visited at night by a wolf, which carried off a buffalo skin. We attempted to kill it by tying a loaded spring-gun to a tree, with the muzzle downwards and baited; but unfortunately one of the Boshuanah dogs was shot instead. However, a second attempt was made by placing his carcase under the gun and tying it to the trigger, and soon after dark the report of the gun being heard, we found a tiger-wolf, or spotted hyena, had been killed. Great was the astonishment of these people to find that such destruction was effected without the presence of any human being. Such was their abhorrence of the animal that each visitor administered it a stroke with a stick or strap, so that when Mr. Daniel wished to examine the skin, he found the whole body cut to pieces and not a fragment of the skin left. The flesh was destined for a feast.

One of the farmers, Frans Kruger, shot two bucks, of a species quite unknown to our party; to the Boshuanahs they were known as *pallah*, and were by English measure, in length,

From shoulders to tail . . .	2 feet 10 inches
Tail . . . . .	1 „ 4 „
Neck . . . . .	1 „ 1 „
Head . . . . .	1 „ 8 „
Circumference of the body . .	2 „ 4 „

They were both females. The colour was a general brown, rather lighter below the belly and neck; the tail was partly black with a light tip; the thighs marked behind with a black and white stripe, and over the eyes a white one; the ears were longer than those generally of the Cape buck; the figure was handsome, and exceeding in beauty, proportion, and other parts our common antelopes; the meat too was very fine, and better in flavour than even that of the springbuck.

Mr. Daniel made from these specimens the capital drawing which is to be seen in his published collection of pictures of Cape animals.

Two other females were shot, and a young one brought to the camp, which we hoped to be able to convey to Cape Town. Ultimately, a male was shot; he was of the same colour as the female, and had horns about a foot and a half long, black, bent inwards and wrinkled. Another male killed had horns of two feet long. Two more lambs, male and female, were brought alive to the camp, and several springbucks shot.

About half an hour from the camp was to be seen the ruins of a large town; the habitations were circular in shape, and the walls of stone, about four or five feet

high, resembling the houses in the inhabited town ; but none, not even the oldest of the natives, could give us the history of its origin or destruction. In the vicinity there were extensive gardens, recently planted with water-melons, beans, and holcus or Kafir corn.

The town of Letako we calculated to contain about three thousand habitations, and from ten to fifteen thousand inhabitants, and to be situated in latitude  $26^{\circ} 30'$  south, and in longitude  $27^{\circ}$  east.

On the 10th of December, finding that on the preceding two days no cattle had been brought to barter, we consulted Moelihaban on the propriety of proceeding to the Barrowlows, a nation about eight or ten days' journey beyond Letako, and requested him to give us a guide to the fountains on the road. He started many difficulties,—for instance, such as the dryness of the season, and the uncertainty of finding water, that the people further away were savages and cannibals, and would murder us, for which he and his people would be blamed and have to suffer. He added that, after having heard the report of our intention, he had not slept for three nights, so uneasy was he. The commissioners, though not crediting these statements, found it impracticable to proceed without the assistance of Moelihaban, and to avoid further unnecessary expenses, resolved to return, visiting in the first instance the residence of Serakoetie. We understood that Moelihaban had two wives and twelve children.

The cattle bartered at Letako amounted to only eighty-two, and two were received as a present from the chief.

The day of departure was fixed on the 12th December, but, before leaving, the commissioners resolved to

make Moelihaban and his family some presents, consisting of tinder-boxes and steels, knives, earrings, watch chains, medallions, buttons, handkerchiefs, caps, rings, scissors, tobacco boxes, tobacco, &c.,; and in return, he sent the two oxen above mentioned. We left him a signal, which, if produced by any party, would show that he might safely trust them.

We left Letako in the presence of thousands of spectators; hundreds followed us, and we heard them calling out in broken Dutch, “goeddag, goeddag, heeren.” They appeared a kind and friendly race, and satisfied me that their affection might be easily gained by good treatment; the cruelties they experienced from the marauder Blom were sufficient to justify at first a want of confidence on their part.

The second day after leaving Letako we saw two Boshuanahs with four oxen approaching our camp; two of the cattle had strayed from the number bartered, and two were sent as a present by Moelihaban, with a message that he was now fully convinced of our good intentions, and hoped to see us return the next year to barter for full-grown oxen and calves. This instance of honesty on the part of the natives in returning the bartered cattle struck us very forcibly, and confirmed the good opinion we had formed of their character.

I recollect that a young man, Toy or Touw, of very pleasing and affable manners and a follower of the chief, had been constantly present with us in the camp at Letako, apparently to observe our proceedings; he was again one of the messengers.

Moelihaban himself became more and more sociable with daily intercourse; he learned to take a great liking

to our breakfast and tea, and often made his appearance at these meals. We were, however, obliged to give him a lesson or two to teach him to sit on the camp-chair before he could comfortably join us.

We now proceeded to Patani, the residence of Sera-koetie. On the road an animal unknown to our party was shot, resembling the gnu and known amongst the Boshuanahs as *kokom*. The head resembled that of the ox, bent above the nose, overgrown with long black hair as far as the neck; under each eye a bare black spot, the horns resembling those of the buffalo, a black mane to the middle of the back, a long beard under the chin, a broad neck, colour dark grey, the tail resembling that of the horse, black to the ankles, the hoofs pointed and divided.

Length from head to tail		5 feet 10 inches
Head	. . . . .	1 „ 10 „
Tail	. . . . .	3 „ 3 „
Forelegs	. . . . .	2 „ 9 „
Circumference	. . . . .	5 „ 10 „
Height	. . . . .	4 „ 11 „

A quacha marked all over the body with light-brown and black stripes, different from the one shot on the 24th October at Leeuwenfontein, though resembling it in figure, was also killed.

We met several small hordes of Boshuanahs, and made them presents.

The missionary Edwards had moved lower down the Kuruman River at a place called Mapizi, where he and his companion had already erected a hut—(if I am not mistaken this is the site of the present missionary station); and we learned from them that one of their

Hottentots had been attacked by a wounded lion, and his arm seriously bruised and lacerated.

On our arrival, Serakoetie received us in a friendly manner, attended by several followers, some of whom sported parasols of ostrich feathers. We bartered only four oxen and lost thirteen. Patani was situated on a hill, and contained about four or five hundred habitations, and from one thousand five hundred to two thousand inhabitants.

Having made some presents to Serakoetie, we proceeded on to Mr. Edwards, who had completed his little house or hut, and experienced during the night a dreadful thunder-storm.

Our pioneers failed to find water in a direct line to the Cossefontein, and we were therefore obliged to travel along the Kuruman. On the journey our loss in cattle increased to twenty-one. Before leaving, we took final leave of the Rev. Mr. Edwards. Here I witnessed the privations, too often suffered, borne by a missionary. His habitation was a small hut of reeds, furnished with a couple of wooden boxes, a few camp chairs, and a table; his bed was a mat on the ground; his wagon had been much damaged, and the tent or covering nearly worn out; his span of oxen looked poor; his only servant was an aged female slave; his wife was approaching her confinement, while he was abandoned by his Bushmen servants; surrounded by unknown natives, and relying for food on his gun. Oh, how thankful were these poor people for the small quantity of provisions, powder, lead, and other little things we could spare. We parted amid best wishes, and Mrs. Edwards appeared much affected. I had

known her in comparative affluence, living with her parents, the Schönnbergs, in Cape Town. She and her husband trusted in the Lord, and were not forsaken in the desert, but laid *there* the foundation for future missionary labours, now so happily accomplished, and a blessing to present and future generations.

Travelling along the banks of the Kuruman, we saw extensive woods of the Mimosa Giraffe. One of the trees measured nine feet and two inches in circumference.

While encamped in one of those beautiful mimosa woods with which that part of the country abounds, three large buffaloes galloped by us, passing our tents at the distance of a musket shot. One of them, a large bull, was wounded in the leg, but had sufficient strength to approach the nearest thicket. Our secretary and superintendent Schultz were eager to establish sporting characters, and with some of the Hottentots entered the wood in pursuit. After an absence of about twenty minutes, we saw poor Schultz returning, hardly able to walk, bleeding in the face. He had seen the buffalo at a short distance from him, under cover, and on attempting to move and take proper aim, the buffalo at once sprung forward, tossed him up in the air and threw him against a thorn tree. The animal being pursued by some dogs was fortunately obliged to leave him; but he fainted after his return to us, and Dr. Somerville found, on examination, that the ribs were materially injured. The secretary who was near to Schultz, observed the buffalo rushing forward, and saved himself by climbing the nearest mimosa tree; but my friend Daniel appeared also to have suffered in clothes and face from the thorns which it seemed he encountered in attempting

to escape a greater peril. Had it not been for the kind and judicious restriction of Mr. Truter, I would have joined the party, and probably been another sufferer.

We now crossed from Klaboeligani to Cossefontein in less than seventeen hours. Several giraffes were again seen, and Jacob Kruger killed a black two-horned rhinoceros. The huge animal measured

Length from head to tail	10 feet	7 inches
„ of tail . . .	2 „	0 „
„ of head . . .	2 „	4 „
Circumference . . .	9 „	0 „
Length of ears . . .	0 „	9 „
Front horn . . .	1 „	4 „
Back horn . . .	0 „	10 „

The animal is too well known to need any further description. We learned that there were two other species, namely, a huge white one, known by the native name of *magveoe*, the other smaller and frequenting hills, named *kemen jana*. Ultimately, Mr. Kruger succeeded in also shooting a female of the white species. Her characteristics were the same as the other, but of a light grey colour; the udder had only two teats, the legs were thinner, and she measured

From ears to tail. . .	7 feet	10 inches
From ears to nose . .	2 „	8 „
First horn on the nose .	1 „	8 „
Second do. do. . .	1 „	6 „
Ears. . . . .	0 „	10 „
Length of fore leg . .	2 „	1 „
Height . . . . .	5 „	10 „
Circumference of knee .	1 „	10 „
Do. do. body .	10 „	0 „



Three blue elands were also shot; they were larger than the common or red eland, and of a lead colour.

On the 5th of January we again reached the Aakap or Rietfontein. Bitter were the complaints made to us against a Bastard Hottentot, Klaas Africaander, who had murdered his master, a Mr. Pienaar, assisted by a Pole, Stephanus, a man who had escaped from prison in Cape Town, where he was detained for false coining. Their murders of Koranahs and Kafirs on or near the banks of the Orange River were numerous and cruel, and their robberies of cattle very extensive. The injured parties begged us to obtain them assistance and protection, and to have these banditti punished who kept the country in general terror.

Anxious to render these poor people assistance, the commissioners resolved to visit the Koks' kraal, *lkoubalas*, or *bitter dacha*, a large station of Bastard Hottentots near the retreat of Africaander, with the view of obtaining at that station more cattle in exchange for the merchandise which now only encumbered our wagons.

On the 6th, we bartered from the Bastards several head of cattle and sheep, sold some of our goods to the missionaries at cost price, and left Aakap or Rietfontein, having discharged the farmers under our commando, who were glad to return to the Roggeveld. We gave them a wagon and sixteen oxen and the necessary provisions, and forwarded the first intelligence of the failure of our expedition with letters to our friends in Cape Town. We also took leave of our good guide and interpreter Kees, giving him a quantity of goods as presents and in reward for his services.

The Rev. Mr. Kicherer, whom we met at the Orange River, had the kindness to procure for us thirty-nine head of cattle, sheep, and goats, in barter for goods.

A fish was caught in the Orange River, in length three feet, in breadth eight inches; it had a flat head and no scales, but a skin like the eel, and which it also resembled in taste.

We were detained by the flooding of the river from crossing, until the 29th January, notwithstanding attempts made by rafts and other means. The thermometer rose on the 20th to ninety-seven degrees.

We passed several Kora hordes and kraals, and distributed trifling presents amongst them: they appeared very cheerful, fond of singing and dancing. We saw in the Mimosa Giraffe trees large bird nests, about three feet high, built of small sticks, and containing thirty small cells or separate nests. This hive, the entrance to which faced the ground, was inhabited by the loxia, or sociable grossbeak, a bird of the size of the finch and coloured like the lark, with a light blue beak. We had a splendid view of the Orange River at this portion of its course. The euphorbia with which the fountains are poisoned by the natives to kill game, grew on the river's banks. On the 4th of February we reached the drift or ford in that river named t'Keys.

At this place the river was broad, and divided by five islands into six nearly parallel branches. It took two hours to cross the stream with our wagons. Fortunately, we commenced early in the morning, for scarcely had we reached the southern bank when the river rose ten or twelve feet, though it was perfectly fine weather: the flood was apparently caused by rains in the upper and

more distant part of the river's course. Had this happened whilst we were crossing, the whole of our wagons and train might have been lost.

The view, however, was grand as next morning the river was seen in its full breadth, certainly not less than a thousand yards; the islands had disappeared, and nothing but the tops of their trees were seen dipping in the stream. Had this rise of the river happened during the night, the whole of our camp would probably have been swept away, for our tents were pitched close to the water's edge. We certainly had every reason to be thankful for having thus providentially escaped so imminent a danger.

Here we were met by a Kafir captain, named Danzer, who confirmed the report of the cruelties committed by Klaas Africaander. He stated that the miscreant had on one occasion cut tobacco in small pieces and spread it close on a skin, and induced some of the natives to pick it up, and while thus occupied, they were attacked by a number of Africaander's men, and cruelly beaten to death, and those who attempted to escape were shot. Notwithstanding such cruelties, his gang was daily increasing. Danzer rejoiced to learn that an attack on Africaander was contemplated, and longed for the opportunity to join and revenge the injuries done to his people.

A number of Bastard Hottentots from Rietfontein, meanwhile, arrived at our camp, *en route* to attack Africaander, and solicited assistance, which was promised.

On arriving at a small kraal of Bushmen, named t' Sarigaap, we saw a long hut of reeds, built by

the Polish runaway and vile coiner Stephanus, Africaander's colleague. This had been his dwelling, and appeared to have been also used as a *church* by this devout ruffian, as it contained the remnants of a pulpit, and seats made of reeds ; as there was the figure of a cross painted in red we presumed Stephanus to have been a Roman Catholic. We understood that he used to abuse the credulity of the poor natives, and assure them that he was sent direct from Heaven to convert them ; and when a fat ox or some other object attracted his desire, an intimation that he had received a message from above to claim the object secured possession.

On the 11th of February, we arrived at Kok's kraal, or t'Kowbahas, and found Kok's son, Adam Kok. He readily joined in the expedition against Africaander, and forty Bastards armed with muskets proceeded under him, accompanied by Dr. Somerville, Mr. Daniel, and a farmer, Botma, in a wagon. On the 17th, these gentlemen returned, for the wagon could not proceed further, and they could personally be of no service. They left the Bastards to act against their enemy as most advisable, and brought thirty-six head of cattle captured by the latter ; but both Africaander and Stephanus escaped. Meanwhile, preparations were made for our return.

On the 22nd, the Bastards returned with full reports of the expedition. Some days after Dr. Somerville had left them, they attacked Africaander's kraal, but he having received intelligence of their movements, escaped with Stephanus and his party, favored by the darkness of night. Having first extinguished their fires they retreated to an island in the Orange River, from whence

they defended themselves by firing with copper bullets, fortunately without injury to any of the party. The assailants brought back with them two muskets, one anvil, about three hundred oxen, and one hundred sheep, as spoils. The cattle were in part returned to the owners from whom they had been stolen by the banditti, and the residue divided amongst the commando. Twenty-three were tendered to us for the assistance rendered.

A Bastard, Hans Luykens, who had served as a guide, related the most fearful stories of cruelties committed by these banditti upon the Namaquas, of whom many had been murdered. Women and children, were tied to trees and, after being ill-treated, killed, and whole communities had been robbed of their cattle; so that these inoffensive tribes, not able to defend themselves with their inferior weapon, the spear, were now wandering about in a state of want and privation, many perishing from hunger.

The Rev. Mr. Kicherer and his assistant Botma, who had accompanied us thus far, left; and we, after bartering about seventy-five oxen, some sheep and goats, and witnessing the effects of a panic which had been twice created in the kraal by a report of Africaander's approach, and which proved he was the terror of the country, left on the 11th of March, giving some presents to Adam Kok and his ex-chief Hans Luykens.

We were obliged to return by the road Mr. Kicherer had taken to our old route, having failed to gain proper information about water on the road *via* Hantam, which otherwise, being shorter, we should have preferred.

By this time, my friend Daniel and myself had become expert riders on the pack-ox, and, being desirous

to shoot a hippopotamus, kept along the borders of the Orange River, nearer than the wagons.

On the 16th, we were gratified towards sunset with the sight of four hippopotami gamboling in the river near the bank. One would open its mouth very wide, and another coming up would catch its companion's lower jaw between its own in a playful manner; then both would sink and reappear, repeating the pastime. Whilst thus sporting, the lower jaw seemed to lay flat on the surface of the water, whilst the upper one opened. Having amused ourselves for some time watching this game, the Hottentot who attended us and had shot several hippopotami, was sent forward; he fired and wounded one in the neck, but not mortally, and the amphibious animal instantly disappeared. They must have been very plentiful in this place, judging from their tracks.

On the 18th, Dr. Somerville, Mr. Daniel, and myself travelled along the banks of the river to the kraal of the Kafir captain, Danzer, where we met with a friendly reception and were entertained with milk. Having missed the wagons, we were obliged to bivouac for the night in the open air, and returned to the camp, which had been shifted a little lower down, the next morning.

We found a small kraal of Bushmen gathering locusts for their food. The bushes and small trees had been covered with these insects the evening before. The process of preparation was simple. Fire being applied to the brushwood, the legs and wings of the locusts were consumed, the bodies dropped in heaps upon the ground and were collected the next morning, and having been exposed to dry in the sun on skins, when sufficiently desiccated they were pounded into a

powder, which was carried in knapsacks, and thus preserved, to be cooked with a little fat, milk, or water. This paste formed a material part of the food to this poor race of human beings. One of our oxen dying, we left it at their disposal, and in less than an hour the whole carcass was removed by them for food, while their expressions of joy and gratitude were unbounded. Poor fellow-creatures!

On the 21st we experienced another instance of honesty in the Kora character, for on the 2nd of February we had been obliged to leave a sick bull in charge of them on the north side of the Orange River, and now eleven Koras brought the animal back quite recovered. We were much pleased, and rewarded them with presents of knives, tobacco, and other articles, with the view of encouraging such conduct, as well as for the sake of creating a good feeling towards future travellers who might follow us.

On the 22nd, as we were upon the point of quitting the Orange River, Mr. Daniel and myself planned an attempt, assisted by some of our Hottentots, to kill a hippopotamus. We proceeded to a spot where a chain of hills ran towards the interior, and which the wagons had to pass round before they could again approach the river, for the ruggedness of its banks would not allow a straight course. We thought we might safely venture to spend the night on the margin of the stream, and that on the following morning we should certainly meet the wagons at the river on the other side of the mountains.

Seated on pack-oxen we left the camp, accompanied by three Hottentots, armed with muskets and abundance

of powder and ball; and confident of attaining our aim, we proceeded along the banks. We were highly gratified with the scenery the first day, but missed the object of our excursion. At about eight o'clock in the evening we reached a little thicket of trees, took up our quarters for the night, and lighted a fire. The weather was serene and calm, the least noise or approach of a hippopotamus could have been heard, and we prostrated ourselves on the grass full of happy expectations; but how great was our surprise, when, at about ten o'clock, we were awakened from our slumbers by loud claps of thunder and vivid flashes of lightning. We got up and saw the horizon filled with black clouds, driven on by a violent wind, and instantly there poured down such a heavy rain that not a dry thread was left on our bodies.

When this deluge began to subside we applied to our Hottentot in charge of the bread and meat for a supply, but alas, he had, or pretended to have, lost it. This was indeed distressing. By midnight the air was clear, and a cool breeze playing through our wet clothes made us shiver. We attempted to light a fire, but the wood about us was so saturated by the rain that we failed; sleep had abandoned us, and we waited impatiently the dawning of day.

The morning which set in was happily bright, the sun rose majestically above the hills near us and spread its lustre over the beautiful scenery of nature around us. We felt its happy effect on our wet garments, and never was a morning more welcome to mortals than the one we saw breaking.

In the cheering hope of meeting the wagons on the other side of the chain of mountains, we commenced



our march. After travelling an hour we heard a loud outcry from a number of people on the opposite side of the river; they appeared to be in great glee, and we could see they were skinning a sea-cow. We beckoned and called out to them, when two men seated themselves on some pieces of wood and crossed the river. On their arrival we recognized them as Bushmen, one of them fortunately speaking a little of the Hottentot language. On inquiry, he appeared to know something of our wagons, and promised to conduct us towards them; the other undertook to supply us with some of the sea-cow flesh, and again crossed the river.

We left the river, leaving two of the Hottentots who were anxious to shoot a sea-cow, and took the third with us, making sure of reaching the wagons under our guide. Having travelled, however, two hours, no Bushman followed with the promised meat; and instead of reaching our camp, we found ourselves suddenly in a Bushman kraal. On perceiving us, men, women, and children assembled on a small height about twenty yards from us. They appeared bewildered and astonished, nor could we prevail upon them to give us something to satisfy our hunger; all they offered was a small quantity of locusts prepared in fat. This, however, was too disgusting to accept, hungry as we were. Our position now appeared rather hopeless, but we resolved to move onward, and promised the Bushmen presents if they could convey us to the wagons, but they merely offered to bring us to another Bushmen kraal in one of the kloofs of the hills in our rear. Their arming themselves, moreover, with other preparations meanwhile did not indicate peaceable intentions, and so we left.

After proceeding about a mile, the Bushman guide left us under the pretence of going to smoke a pipe with his comrades. We waited a long time, but he never returned, and we were thus left in this unknown desert solely with one Hottentot, wholly out of our route and amongst these lonely mountains.

We proceeded onwards for another half hour, and saw a long kloof in the hills leading towards the point from whence we started, and it struck us that the wagons might have crossed through it, in which case we could follow their track. We resolved consequently to enter the kloof, which we did, and rode until dark without finding any traces of the wagons. Night fell, and we found ourselves on an immense plain, which produced only a few low thorn bushes. Exhausted, hungry, and low-spirited, we tied our poor pack-oxen, which had hardly touched any grass during our travelling, to these bushes, and laid ourselves down on the barren ground. The appearance of the heavens augured a terrible night. At a distance, flashes of lightning were seen emanating from dark clouds, thunder was heard gradually approaching the spot where we were, and the mountains near us re-echoed the rattling noise. About ten o'clock, the lightning became so vivid that the smallest rock could be discerned; the peals of thunder were awful, and torrents of rain succeeded. The night was terrible, and sleep deserted our eyes. The state of uncertainty of our position was most trying, and to this was added the apprehension that we might be pursued by the Bushmen for the sake of our oxen, and we were defenceless, for muskets and powder were too wet to be used. Being kept awake perhaps prevented our getting benumbed.

The day at last broke. Before us was a level desert as far as the eye could reach, behind barren mountains with nothing but a little dry grass and some aloe trees, known by the name of *kokerboom*, the trunks of which are used by the Bushmen for their quivers. We resolved to return by the same route by which we had come, and if absolutely necessary, to kill one of our oxen, and proceed thus provided with meat to attempt to retrace our steps to the wagons, which might be done, as we calculated, in four or five days. Our position was, in fact, desperate.

We were driving our oxen, already too tired to be ridden, when our last Hottentot under some frivolous pretext left us; and here were my friend Daniel and myself deserted and in charge of the three oxen. We contemplated killing one if possible, but here we met another difficulty, for we had only a penknife between us. The guns were useless, and the ultimatum was, that we resolved to run the risk of again visiting the Bushman horde and get them to kill one of the oxen for us, giving them a full share. We felt this course attended with peril, judging from the mode of reception the previous day, but there seemed no alternative. Mounting the oxen, one of us having a second in charge, and pensively reflecting on our fate, we rode till about two or three o'clock in the afternoon, when we neared the entrance of the kloof we had entered the day before. My friend, deeper in thought than myself, did not hear the sound of the crack of a whip, but it distinctly struck my ear. We gazed at one another in amazement and stopped; the crack was repeated; and who can describe the happy emotion felt at the prospect

of relief from our imminent danger. As speedily as our poor animals could be made to move, we rode to a little hill not far off, and, from the summit of that never-to-be-forgotten beacon of safety, we saw the camp at a distance of scarcely a thousand yards from the spot where we stood.

How shall I describe our sensations,—the happy look of mutual congratulation at so unexpected a preservation, the smile accompanied by a tear trickling from joy, the swell of gratitude in the bosom, the look above towards Him who had so providentially saved us from destruction. In fact, I can hardly describe the feelings of the moment,—we were overjoyed: and thus closed this first scene.

As quickly as possible we proceeded to the camp; and again how shall I picture the joy and happiness expressed on our safe return, certainly by none more than by the Commissioners Truter and Somerville, and, more particularly, by my good uncle Truter. He had made up his mind never to meet us again, and was under the greatest anxiety regarding our fate, and the prospect of the painful duty of conveying the melancholy account to my poor parents.

Our personal appearance helped much to increase the concern felt for us. Imagine the sight presented by two persons who had been about fifty hours without food, in clothes torn from head to foot, covered with clay, the brim of our hats so saturated that they covered nearly half the face, the feet exposed through torn boots. Such was our appearance.

Several persons had been sent out on the hills and elsewhere to search for us, but all had returned without success.

We were obliged, notwithstanding a ravenous appetite, to submit to restraint. At first, a biscuit and glass of wine were allowed. After bathing and changing clothes, the tender-hearted Primrose roasted by stealth a very small bit of meat, which, without the accompaniments of salt or bread, was to me the most delicious morsel I ever tasted.

When more composed and after a couple of hours had passed, we dined with the commissioners, who took care that we should not overload our enfeebled stomachs, and we cheerfully submitted, hungry as we were, to the restraint with the best results.

During the evening we proceeded further along the river until a thunder-storm stopped our progress. I never felt the blessing of being sheltered so strongly as I did sitting in the wagon during this tempest. We encamped near a small Bushman horde. They were enjoying themselves with playing their native music, produced by beating on a pot covered with skin, a rude drum known as the *rommelpot*.

The cause of the wagons not reaching the river the next morning, as we had calculated, was the heavy thunder-storm, which they also encountered on the first night after our departure.

Never can I reflect on this providential escape without expressing my feelings of gratitude to the best of Fathers, who thus preserved me in the days of youth, and, to this day, to record the event for my descendants and posterity.

On the 25th, having left some small presents with the poor Bushmen, we reached the spot named l'Jokohama, where we were to leave that beautiful river which had

afforded us so many interesting scenes and events, and so much recreation. A Kora captain, Slaparm, offered his services to guide us direct to Jonkersfontein, one of our halting places on our outward route, which we were glad to accept; and on the 27th of February we left the Orange River or l'Gariep, probably never to visit it again, and reached, on the 29th, Jonkersfontein, where we, after travelling so long without roads, over uneven grounds and fields, and merely by guidance of the natives, at last again found a regular wagon road.

Captain Slaparm was amply rewarded with tinder-boxes, knives, caps, copper-plates, copper-wire, tobacco, &c., and received a pass should he choose to proceed to Cape Town, and left much pleased with his entertainment.

On the 31st we were at Biesenfontein, and were visited by the same Bushmen whom we had met before. They expressed much happiness at meeting us again, and received a sheep. I was astonished to see the dexterity with which they killed and skinned the animal; each bone was separated from the flesh as keenly as possible, the bones were crushed, and, together with the raw kidneys, distributed amongst the children, who seemed to enjoy the delicacy as much as ours would cakes. The meat was laid on the fire, and, when half cooked, devoured. The whole animal was consumed in an incredibly short time. I can hardly convey the expression of the happy countenances and signs of gratitude of this native group. When night came on they sat around a small fire, a few bushes heaped up scarcely more than a foot above the ground to windward, and on the rainy side, served as a screen;

a lump of grass did duty for a pillow, and some small and bare skins for a bed, on which they appeared to enjoy as much repose as if they been the finest feather beds. I saw a mother with a child scarcely two months old lying naked in the rain, and rising the next morning apparently quite refreshed.

Thus had poverty and privation trained these unfortunate people; their wants were reduced to the lowest scale, and our trifling gifts appeared to me to make them happier than I have seen many since in the midst of affluence. I could not help feeling in how many respects and degrees I had been favoured above these my poor fellow-creatures.

On the road we were met by several other hordes of Bushmen. Our sugar was consumed, and they supplied us with beautiful honey, and were rewarded with presents. We had gained their confidence, and some followed our wagons. It struck me that a fair reward would secure their services, for they parted quite contented.

In passing the Karee mountains I was struck with the appearance of these hills. It was a chain as far as the eye extended of small Table Mountains; the tops appeared as if cut in a line measured by a rule.

At the Sack River we found that the Rev. Mr. Kicherer and his party were preparing a house, or rather repairing their former residence, for a missionary station, and felt happy to find ourselves approaching the Christian country.

Here we again experienced another instance of the honesty of the Bastard Hottentots. Two of them travelled fourteen days to inform us that a horse and ox

left at the Orange River were quite safe; the swollen state of the river had prevented their being conveyed hither, but they promised to produce them in Cape Town.

Two Bushmen captains, Ruyter and Slaparm, who had faithfully served us as guides, were rewarded in goods, and received a permissive certificate to reside, until further orders from government, on a piece of unoccupied ground beyond the limits once occupied by one Hendrik Korf.

On the 10th the last eland was shot in sight of the wagons by our faithful Hottentot, who rejoiced in the ridiculous name of *Viool Dikkop* (*i. e.* Fiddle Thick-head). The meat was excellent.

On the 14th the Hottentots who were not to proceed to town, and had attended the expedition, were rewarded by the commissioners for their services in money and goods; and Dr. Somerville proceeded on horseback from Kuilenburgs River to Cape Town.

We found that orders had been sent to all the field-cornets to be prepared to render us every assistance. The oxen furnished by the farmers were returned, and payment was made for those lost.

On the 19th we reached Tanqua River, where we were refreshed with beautiful fruit, such as figs, grapes, oranges, &c., at a place belonging to a Mr. Floris Visser. On the 20th we received at Field-cornet Hugo's, at the foot of Schurfdeberg, letters requesting that we should leave the wagons in charge of the superintendent, Schultz, and proceed to Cape Town, and that his Excellency the Governor desired we should do so as soon as possible. Consequently, Messrs. Truter, Daniel,



and myself immediately proceeded forward on horseback. We touched at the place of a man named Joachim Scholtz, situated between rocks and little hills in the Schurfdeberg. A hillock in front of his house was covered with flowers of various kinds; and in another in the rear of the dwelling, there were several small caves, used to shelter cattle and as a fowl-house, piggery, &c. The whole had a most romantic appearance. The owner of the place himself was a man of immense size, so much so that he could not wear the usual articles of clothing; his daily dress was a nightgown and shirt. The road hereabouts seemed to be partly formed by blasting of rocks. The whole hill of Schurfdeberg was an extraordinary collection of rocks. We passed also the Witzenberg Pass; had an extensive view of the village of Roodézand, now Tulbagh, with its fertile farms, vineyards, and cornfields, and of the roads crossing the country. The weather happened to be fine, and we were delighted to distinguish again the tops of Table Mountain and the Devil's Hill. On the road our attention was attracted by a singular rock, in appearance like the fragment of a wall, thirty feet high, with a large open square space nearly in the middle, resembling a door. We arrived towards evening in the village, and took up our quarters with Mr. Jacobus de Wet, a truly kind man, and his hospitable family. Here we again met the Rev. Mr. Kicherer, and on the 25th, having been kindly provided by Mr. Jacobus Johannes Vos, the Burger Senator (*Burgerraad*), at his place Maastricht, with a wagon and horses, we arrived safe in the evening at Cape Town. I now close my narrative of this long journey with Mr.

Truter's own words: "We praised God for his gracious assistance and protection through our long and dangerous journey over deserts wide and unfrequented, rivers deep and rapid, into the midst of a strange nation, inhabiting a region hitherto unexplored."

Within a few days afterwards I returned to my dear parents at their house, La Gratitude, at Stellenbosch: and how shall I describe the reception! Every mark of affection, and love, and kindness was bestowed on me. I was considered as lost, for a report of my having been cruelly murdered had reached them. The little brother and sisters vied in their caresses; my good old nurse (I see her as yet with tears in her eyes) was full of admiration of how I had grown; in fact, the whole household, my old school-fellows, and I may say a great number of the villagers, friends of my youth, welcomed me; and the anxiety to listen to the account of my travels and tales lasted for some days.

At last having been equipped for town, I returned to my friend Mr. Truter, to finish the report and account of our proceedings. His house was my home, and there I had the good fortune to meet daily the late Sir John Barrow and his family. The proceedings of Commissioners being closed, I returned in October, 1802, to Stellenbosch, having saved £25 (the first capital I ever possessed). It was placed in the hands of my good father, who kindly allowed me interest until, in later days, I required it on my marriage.

## SECTION V.

I now venture to submit to the reader a few of the rough notes made by me on the spot on the different tribes of natives, as they met my observation and from the best information, commencing with

## THE BUSHMEN.

The Bushmen inhabit chiefly the country between the colonial boundary and Orange River, lead a wandering life, in constant pursuit of game, wild honey, bulbs, and locusts, and live in perpetual dread of attack. They rarely dwell in any habitation, usually seeking shelter at the approach of night in the field like the ostriches. Such of their huts as I have seen were about four or five feet high, built of rushes, neither wind nor water-tight, and lighted in the evening and night by a fire in the centre, the smoke partially escaping through the openings between the covering, enough being retained within to make the eyes of strangers smart.

The adults are of small stature and light-brown colour; the new-born children are of a paler tint. The skin of the full-grown is apparently parched up and wrinkled, and generally looks as if scratched by thorns. Their hair consists of small round tufts, in appearance very like so many peppercorns; the eyes are bright, noses flat, cheek-bones high, and their hands and feet remarkably small, the fingers short and crooked by digging for bulbs and roots; in appearance, from want of washing, they are filthy.

The clothing worn by the male is generally a small skin (*kaross*) on the back, scarcely reaching the upper part of the leg; another piece of skin, commonly that of the jackal, is worn in front between the legs and round

the middle; he wears a sandal of raw skin tied with leathern strings round the legs, and a few beads or claws of animals round the neck, and on the head sometimes the tail of a hare, or other such ornament, or, perhaps, a leather cap; in other respects he is perfectly naked.

The female also wears a kaross, but of somewhat longer dimensions than that of the male, so as to carry in its folds the babe supported on her back. Round the waist are generally worn eight or ten rows of small pieces of the shank bone of the ostrich, cut thin and resembling beads. Her ears are decked with copper or iron rings; the division of the nose is perforated by a hole through which a small stick, three or four inches long, is thrust crosswise. Round her arms the strings for the husband's bow are twisted, in readiness for use when required; sometimes, in addition, she also displays ivory, copper, or iron rings. In front she wears a piece of leather with a fringe of long strips dangling between the legs, which is also adorned with rings similar to those on the arms. The female is also provided with sandals of raw hide. She generally carries a knapsack and a pointed stick, which serves to gather bulbs for food. From constant fatigue and from perpetual exposure, the female only twenty or thirty years old has the appearance of one double that age. Beauty here has withheld her charms from the sex; indeed, it appears as if this species of our race stepped in between the ourang-outang and the more perfect form of man.

The weapons of the Bushman tribes are the bow and arrow, assegai, and the kirrie. The bow is commonly made of Karee wood and very tough; its length is from two to four feet. The string is considered best

when twisted of eland gut. The shaft of the arrow is a reed about two or two feet six inches long; the head is a triangular piece of sharp-pointed iron, or ostrich bone, it is smeared with the poison of snakes or plants, and is fastened just below the point with sinews which are secured by rolling that part of the arrow over the tongue,—a dangerous operation, and one attended with great risk, should there be any wound on that member. When an animal is hit the arrow remains in the wound, owing to a small barb of bone projecting about the middle of the poisoned part of the weapon. To the stock of the shaft is a feather to regulate its flight. These weapons are preserved and carried in a quiver made of the trunk of the aloe, covered with a leather cap and holds about thirty arrows. An experiment made by Dr. Somerville, on a small goat, proved that the poison was not immediately fatal, but produced a great swelling, which apparently affected the vigor of the wounded animal, and caused it to be overpowered in pursuit.

The occupation of the men is hunting, gathering honey, and warlike, or rather marauding, expeditions. From being constantly pursued, these foxes of the wilderness are ever on the alert, and hold themselves prepared for defensive and offensive operations day and night. In more peaceable and industrious times, they gather gum, and dig up bulbs and roots, by indifferently using sharp-pointed pieces of iron or wood, or their forefingers, which are generally very strong. Reptiles do not come amiss. On one occasion I saw a party of them enjoying a large roasted snake, from which the poisonous head had been previously severed.

The poor female is obliged to follow the husband in his wanderings after game, and in search of ostrich eggs or other food. She nurses the children, carries the knapsack of food, and assists in digging bulbs and gathering gum and locusts. She, moreover, builds their temporary huts and does all the cooking; and patiently shares the privations of her mate. When in want of milk or food, and hard pressed by hunger, the Bushmen will sometimes abandon their children as well as the aged, if incapacitated from following the wanderers.

A more easy but precarious mode of obtaining food is to dig holes near fountains or rivers, and stake them; the pits are then covered with grass or bushes, and deer and other animals coming to drink are often entrapped and killed. Another mode is to dam the smaller outlets of a river and drive the fish towards the shallow parts, where they are killed with kirries or sticks. They are also acquainted with the use of the eel-pot, which they construct of slender twigs.

When hunger pinches they draw a leather or belt strap daily more and more tight around the belly, until the front seems to touch the backbone. There have been instances known where Bushmen have existed without food for eight days. They are correspondingly gluttonous and, like the vulture when food is plentiful, will gorge themselves until their stomachs expand to an immense size, and they can move with difficulty. When thus *victualled*, however, they are enabled to face want for long time.

The chief luxury of the Bushmen is smoking. He will travel for hours to obtain a bit of the weed. Tobacco is the first word uttered when they approach

you, as exceeding all other wants, and when obtained, their countenances are radiant with happiness. When a supply of tobacco has been obtained, the smokers seat themselves in a circle, fill the pipe (which is commonly made of a green soap stone from four to six inches long and about an inch in diameter), and after lighting it, hand it round from mouth to mouth. These stone pipes soon get heated, and if the party be large, sometimes the last smoker finds it so hot that he can scarcely handle it; on such an occasion, between the desire to have a pull and the apprehension of burning the lips, there would be a great struggle under the temptation, to the vast mirth and amusement of the first served and more fortunate smokers. The females join in this indulgence with the greatest gusto.

Another enjoyment is the process of smearing their persons with fat. The skin parched by the sun and exposed to all weathers, and never washed, becomes at last hard and wrinkled, and is further roughened by the Bushmen practice of lying on the ground and travelling through thorny fields, bushes, and shrubs, so that it wholly loses that comfortable elasticity which the clothed or more cleanly human being enjoys. Fat or grease consequently acts as a lubricating ointment and affords a great relief.

Occasionally, we had an opportunity of presenting our Bushmen friends with an ample supply of grease, and then would follow a scene. The elder personages first helped themselves, smearing their bodies to their hearts' content; the children were next treated, until all had changed their rough, weather-beaten exteriors for a

glorious shining appearance. Often not contented with this external embalming, they would drink cups of melted fat, and when asked for a reason, the reply was, "O mynheer, al te danig lekker om van binnen and van buiten te smeeren." (O sir, it is so very comfortable (or nice), to smear both in and outside). The poor creatures! how grateful were their looks and expressive of thanks their gestures.

The Bushmen use as the signal of peace or truce the tail of the jackal drawn over the point of a stick and elevated in the air. With this emblem of their peaceable intentions displayed, they generally ventured to accost us, and on ascertaining our friendly wishes hastened to spread them over the country.

Like many other barbarous tribes the Bushmen race is not wholly devoid of a taste for music. Amongst their instruments is one known by the colonists as the *rommel-pot*. It is simply a vessel covered with skin, and is played like a drum. Another, but less primitive instrument, is a stringed bow, with a quill attached to one of the extremities. This, when blown, produces a sort of humming noise, and is accompanied by shrieking, wild dancing, and jumping.

It cannot be denied that the Bushman, destitute of property, and under the pressure of famine, is often driven to beg, or even to steal, when the usual resources of the chase fail; but in the instance of our expedition, whether owing to kind treatment or fear, certain it was that we never experienced, among the many individuals whom we encountered, the least tendency to steal. Their food, by whatever means acquired, is shared in common among them.



In their wars and combats, they fight desperately. There have been instances, as I was assured, when a Bushman, having lost the use of his hands, has employed his feet to draw the bow.

Our experience showed that they were not void of feeling, nor ungrateful for benefits or kindness received. Their conduct at the Orange River in saving life of men and cattle at their own personal risk afforded sufficient proof that this is the fact. There are many instances where, employed as herdsmen and kindly treated, they were both useful and faithful to their employers' interests. When trusted with a flock of sheep on condition of sharing half the produce, they usually managed to increase the flock of their employer after the deduction of their share. Who can doubt but that in these unfortunate outcasts of the human race feelings exist which require only to be kindled by kindness? May the efforts of Christian and devoted missionaries for the conversion and civilization of these our benighted fellow-creatures be blessed plenteously!

The Bushmen whom we met did not appear to have any idea of a Supreme Being, unless their behaviour during thunder-storms, namely loud outcries, dancing, and playing upon their drums, indicates fear of a higher power. In moonlight nights, they practise similar ceremonies.

The beehive in the mountains is a sacred property to the finder. Woe to the man who carries off the honey from a marked hive, which is usually distinguished by stones heaped up before it as a beacon, for as we understood there have been instances when such an encroachment was punished with death.

With these brief notices, intended rather as a supplement to the observations of other travellers, such as Le Vaillant, Sparrmann, and Barrow, I proceed to notice

#### THE BASTARD HOTTENTOTS.

The great stream, indifferently known as the Groote t'Gariep and Orange River, runs nearly due east and west. It is in some parts navigable, and its borders court the attention of the traveller by the numerous mimosa, willow, wild apricot, and other fine trees which shade its waters; the rozyntjes or raisin tree (which bears a berry resembling currants in taste), the t'ganna bush, the ashes of which are used in boiling soap, and other shrubs which constitute the underwood; the number of wild animals, such as a variety of the buck or antelope tribe, pheasants, guinea-fowl, and other feathered game and birds of fine plumage. Its waters swarm with fish and the gigantic hippopotamus, while the stream itself is engirt with extensive grazing grounds adapted for sheep-walks; its bed contains pebbles of great variety and beauty, especially specimens of agate, onyx, moonstone, jade, cornelian, bloodstone, and "ruby sand," *i.e.*, minute garnets, which are found in quantity. A magnificent waterfall breaks the current of the stream at a spot lower than that to which our travels extended: it is described by Thompson and other travellers who have visited it as being two hundred yards high, and well worthy a visit. Alongside this noble river the Bastard Hottentots, some few Bushmen, Kafirs, and Koras had already settled themselves in different localities. Amongst them the race first mentioned enjoy a degree of independence and power but little known in the colony.

The Bastards are a hybrid race, originating from the European and Hottentot; their light colour and the long hair of many betray their origin.

In dress, manners, and habits they resemble the farmers of the frontier, as also in their pursuits of cattle-breeding, and their addiction to hunting excursions. Such of them as have not the means to obtain clothing, and are obliged to appear in Hottentot costume, are nevertheless to be distinguished from the original Hottentot. They are, in fact, mostly emigrants from the colony. Their habitations resemble those of the Hottentots, being the same semi-circular huts covered with matting, but larger; they differ from the last-mentioned race by being more prudent in making provision for future wants.

They are served by Korá or Koranah servants, some of whom receive from six shillings to seven and sixpence per month; and by Bushmen who receive, for herding and protecting their sheep, a certain proportion of the lambs. The more affluent amongst them possess wagons, which they repair with the neatness of a Cape Town workman, and several have excellent muskets, which they use with great dexterity and precision, ball practice being a favourite pastime amongst them.

Manual labour is seldom used in cultivation of land or for any other purpose. Cattle seem to supply their wants abundantly, and this naturally leads to a pastoral, inactive life. Undisturbed from without and contented with few wants, they appear to enjoy a tranquillity unknown to those engaged in the business and bustle of civilized society; to count over cattle and sheep on going to and returning from pasture seemed the chief

occupation of the men, who, to their praise be it said, are, or at least most of them, an exception to the other tribes in their fondness for bathing. They are good sportsmen, but not very courageous in meeting an enemy. This we clearly saw when, on one occasion, a report reached Koks kraal (the chief residence of the Bastards) that the robber Africander and his gang were approaching, for men, women, and children, on hearing the news, fled and sought to hide themselves in holes and woods near our camp, without an effort to defend themselves.

The chief amongst them was a man named Cornelis Kok, a Bastard Hottentot; he happened to be absent when we visited his residence, but we understood that he could read and write, and had been to a certain degree civilized by intercourse with missionaries and the colonists, and through frequenting Cape Town and the colony. He appeared to command great respect amongst his people, and by their aid and the services of the neighbouring Bushmen and Koras had in no small degree increased his flocks, which then amounted, according to calculation, to about 45,000 sheep.

Kok had the good sense to secure to himself the services of these native tribes by giving them a certain number of sheep in charge, allowing them half the lambs for their trouble in herding; their true and faithful accounting annually was proverbial, and thus he prevented both poverty in his neighbourhood and the temptation to steal, knowing such to be the necessary consequence of want.

By all accounts he lived in a style similar to that of the colonists on the border, and exhibited a good example to those about him, by introducing ideas of

regularity, comfort, and necessary conveniences, and social duties, which raised his followers far above the tribes around them. He was considered a religious man, and communicated the principles of his faith to those residing about him, thereby preventing much evil and many cruelties to which the people would otherwise have inclined; and thus he appeared not only to command love and respect, but also to deserve a power not fettered by restraint, and to maintain his directions by the good feeling and co-operation of those about him. His followers were not ruled by fear, but bore him willing allegiance from affection; his interests seemed closely connected with theirs, and his superiority as chief or captain was tacitly acknowledged. Union reigned between him and his people, and his power was supreme, yet not oppressive.

I regret that this man was absent, for from personal communication my observations might have been more interesting and detailed. I was obliged, however, to be content with such information as could be collected from those belonging to his kraal, and from the notice of circumstances within my own observation.

#### THE KORAS OR KORANAHS.

This people resemble in appearance, dress, habitations, and customs, the Hottentots. Their circular huts of twigs and reeds covered with matting are generally filled with smoke, having no other outlet but the small entrance. They are lazy in habits; some possess cattle, while others are dependent on service for very small remuneration. They supply their wants by barter with the Beriquas or other neighbouring tribes; their chief food is milk; they besmear themselves with grease and

adorn their skins with powdered ores. They are divided into small hordes, governed by chiefs exercising a patriarchal form of government and discipline; and they entertain no principles of religion except those imparted by missionaries, which some appear eager to adopt. They cultivate no ground, but enjoy at particular seasons a small berry, in appearance and taste like the currant, which they collect in quantity, and which when dried is preserved for winter use. Besides milk, their common food consists of honey, locusts, gum, game, bulbs; but they are very sparing of their cattle or sheep. Polygamy is tolerated, and women have no easy task under the domestic arrangements; they carry their young children on their backs with great facility, having a peculiar bend in that part of the body, and a great development of posterior, so that they can afford the little ones a very easy seat on a natural saddle; the breasts of some females are sufficiently long to admit of being thrown over the shoulder, and are thus sucked by the infant carried on the back.

The Koras are apparently one of the original Hottentot tribes from the southern point of Africa, who have migrated to this part of the country; they are as yet unsettled, and prefer a wandering life to a fixed abode. Everywhere they seemed happy and contented with their few flocks and herds, and their humble and easily moved sheds; of a cheerful and good-humoured temperament. From the first to the last quarter of the moon they did not fail to pass the greater part of the night, especially about full moon, in singing and dancing. This mild race was especially selected by Stephanus, the Pole, as proper objects to be duped. On his arrival

amongst them he announced himself a prophet, assuring them that he had been sent many thousand miles, expressly to promote their future consolation and happiness. Sir John Barrow, in the manuscript of his journey, gives an account of this knave and impostor, and his proceedings.

“ He built a temple under the edge of a thick grove of mimosas, erected an altar on which he encouraged these silly people to make their offerings, selected from the best of their flocks and herds; with solemn mummery he burned part of the victim and appropriated the rest to himself. Sometimes, taking the advantage of a thunder-storm or of the overflowing of the river, he was more exorbitant in his demands, and even found it expedient to require the young damsels to be brought to the temple. He carried these religious mockeries still further; at a little distance behind the wood there was a mountain of considerable height, which this high priest of his own constituted religion regularly ascended every morning quite alone, on the summit of which he was seen generally wrapped in a volume of smoke, occasionally by his setting fire to the dry grass, or making a blaze with gunpowder. He ascended this mountain, as he pretended to the ignorant Hottentots, in order to receive his instructions from heaven; but the real fact was that, independent of the view he had of imposing on the simple Koras, he marched to the summit of this hill, commanding an extreme view over the plains to the southward, to ascertain whether the officers of justice were in pursuit of him,—an event which the appearance of wagons at a distance would have given him timely notice to effect his escape.

“These impious proceedings being at length communicated to the missionaries of the gospel, they resolved, if possible, to seize the culprit and deliver him into the hands of justice ; but this sly impostor being apprized of their design, abandoned his temple and flock and fled towards the western coast of the continent, where, on the confines of the colony, he was recognized by a Dutch boer and taken prisoner ; to whom, indeed, he pretended to surrender himself, as being desirous to give himself up at the Cape. The boer allowed him to sleep in his own wagon, whose kindness he one night repaid, by cutting the throat of his host with a razor, and stole away to the lower part of the Orange River, where he joined the noted marauder Africander.

“Thus, in all probability, had not the zeal and the exertions of the missionaries defeated his purpose, would this impious wretch have succeeded in establishing a new and motley religion, partly Hebrew and partly Greek, at the head of which as the *Pater Deorum*, the name of Stephanus might in after ages have been rendered eminent among the ignorant Hottentots ; and to what learned speculations on the origin of this society might not the future discovery of so heterogeneous a mixture of religions have given rise ? Such is the danger of being led astray, to which the unthinking multitude of all nations is exposed, if once they forsake the customs and opinions of their forefathers, and commit themselves to the impostures of artful and designing men.”

Missionary labour and intercourse with traders and others, a fixed establishment and certain form of government, have however, since the period of our visit, transformed the social status and condition of the country,



now in many parts cultivated and improved to a considerable extent, its habitants, both in their temporal pursuits and in the practice of the Christian religion. According to late accounts the missionary stations amongst them have considerably increased. There is also a more regular administration of government and of public affairs amongst the Bastards, under the present chief, Adam Kok, son of Cornelis Kok,—and their progress in agriculture, trade, and settlement of farms is so far advanced that tracts of ground, formerly mere wastes and deserts, have acquired great value, affording a most promising prospect for the future.

I next proceed to offer a few remarks upon the  
 BUSHUANAH OR BEETCHUANAH,  
 originally known to us as the *Beriquas*.

The men of this nation are generally well made (I saw one about six feet seven inches high), of a darker colour than the Hottentots, only the hair is black, closely curled (or "*pepper-corn*"). They are often intelligent in countenance, and wear the kaross, made sometimes of the beautiful skin of the squirrel and other small animals, sometimes of the hartebeest, whose tails are left, by way of ornament, hanging from behind the neck. The most singular garb, however, is prepared from the paunch of the elephant; it is elastic, warm, and has the appearance of a thick white blanket; we saw but few, and these were highly prized.

The costume of the Bushuanahs is superior to that of the neighbouring tribes, covering a greater part of their bodies, according to our notions of decency. Their ornaments are beads, the claws of the lion or tiger, and tails of hares; on the head feathers were worn. From the

neck was suspended a pointed knife, sharpened on both sides, and resembling a small flat dagger, carried in a sheath made of ivory or wood, beautifully carved and ornamented with figures of animals. They also carried a sharp-pointed long needle, of native make, used to sow their karosses, to which a small leather oval snuff-box was added, holding a light green snuff, compounded from a mixture of tobacco and certain calcined shrubs, pulverized so fine that when drawn through a small reed of three or four inches in length (their way of taking it), it passes through the nostrils and escapes by the mouth like tobacco smoke. The mixture had the appearance of green Spanish snuff. The reed is generally worn in a small hole pierced through the ear.

Their earrings and earplates are of red and yellow copper, obtained from the Barrolongs. I have seen ten earrings worn by the same person, each about an inch long.

The copper plates worn by some are about five inches long and four broad, and they are kept very clean, and as they shine in the sun have a rather good effect on the dark skin.

Round the arms are worn rings of copper, beads, and ivory, or eland gut, and to their feet are tied sandals of skin, secured with leather strings crossed round the ankle and calf.

They are almost always armed with one or more spears (assegaïs), in length from six to eight feet. Their hair is anointed with a pomade of grease and iron ore, and their head dress consists of crane feathers and the tails of animals; the body also is usually rubbed with some sort of ore which keeps the skin soft and smooth.

The male knows no occupation save that of war, and to hunt, to make the kaross and watch and graze the cattle. As a warrior he is brave, and generally takes no quarter. There have been instances where, rather than allow themselves to be captured, they have thrown themselves from precipices ; one of those precipices was pointed out to us.

As hunters they are very expert. On proceeding to the chase, they assemble in large numbers, and on meeting game divide themselves into small parties ; one of these lies in ambush while the others, approaching in a circle surrounding and closing upon the animals, drive them in the direction of these concealed hunters, when a general attack is made with assegais and kiries, so that but few escape. The game thus hunted commonly consists of springbucks, elands, or other antelopes ; but even the buffalo at times falls a victim to the pursuers, who thus secure good sport.

Another mode of killing small game, such as the lesser bucks, hares, pheasants, korhaan, partridges, is by throwing the knob-kirie. This is done with such precision that the animal has little chance of escape at the distance of thirty or forty yards ; the practice requires much skill, which is acquired by constant practice and is exercised from the days of boyhood.

The principal food is milk ; it is poured in leathern bottles having a small orifice (besides the mouth) plugged with a stick. The milk is kept in the bottle some days, when the little stick is removed, and the watery portion of the milk escapes ; the thick or curdled milk remaining in the bottle is the part consumed by the

natives, who, for want of meat, corn, or other food, are sometimes obliged to subsist upon this diet for days at a time.

It is singular, but such is the case, that the men prepare their own vestments. The mode of dressing a large skin is as follows : they form a circle, and when the skin intended for a kaross is sufficiently saturated, it is tossed rapidly from one to the other, until it contracts the elasticity of well curried leather. The tail of the animal is preserved for ornament, as before stated. The skin is softened by grease and iron ore, and is thus made fit for wear. Smaller skins are carefully rubbed between the hands, so that the hair or fur is preserved, until they are sufficiently elastic. The prepared skin is taken in hand, and with a sharp-pointed iron pin something like a large needle or awl, these skins are sown together with the sinews of an eland or other buck, with a neatness that would surprise even our connoisseurs of needle-work ; and very particular indeed are the Bechuanas in having their garments well finished.

They make superior herdsmen, and are very much attached to their cattle and sheep. In the morning their herds are divided in small groups, and placed in charge of different men, apparently the regular herdsmen of the town, by turns, who drive their charges to pasture at fixed hours and return before the sun sets to stall them in their kraals. On coming home again the cattle, in particular, are welcomed and caressed by their owners, and the favourites spoken to in terms of endearment or high eulogium. I saw one evening a man standing on a rock whilst the cattle were passing by as they returned from pasture ; he spoke loudly, and his

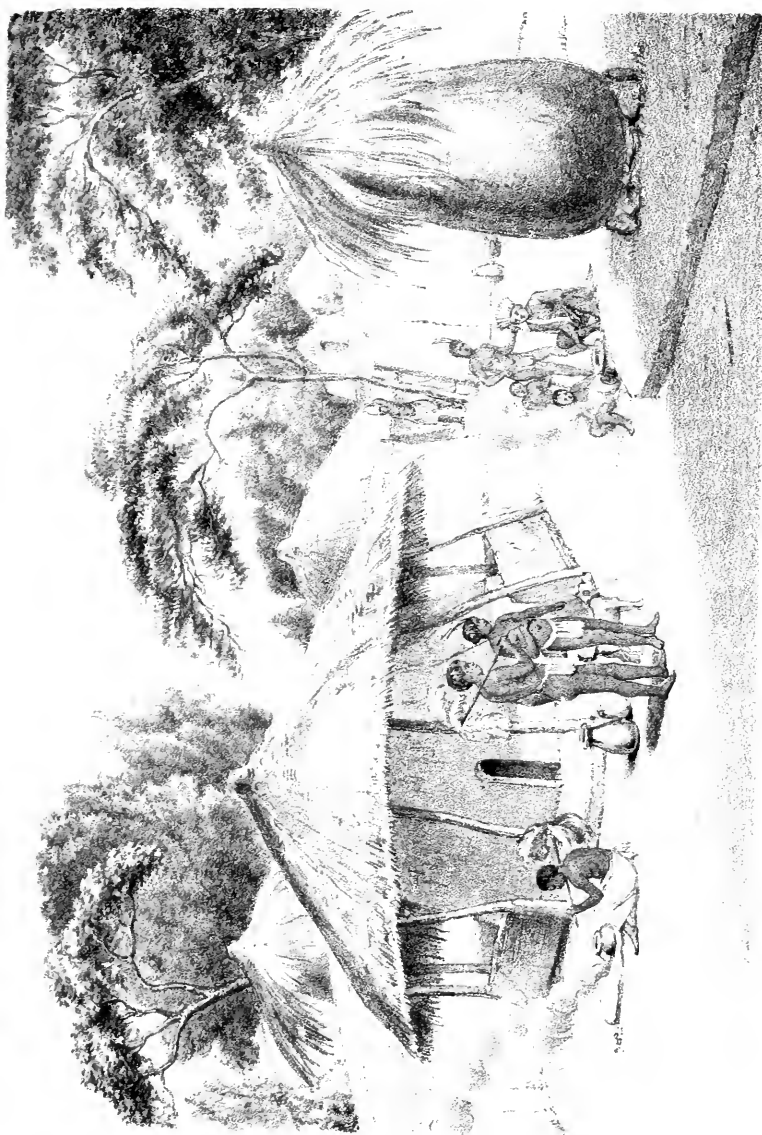
gesticulations were those of an orator declaiming in native style. His speech lasted for nearly an hour, the bystanders bursting out into loud laughter at intervals, as some of the cattle halted; towards the close of the harangue the speaker seemed exhausted. I inquired from our interpreter what was the subject of the oration, and was informed that it was all in praise of the orator's cattle, and in particular of one, a great favourite, whom his eloquence caused to remain near him.

When the cattle are secured, the men proceed to the task of milking, and carry the milk home either in wooden or earthen jugs, the latter manufactured by the women. The pastoral occupations leave naturally much idle time on the hands of the male portion of this community.

The tasks of the women are more severe. In stature they are usually shorter than the men; some when young are good-looking; their noses, however, are flat and their lips rather thick, and age tells upon them soon, on account their out-door work and exposure. Their dress is more becoming and decent than any of the neighbouring tribes—the kaross or skin manteau is longer and covers nearly the whole leg behind; the skin petticoat is doubled as far as the knee, and they wear, round the arms, sinews of animals divided into fine threads and plaited, and round the legs, above the ankles, rings of ivory or of red or yellow copper. Their hair was anointed with a pomatum composed of grease, fine clay, and dung well-prepared and mixed, and the small pepper-corn curls were divided into little cones about a couple of inches long, which, when powdered with shining ore, produced rather a striking effect as the

coiffured lady was pleased to shake her head. Strange to say, even among these children of nature, the female had sufficient patience to endure her peruquier's efforts for sometimes three days before she was satisfied or ready to show herself in public. The odour, however (water being never used for washing, but occasionally some cow-dung substituted instead), did not exactly suit our olfactory nerves. The ears were adorned with six or eight of the copper rings above described. In the morning, about eight or nine o'clock, the women are seen leaving their houses in groups of two or three hundred, with small pickaxes hanging over their shoulders,—some with children on their backs and a bundle of food, and generally with a wooden or earthen vessel on the head for water; they then proceed to work the extensive gardens with these axes, and sow Kafir corn (*holcus*), beans, watermelons, &c. Between three and four in the afternoon they return to prepare the family meal, consisting of boiled dried watermelon, corn, or beans. The corn is ground in a hole with a flat stone at the bottom, a primitive mill to be found in front of every house; milk or water is added in preparing the mess; after this meal they spend the evening, especially on moonlight nights, in dancing, singing, or some other cheerful pastime. They are, on the whole, of a very mirthful disposition.

The women are further tasked in building houses and constructing earthen pots or vessels, some of the height of six feet, destined for the reception of corn, beans, &c. They also make and bake earthenware, and take care of the children, and attend to household and other domestic arrangements.







The adults of both sexes have holes bored in the division of the nostrils, and carry a thin reed in it, kept in readiness for taking snuff, which is always inhaled through a tube. The females, especially, are much addicted to this habit, and even children of seven or eight years are admitted into the snuffing circle. I have seen them sitting in a ring passing the snuff poured out of the little snuff-bottle suspended from the neck by a small bit of skin, and inhaling it until the tears ran down their cheeks.

We had an opportunity of seeing one of their feasts when a son of one of the chiefs married. Moelihaban, the king, honoured the ceremony with his presence. He was seated on the rather elevated trunk of a tree, surrounded by several of his chiefs, and we were requested to sit near him. We found ourselves seated at the head of a circle of at least two hundred women, all standing and singing a repetition of a rude song, which is accompanied with a clapping of hands at each note. The voices were very clear and the effect produced by clapping the hands to each note distinctly and in accurate time was very striking. The performance could be heard at some distance off.

About forty or fifty young men were admitted into the circle and danced in fanciful dresses, covered with tails of animals, or skins cut in strips with the hair on, so as to resemble at a distance feathers. Some painted half of the body with white clay, and kept leaping two or three feet from the ground in different positions, fantastically imitating animals and uttering their cry, such as those of the lion, jackal, &c. The old monarch seemed much pleased with the agility of his young men,

and the feast ended by a repast of roast beef and Kafir corn boiled in milk. Several of the guests, who were in the habit of living on milk only, certainly did credit to the entertainment.

The Boshuanalis kindle a fire by the friction of a pointed piece of some peculiar wood, which is turned rapidly between the hands in a notch cut in another piece of wood held by the feet flat on the ground, until ignition takes place.

I experienced their kind-heartedness often, when walking by myself through the town. Milk was offered in abundance, and one of them used to send every evening, for "Piti," a pot of warm milk.

My train of young Boshuanalis when I moved to shoot, or fish in the little brook near our camp, was seldom less than twenty. The effect of the gun in killing, or the hook in catching the small fish, was a source of great amazement to the young fry; and when the first shots were fired, the report of the gun would make them drop flat on the ground. This timidity subsided when they saw that to them no harm was done.

The area of the town of Letako appeared to me to be as extensive as Cape Town, including the gardens. The houses are very conveniently built in the usual circular form, with walls about six feet high and with a verandah. They are divided into two portions, which serve for sleeping and sitting apartments. They are stored with large earthen pots, to preserve provisions; each dwelling is separated from that adjoining by a thick hedge of reeds or twigs.

Our first travels about the town created great alarm; women and children skulked away, and retreated

whenever we showed ourselves ; but our frequent visits familiarized them to our appearance in time, and we then had free access to the houses, where we were civilly received.

By the assistance of our interpreter, Ruyter, I collected the following specimens of the Boshuanah language :

sun	let-ja t'jee	knees	lingoosie
moon	moeli	calves	le-kla-lee
stars	dena-leer-ri	shinbone	mo-mo
earth	ummae	feet	loe-nao
fire	mololo	heels	lek-golie
water	meet-zee	toes	mono-ana
air	le-roe		
wind	pie-hoa		ANIMALS.
thunder	leë-roe	elephant	klan
lightning	lo-ga-riema	rhinoceros	t'joe-koe-roe
rain	poela	zamelopardales	t'oe-kla
head	kla-goo	buffalo	narie
hair	moreire	quacha	pict-zee
forehead	paat-kla	gnu	poe-loe
eyelashes	leentjee	gnu, black	coo-ko
eyes	maklo	eland (elk)	poe-hoe
ears	letzee wee	hartebeest	kamma
nose	nient-ja	t'koedoe	tolo
cheeks	ma-roa-ma	ox	komo
mouth	molomo	cow	komena-magali
chin	se-lee-lo	bull	poo-ho
beard	li-tee-lo	calf	pa-manie
tongue	lo-lee-mie	goat	poeli
teeth	meno	sheep	unkoe
neck	kili-kili	springbuck	tsee-pie
throat	moko-kwam	duyker	poeti
shoulders	le-roe-rie	steenbuck	po-loelo
arms	let-joog	wildhog	ka-loopie
fingers	me-noo-ana	hare	moe-klo
breast	schoe-ba	dog	untja
stomach	magolo	lion	tave
side	lo-kla-korie	tiger	unquay
thighs	seroepe	wolf	piri

jackal	poekoje	sand	le-haatzie
wilddog	le kan-jana	milk	ma-shie
squirrel	in-hee	meat	nana
baboon	tjoe-ee-nie	blood	marie
bird	hin-janie		—
feather	kla kala	one	moahela
fish	klapi	two	seeli
	—	three	barora
sea	noe-koe-konoa	four	bani
tree	se-kloo	five	maklona
house	nn-kwe	six	oatzelitzo
hill	ma-jee	seven	oashoup
river	mo-lapa	eight	marata-o
fountain	moetjonti	nine	gohera-monelimo
rock	lintjoe	ten	t'soeme.

Without wishing to draw too much on the patience of my readers, by any further details of the manners and customs of the Boshuanah, I will only state that at present the position of this interesting nation is entirely changed; old Letako is nearly abandoned, and the natives are at present under the influence of that excellent missionary, the Rev. Mr. Moffat, and his associates, who are settled chiefly at Kuruman, where they have established a flourishing missionary station;—the Gospel is there preached and read in their own language. Civilization has made great progress, and both in dress and manners the European customs are gaining ground, while the cultivation of their lands is extended and improved.

I close this chapter with a few remarks on the Boshuanah chief or king, Moelihaban. He left with us a very favourable impression of his judgment, discretion, and honesty. He was assisted in the government of his town by Macraca, a chief born among the Barro-longs, but who had for some cause been expatriated.

Moelihaban adhered strictly to our first agreement ; he was moderate in his demands, and when some of our oxen had strayed, though bartered from his people, he caused them to be sent on to us after we had left.

He commanded great respect among his people. The sjambock, a large thong of rhinoceros skin, was his substitute for the sceptre ; its movements enforced obedience, and the multitude, regulated by its exercise, approached or kept aloof, as was required. Often, when walking about the town, did we find the monarch seated amidst a circle of elderly and respectable-looking men, apparently in grave consultation, yet at the same time social and affable in manners.

When the trade began to cease, two questions were put to him by the commissioners :

1st. Whether he could not supply a guide to point out the best road to the next tribe ?

2nd. What was his advice to us on our proposition to proceed farther into the interior ?

To the *first* he gave a negative answer, besides pointing out the difficulty of obtaining water at the fountains at this time of the season, sufficient for our train and cattle ; and on the *second* he expressed great apprehension for our safety amongst the natives farther off, and advised against the journey.

The candour with which these answers were given, and his request that communication might be kept open between him and the colonial government,—in fact, his whole deportment,—convinced us of the sincerity and prudence of his advice.

No little regret, however, was felt amongst us that our wishes to reach the Barrolongs could not be accom-

plished. From what we heard, and from the information received since, I have every reason to conclude that to have opened a communication with that nation would have been not merely desirable, but practicable, and of great service. They were described as inhabiting a town larger even than Letako, and being more numerous and opulent ; it would therefore have been advantageous not only to trade, but to extend our knowledge of the interior and its inhabitants.

We parted from Moelihaban on the best of terms, and amidst his earnest solicitations for our return.

## SECTION VI.

ON my return to Stellenbosch in October, 1802, I rejoined the office of the Secretary, where I remained until the beginning of 1803, when the period approached that I should entirely leave the parental roof and join the civil service in Cape Town.

Previously, however, to giving an account of my future employments, I will endeavour to describe the village and district of Stellenbosch (being the first of the country districts established in this colony), the magistracy, its inhabitants, and their customs and manners in those days, adding some events which appear to me remarkable in the history of that part of our country.

The village of Stellenbosch is situate about twenty-six miles (or four and a half German mylen) from Cape Town, in one of the finest and most productive parts of the colony, in a valley surrounded by the Helder, Jonkershoek, Banhoek, and Simon's or Drakenstein mountains, and the Klapmuts or Papegaaij (parrot) hills, and at a distance are seen the Bottelary and Saxenburg heights. In winter the settlement is a small island, between the Eerste River and Klapmuts, or Plankeburgs Rivers, and other little streams.

On the 8th of May, 1680, under Governor Simon van der Stell, in consequence of disputes existing between the inhabitants about their landmarks and boundaries, the land surveyor Wittebol was ordered to draw a diagram of a piece of land for cultivation in that part of the country, to be named Stell-en-bos and to be divided among certain of the inhabitants.

In August, 1682, four heemraden were appointed, namely: Gerrit van der Byl, Henninghuisen, Grim,

and Eberts, to decide on questions of land-boundaries, roads, &c., and to report thereon,—and hereupon we first meet with the name of Stellenbosch, which the settlement retains to the present period, denoting Van der Stell's bush ; some, however, suppose that the name was composed of the joint names of Governor van der Stell and his lady, Van den Bosch.

On the 20th September, 1683, the village and its vicinity contained thirty families, and a court-house was built ; a schoolmaster was also appointed, to whom was allowed a piece of land for cultivation.

In January, 1685, the first landdrost is mentioned, and in August, 1686, Stellenbosch had already so considerably increased that, at the request of landdrost and heemraden, a secretary to the board, Mr. Sybrandus Mankadan, was appointed, as also a messenger and undertaker, Pieter Gerritz, and an overseer of the churchyard, Douwe Gerbrandt Steyn. Taxes on produce, pound-fees, and regulations relative to the water-courses were introduced, and an annual fair was established from the 1st to the 14th October. In order to encourage sharp-shooting and exercise in arms, a subscription was raised for a public butt or mark ; this was a large wooden parrot : the highest reward was given for hitting the head and displacing it. The exercise was practised on the little hill near the village still named the Papegaaijberg. A drilling-master was appointed to drill the militia riflemen (schutters).

On the 29th of July, 1686, Commander Simon van der Stell distributed at Stellenbosch to some new colonists lands for cultivation ; he inspected those already planted with trees and sown with grain, the rivers,



ditches, &c., and gave directions to build a church and public buildings; he requested landdrost and heemraden to propose fit and able civil and militia officers, and on their appointment the inhabitants presented their first fruits and expressed their joy at the arrival of their governor and promoter of their welfare;—a company of one hundred and twenty-four riflemen appeared in arms, their officers were installed, and the company fired three salvos. Having communicated his views with regard to the ecclesiastical and political state of the country, and generously distributed to the inhabitants lands, seed, and wheat for consumption, as well as full-grown and young cattle—thus combining cordial advice with support,—and having inspected a piece of land, which had yielded seven abundant crops, without manure, as fine as could be produced in Europe, Commander Van der Stell departed and proceeded to Klapmuts, about eight miles from the village, where he took measures to effect the destruction of the lions, at this period so destructive to the cattle belonging to the Company, as well as private individuals.

The commander introduced at the same time the first taxes, one destined to repair the bridges and roads and destroy obnoxious animals, namely, on every hundred sheep or twenty head of cattle possessed by the inhabitants of Stellenbosch, one guilder; and another, to maintain the church, namely, on every corpse buried in the churchyard, nine guilders, including three for digging the grave. A poundage was also instituted of three stivers for every head of cattle and two for each smaller animal found trespassing on lands.

On the 14th of October, 1686, the Commander Van der Stell spent his birthday at Stellenbosch; the

officials, officers, and other principal inhabitants, and their wives, waited upon and congratulated him. The burghers, eighty-eight strong, appeared in arms and were inspected, at the request of the officers, after joining the commander at breakfast; three salutes were fired, and the commander was so well pleased that he gave the corps half a leaguer of wine to enjoy themselves.

The burghers absenting themselves from exercise without proper cause were subject to a penalty of three rixdollars, the amount to be expended in silver spoons or medals, to be annually distributed amongst the corps.

This year and the three preceding were remarkable for murders and robberies by the Ubiquas.

In 1687, the first corn-mill was built, the district chest drawing ten stivers per muid as a tax, and fishing in False Bay was allowed by licence, and a commonage granted to the village.

In 1691, the first churchwardens for Stellenbosch and Drakenstein were proposed by the ministers, and appointed; among them, Claude Marree (probably ancestor of the numerous family of Marais) and Pierre Roussou (of the families Russouw and Rossouw, now spread over the colony).

In 1691, the election of heemraden at Stellenbosch was ordered to be made by the acting and late heemraden; the oldest and ablest inhabitants were to be proposed to the governor and council, and not by heemraden only.

In 1707, the parish clerk was appointed also to be the parish school-master.

In 1710, landdrost and heemraden were recommended to plant trees along the roads.

While the site of Stellenbosch was yet unoccupied, it was known to the Dutch as "wild-bosch" (wild-bush). The latter termination was apparently preserved when Governor Van der Stell coupled his name with the settlement.

Sometimes the surrounding hills, especially the Jonkershoek and Simon's mountain, are covered with snow. I saw, in 1812, the valley of Banhoek, at the foot of the latter mountain, covered with upwards of one foot thick of snow, and had the pleasure of presenting my father (who was then unwell) in his study with a snowball, the size of a large bomb-shell. One part of the scenery, I recollect, struck me particularly; it was at the estate of a Mr. Rossouw, at Banhoek, about an hour's ride from Stellenbosch, where there was an orangery; the snow had settled between the leaves and formed figures as though of feathers, and the effect was most beautiful and striking. This estate was also famous for producing gooseberries, still a rarity at the Cape.

The soil of this fruitful valley of Stellenbosch generally consists of from three to six feet of clay, mixed with sand of uneven depth, resting on a bed of stones, visible along the banks of the river in the shape of waves, and yet excellent for all sorts of trees and plants, especially the oak and vine.

When this noble plant, the vine, is cultivated in proper and well-prepared soil, it grows not only better than in many other countries, but, well treated, will last a century; so that the father who plants may reasonably flatter himself that his children and children's children will enjoy the fruits thereof.

Almost all sorts of fruit, chiefly peaches, apricots, pears, apples, figs, quinces, the banana, and other garden fruits and vegetables may be cultivated with water, manure, and sufficient labour, and in such abundance that this village has sometimes been distinguished as the orchard of the colony.

The climate is very healthy, and my father who, in 1825, had resided there for about thirty-eight years, witnessed no infectious diseases except the measles and small-pox, which visited them for a short time; the latter being checked by the vaccine, which may be estimated among the benefits introduced by Government. The sudden variation of temperature, however, is apt to produce rheumatism and the painful complaint, *tic-douloureux*, known in the colonial language by the name of “zinkings,” but under timely and judicious treatment, neither of these complaints prove fatal.

The whole valley is supplied by water from three small rivulets; the largest of these flowing from Jonkershoek is named Eerste (first) River, and originates at a waterfall or cascade, in a romantic grotto, well worthy a visit.

The Eerste River flows from east to west along the south-side of the village, supplying, in abundance, wholesome and clear water, except in winter, when it is rather muddied by the waste from its upper banks. Men and animals have constantly drank this inestimable gift of Providence; it has never entirely ceased its supply, though there have been years when the top of its pebbly bed could be seen. A number of vineyards and orchards are irrigated from this rivulet, both in and beyond the village; its utility is so great that each

individual dwelling near the stream in the village could not be comfortable for a day without its supply. Well might they in gratitude look up to the benevolent Father of His creatures, and bring to mind the words of the sacred poet in the 104th Psalm :

“He sendeth the springs into the rivers, which run among  
the hills

He watereth the hills from above, the earth is filled with  
fruit of His works.”

A second rivulet flows from the Simon's Mountain, rather more distant from the village, and runs on the north-side, and after having supplied some neighbouring places and served the brick-makers along the Karnemelks River, at the foot of the Papegaaij mountain, it loses itself in the Eerste River, which stream, thus increased after serving several estates along its banks, is ultimately discharged on the Hottentots' Holland beach in False Bay.

In 1825, the population of Stellenbosch mustered 1,855 souls, namely : 770 whites, 144 Hottentots, 852 slaves, 22 prize negroes, and 64 free blacks ; these, added to the occupants of houses and places within the circle of a mile's walk, would produce a population of about 2,900.

Stellenbosch has thirteen streets. Three run parallel ; the longest is Dorp-street, the middle Church-street, and the one to the north, Plein-street ; the others run crosswise, and are Ryneveld, Andringa, Bird, Molen, Blom, Alexander, Brouwer, Herte, and Papegaaij-streets.

There are four squares—the Charles (after Lord Charles Somerset), the Molen, King's, and Van der Riet's-squares, the last named after the landdrost of

that name. A beautiful walk of oak-trees occupies the top of the village, affording, in summer, a welcome shade to the Rambler.

The public buildings were, the drostdy-house, formerly the residence of the landdrost or chief magistrate, now converted into a theological seminary ; a dwelling for the secretary and messenger, and public offices (now sold), the Dutch reformed church and a parsonage, and the powder magazine.

In 1825, the village consisted of 171 private dwellings and 51 out-houses ; and a church and school for slaves and other heathens were built by subscription.

The two last were solemnly opened on the 5th February, 1824. The governor, Lord Charles Somerset, and colonial secretary, the landdrost, Mr. Daniel Johannes van Ryneveld, the local authorities, and directors of the Stellenbosch missionary society, several clergymen from Cape Town and churchwardens of the Dutch reformed and Lutheran congregations, and representatives of the South African and Paarl missionary societies were present.

My father, who had then been for about thirty-eight years a minister at Stellenbosch, mounted the pulpit, which had been presented by the churchwardens of the Reformed Church in Cape Town, and delivered a discourse, taking his text from the 84th Psalm, from the 9th to the 13th verse, and the introduction from Deuteronomy 6, 4th verse, closing with an address pointing out that the object of the edifice, meeting and house of prayer, was to promote the honour of the Lord and the salvation of the heathen, and praying for it, as such, the powerful protection of the Lord and His holy and safe keeping.

The Rev. Abraham Faure spoke also, taking his subject from Luke 11, 32nd verse, and the Missionaries Evans, of the Paarl, Archbell, of the Wesleyans, and Smit, of Stellenbosch, addressed a numerous assembly of heathen in the evening. Great interest was shown by the well-disposed.

From notes added to the report of that meeting in the "South African Tydschrift" (periodical), 1st vol, page 25, it appears that as far back as 1788 several persons in Cape Town and country had engaged themselves to appoint certain days in the week for religious instruction to the heathen. In 1799, the South African Missionary Society was established, to propagate the Gospel to the ignorant, both within and beyond the colony; and in 1825, the congregation at Graaff-Reinet contributed about £950 for a building similar to the one above mentioned. The then landdrost (now Sir Andries Stockenstrom) had all the sash-windows made at his own expense.

The necessity of missionary labour was sufficiently evident from the fact that Cape Town alone contained 11,000 slaves at least, exposed to the influence of Mohammedan priests, and liable to their perversion.

The missionary society at Stellenbosch had then existed twenty-four years. The desire to know something of the first village and district in the colony is but natural to my countrymen; the spot where earlier generations resided, whose remains are there deposited, cannot be indifferent to their descendants; their hopes and anxieties, that which engaged their attention and their chief occupations and pursuits, are of interest, and therefore I will briefly mention some events from the Stellenbosch records.

1670. The village of Stellenbosch founded; a description of the locality and limits is to be found in P. Kolbe's account of the Cape of Good Hope. Vol. 1, pp. 92 and 93.
1684. The reformed church established.
1685. The first landdrost and heemraden appointed.
1689. The first clergyman of the reformed church, the Rev. D. Petrus Simon, appointed; he preached in the French language.
1693. Resolved to cultivate trees here and at the Paarl.
- 1697—1701. The district buildings were generally let for two rixdollars (eight shillings) per month, and the public roads, water-courses, bridges, and mills attracted attention.
1703. The officers of the burgher mounted and infantry corps desired to exercise at Stellenbosch and not in Cape Town, as heretefore.
1706. The Eerste River did damage to the district stables; the river divided, and ran in front of and behind the Drostdy-house; a capitation-tax of two guilders per head imposed.
1708. The local board proceeded to Cape Town, to report to Mr. Commissary Simons on the state of the district, or as it was then called, "colony."
1710. The village church, described as small but very neat, with a spire, burnt, and the whole village, except two or three houses, laid in ashes; the catastrophe caused by a slave of the Landdrost de Meurs carrying fire to smoke during a strong south-easterly wind. The village was rebuilt in four years, save the present church,



which was not finished till 1722 ; it is built in the shape of a cross, in length full one hundred feet and thirty broad, and situate about three hundred yards above the site of the old church. It was considerably extended in 1814, and holds five hundred seats. The church is, with the congregation, under the management of a minister, two elders, and four deacons ; and from 1689 to 1858, twenty-one ministers occupied the pulpit in regular succession ; their names are to be found in the periodical "S. A. Tydschrift," vol. 2, page 339.

1711. The first prison built.

1711. 23rd March. The first entry in the records, in the handwriting of the then secretary, P. Kolbe, the well-known early writer about the Cape.

1712. 1,000 oaktrees were obtained from Rondebosch, to be planted in the streets ; the large tree in front of the present Theological Seminary was probably planted this year.

1713. First district surgeon, Daniel Feyl, appointed. Large troops of horses were running wild and very destructive to the cornfields, and application made to shoot or otherwise destroy them.

1714. In order to prevent disturbances in church, regulations were made for the sexton to place the chairs of the ladies in certain order of precedence, so that even in those early days the question of precedence among the fair sex seems to have been no matter of indifference

1715. A number of men ordered to pursue some run-away slaves who had committed violence and robbery. The governor communicated an intended invasion by the Bushmen Hottentots, and it was resolved to place at each post namely, Ekse River, Wittenberg, and Piekenierskloof, a corporal and six men mounted, and to assemble a commando of thirty men, under Harmse Potgieter. In 1760, these posts were withdrawn. The expense of the commando and out-posts amounted to 1,352 guilders, of which the burgher senate in Cape Town paid 192 guilders.

1717. The expense of a new church, estimated at rix-dollars 2,666 6sk. 4st. Great mortality for the last three years among the sheep; the governor suggested that ewes should not be slaughtered, which was considered a good measure to keep up the supply.

1718. Damage done to the watercourse of the mill and twenty-five men were put in requisition for four days to effect the necessary repairs, and eight men, with wagons and tools, for three days to repair the streets.

The population at this time consisted of Europeans from different countries, chiefly France, Holland, and Germany exercising crafts or husbandry, and forming a strange mixture with the Hottentots and other aborigines; the distinction between master and slave was then also known.

This mixed nationality seems ordained by the Governor of the world for amalgamation and amazing exten-

sion, and to prepare the road for the thousands who in later days were to be born from them or emigrated to this country, to have a common interest with the existing population ; a more detailed statement of the events of these first sixty years of the existence of this district, namely, from 1670 to 1730, and their connection with the subsequent occurrences and incidents of Cape history, will be interesting for future research.

Between 1718 and 1739 nothing remarkable seems to have occurred, but that last year was one of disturbance. A certain vagabond, Etienne Barbier, a sergeant, who had been confined in the castle in May, 1737, and escaped in March, 1738, had persuaded ten or twelve inhabitants of the village to arm themselves and follow him, to oppose the authorities ; he appeared with them, mounted, in front of the church at Drakenstein, and after reading a certain seditious writing to the congregation on leaving the church, affixed it to the church-door, being the first act of open sedition and rebellion in the Settlement. The Government proclaimed his apprehension, and a commando was proposed, but the heemraden, for the sake of peace, resolved to give the followers of Barbier one month to return, and secure their leader.

In a conference with some of the heemraden and others, the followers of Barbier were promised pardon if they abandoned him ; but they insisted on his pardon also ; whereupon the Government promised pardon only to those who should surrender up Barbier. The records of Stellenbosch give us no further particulars ; but the result was that on the 12th of November, 1739, Barbier, who had been captured, was sentenced

to be tied to a cross and decapitated, the right hand to be severed from the arm, his body to be quartered, the head and hand fixed to a pole at Roodezand (now Tulbagh's Kloof), and the other parts exposed in different places. I saw that pole on my travels, in 1802, still in existence at the kloof.

This year was also remarkably distressing to the colony. The Bushmen at Olifant's River and Jackals' Valley stole cattle and killed a European servant and three slaves, and threatened the safety of the inhabitants at the Berg River. Measures were adopted for defence and to attack the robbers and murderers; but the orders dictated humanely, "that care should be taken that they should only act against the culpable Hottentots, and not against those who were peaceable and quiet, and at all events to adopt the mildest measures most consistent with Christianity."

A Hottentot, Titus *alias* Charmant, had endeavoured to organize a gang and persuade the Bushmen to join him in destroying the Europeans, killing those who refused to abet him; whereupon Jan Jurgen Hanekom was ordered to make inquiry, and, if needful, to call out a commando to punish Titus and his followers.

From a representation by the landdrost and heemraden, and memorials of the inhabitants, it appeared that they were distressed and suffering from, first, being loaded with debt; secondly, a bad harvest; thirdly, the low price of wine, scarcely paying conveyance, and a difficulty to find a sale for it; fourthly, the low price of sheep and cattle; and it was proposed to reduce the rent of loan-places and grant to some their farms in freehold.

These were unhappy days of disturbance and adversity; but, under God's blessing, they disappeared. The course of public events, under increasing population and extension, began to appear more interesting, even in the distant parts of the colony; and the character of this singularly composed society commenced to develop itself distinctly.

It appeared that a commando proceeded, in 1739, against the Bushmen, the expenses of which were paid by the landdrost and heemraden, to the amount of 1,628 guilders.

As an instance of the measures adopted to preserve good understanding between Government and the Colonists, I will give the account, from a record of the day, of a meeting between Governor Hendrik Swellengrebel and landdrost and heemraden and the militia officers of Stellenbosch, on the 27th November, 1740. The interview seems to be connected with the circumstances of the preceding year, and marks the spirit of the times.

After the governor had stated he had especially convened this meeting, he added that his object was to recommend to landdrost and heemraden and the militia officers amicably but earnestly to discharge the duties of their offices according to their oath and obligation. He addressed the landdrost seriously, and impressed on his mind that, as he was appointed by the government to maintain the rights of the East India Company, he should also take care that the country inhabitants were guarded against extortion, and see that the innocent were protected and the guilty punished, and that it was his duty to act vigilantly in concert with the heemraden, to watch that justice was administered to these

inhabitants impartially and under the fear of God ; keeping in mind that they, his auditors, acted not on behalf of man, but of God. He next admonished the militia in case of attack of an enemy, either from the interior or abroad, to support the Government and courageously to step forward in its defence, in favour as well of the mother country as of their own property, wives, and children, and to protect the last, even at the sacrifice of life and possessions ; he urged on them to keep those under them in salutary discipline, promising maintenance and support. He further recommended the different members of the heemraad to honour and respect the landdrost as their president, and reciprocally the landdrost to maintain peace and good feeling amongst the members ; and he then took leave of the meeting, expressing the wish that it might please the Lord God to spare this country and its inhabitants in mercy from calamities, and that the ripening crops in the field, which, under the blessing of heaven, appeared so promising, might produce an abundant harvest ; he being, for his part, determined to do all in his power to promote in every respect the prosperity of the inhabitants. The landdrost and respective members then offered thanks to his Excellency, cordially wishing that Providence might bless his person, and establish his government with all desirable prosperity.

The record was signed by H. Swellengrebel, P. Laurens (landdrost), Jacob Cloete, G. van der Byl, P. du Toit, and D. de Villiers.

The effect of this meeting, so consistent with the character of a colonial governor who united candour and consideration with conscientious and earnest

design, appears to have caused the re-establishment of peace and tranquillity, respect and confidence; and, in subsequent years nothing is mentioned of disturbances.

In 1743, his Excellency Gustaaf Willem, Baron van Imhoff, Governor-General of the Possessions of the Dutch East India Company, who had, on his way to Batavia, been installed with much pomp in the Castle of Cape Town, observed to the Governor and Council of the Colony that during a late journey his notice was attracted, with surprise and regret, to the little attention which was paid to public worship, and how careless and ignorant the greater part of the country inhabitants were in that respect, being quite indifferent about religious matters, so that it resembled more a community of heathens than European Christians. He proceeded to state he had consulted the ministers, F. le Sueur and W. van Gendt, who attributed this state of irreligion to the want of churches and ministers, and to the great extent of the parishes of Stellenbosch and Drakenstein; he therefore advised that two more churches should be built in such situations as would enable the distant inhabitants to reach them.

This suggestion, being considered by landdrost and heemraden, led to the building of the churches at Roodezand (now Tulbagh) and Zwartland (now Malmesbury), and to the appointment of two parish clerks to these churches, and another at Grootvadersbosch (now in the division of Caledon), who were also to act as schoolmasters and establish public schools in those parishes.

These were the means by which our forefathers checked the corrupt system of unbelief and immorality;

and where is the true worshiper of God and friend of human kind who does not rejoice that our later governments, up to the present day, followed their praiseworthy example?

The Governor-general was not only anxious to improve the moral condition of the inhabitants, but also their temporal position, and displayed much concern about the defective means for the conveyance of produce, which appeared to be so toilsome and expensive; he showed every inclination to obviate or reduce them; but although his plan to make Berg River navigable by boats or flotillas could not be carried into effect, yet the motives which induced him to propose the scheme does honour to his kind heart. Would that the administration of this Colony had always been entrusted to men who felt so deep an interest for its welfare.

The population of this country had extended itself about this period in an east and north-eastward direction. A separate company of mounted militia was established, composed of the more distant residents, and two heemraden were appointed with special instructions for those far-lying settlements, one of whom was to appear at the board at Stellenbosch every quarter. Officers for the militia, which was to assemble twice a-year for exercise at Klip River, were named; and in 1744 a deputy landdrost was appointed; but in 1745 a second drostdy or division was established at Klip River, and received the name of Swellendam.

To revert to the historical sketches of that part of the Colony to which I am at present endeavouring to draw attention, the desire to see a general history of the Colony imperceptibly presses on the mind. It must be



drawn, not from loose information or the notes of casual travellers, but from the archives of the country. It is difficult to govern properly a country of such extent, and composed of such various material and population, without the data and the mass of information to be supplied by such a history, which should be a guide in considering that which is acceptable or distasteful, useful or mischievous, and point out the good or obnoxious tendency of its ancient and recent laws and institutions.

In 1747, a general order to keep a day of general fasting and prayer was issued by Governor Ryk van Tulbagh, in order humbly to pray for forgiveness of sin and to obtain mercy, and that calamities might be averted,—and particularly the scourge of locusts which were destroying almost all vegetation.

In 1749, a Bantam *pangerang* or prince, Wargo Digma, and two *radiens* or rajahs, Tutja Dixcata and Tuerse Dierapa, arrived as prisoners of state, and a house was purchased for their occupation at Stellenbosch. Before these exiles, however, another *pangerang*, named Loring Paster, had been banished by the Dutch East India Company to the Cape.

In 1750, the parsonage of the Paarl was purchased for 5,000 guilders.

The government requested the advice of the landdrost and heemraden on the increase of population, and their opinion whether there was not room for more families to obtain their livelihood; but it was considered that under the position of the country there were already too many in it to earn a subsistence, and that no means could be devised for supporting more families; the

statistical notions of our forefathers will be best tested by comparison of the following returns of the district of Stellenbosch :

In 1750—3,933 souls, 13,893 cattle, 71,684 sheep, 136 pigs, 2,309,000 vines, 2,541 leaguers of wine, 1,296 muids of grain sown and 7,098 muids reaped.

In 1825—16,446 souls, 25,924 cattle, 25,500 sheep, 2,543 pigs, 23,667,169 vines, 10,507 leaguers of wine, 5,240 muids of grain sown and 54,970 muids reaped.

In 1756 the price of meat was one stiver (three farthings) per pound. In the same year the leprosy made its appearance in two families. The sufferers were examined by four medical men, and communication with these unfortunate human beings was prohibited by order of government.

The year 1757 closed with representations of the poverty of the inhabitants in the country, and their difficulty in raising, conveying, and disposing of their produce.

In 1762 the drostdy house was burnt down, and the year following the present building, now the theological seminary, was commenced ; in 1767 the small-pox broke out in Cape Town, but owing to preventative measures it did not reach Stellenbosch. In 1812 it again appeared, but by the vaccine which, by the prudent arrangement of government, had been introduced by Dr. White, of the 83rd regiment, the calamity was checked, and I had the satisfaction of seeing that, from out of the arms of my second daughter, then about four years old, whom I held on my lap during the operation, not less than one hundred and eighty individuals were vaccinated.

In 1769, under landdrost Faber, the Eerste River threatened to destroy the upper part of the village, when its course was altered and brought into its present bed under superintendence of the heemraden, who took the duty alternately. Messrs. Martin Melk (who built the original Lutheran Church in Cape Town) and Jan Bernhard Hoffman especially distinguished themselves.

In order to give some idea of the prices of produce in these days, I add a list of supplies to the working parties, consisting of forty or fifty slaves and a number of Hottentots: 68 muids of wheat at three guilders (4s. 6d.) each; 268 sheep at two guilders (3s.) each; eight leaguers wine at fourteen rixdollars each; one leaguer of brandy at ninety guilders (£6 15s.),—the leaguer measures 150 gallons.

In 1770 the limits between Stellenbosch and Swellendam were fixed, the Zwarteberg rising out of the Thon's hills, from the straat proceeding east north-east was the line chosen as far as the eye could reach from Lange Valley, between the sources of Olifant's and Gamtoos Rivers; and the Camdeboo remained in Stellenbosch district, along the Bushmen Hills as far as Bruintjes Hoogte, and numbers of farms were now granted in that part of the Colony.

Such was the determination to check drunkenness that a case is cited of a man addicted to that vice, who ill-treated his wife and children, and for whose protection the magistracy proposed the removal of the man, and he was sent as a private soldier to Batavia. What a regiment could we not raise at present under such a regime?

In 1776 a powder magazine was built to store ammunition for internal defence. Regulations were made to

preserve the plant producing the berry-wax. Fire-engines were introduced in 1779, and the land of the parsonage extended in 1778. Mr. Olof Godlieb de Wet (subsequently member of the court of policy and president of the court of justice) was appointed landdrost of Stellenbosch.

In 1780 the law relative to passes issued to Hottentots and slaves was suggested by landdrost and heemraden; as this has been a subject much discussed, and considered of late a regulation made in rude times and too severe an infringement on the natural rights and liberty of the subject, especially of the aborigines, and an injurious law, I will be rather particular in noting the resolution of 7th August of that year.

The landdrost stated that slaves, the progeny of female slaves and Hottentots, resembled so much the free Bastard Hottentots that it facilitated their desertion, and he quoted the case of a murdered slave, where the murderer, also a slave, having the appearance of a Bastard Hottentot, went at large for eight years. He also referred to several instances when such slaves had deserted, gone into service, and received wages as Bastard Hottentots. He also represented a case where a Bastard Hottentot, the child of a slave and female Hottentot, had been taken from appearance to be a slave and as such apprehended; and, after being detained some time at public expense, found to have been unjustly incarcerated. He proposed, therefore, that application should be made to the high authorities to establish some rule or regulation about the Bastard Hottentots, to prevent these irregularities and inconveniences; and the board resolved unanimously to forward

a memorial to that effect. In 1781, in order further to check desertions of slaves, the annual registry of all Hottentots was ordered at the field-commandants, field-wachtmeesters, and field-corporals. The lists to be forwarded to the landdrosts.

In 1781 a report was received from the first commandant in the eastern country, Mr. Adriaan van Jaarsveld, that several Kaffir captains and Kaffirs had, contrary to treaty, occupied land on this side of Great Visch River; that warnings to remove to the other side had been neglected, and that consequently they had been compelled to do so by force; that 5,300 head of cattle, partly stolen from the colonists, had been captured and divided amongst the men who joined the expedition. This was reported by landdrost and heemraden, and approved of by the Court of Policy, without, however, being considered as a basis of future proceedings.

In 1782 the burghers Johannes and Francois Roos proposed to build a bridge over the Berg River at their own expense; but the representations of those who received the revenues of the pontoons prevented this proposal from being accepted, though so practicable and beneficial.

In 1785 Mr. H. L. Bletterman (who held the same situation in 1795, when the Cape surrendered to the English), was appointed landdrost, in the room of Mr. de Wet above mentioned, and parts of the Stellenbosch and Swellendam districts were separated and formed into a distinct magistracy, named "Graaf-Rynet," after Governor Van de Graaf and his lady, whose christian name was Rynet, under the landdrost Mr. Mauritius H. Woeke.

In 1786 the introduction of new taxes was proposed by government, and deliberation thereon requested; and tithes on wheat and wine, duty on other produce brought to Cape Town, and reduction on rent of loan-places were suggested, but found objectionable; the leaguer of wine then sold to private parties only produced from fifteen to eighteen rix-dollars.

In 1787, the inhabitants of Roggeveld applied for leave to occupy certain kraals of Hottentots, and to check the Bastards, Hottentots, and Bushmen, who wandered with arms. The first request was rejected; and respecting the second, the field-wachtmeester, Gerrit Maritz, was authorized to deprive vagrant Bastards and Hottentots, and others considered not safe to carry arms, of their weapons.

In 1792, the revenue of the district chest, from capitation tax, contributions, and toll of Hottentots' Holland's Kloof and revenue of the mill, amounted to *f*8,330, or about £625.

Constant incursions of the Bushmen disturbed the inhabitants, and government resolved to order that the three landdrosts, with two heemraden, should come to Cape Town, to consult with the commander of the forces, Colonel Gordon, about the best means to check the inclination of the Bushmen to rob and murder. Government also proposed the establishment of public schools in the country districts, to instruct the children in the first principles of religion, reading, writing, and arithmetic, and the subject was recommended to the special consideration of landdrost and heemraden, ministers and churchwardens in the country.

In 1793, the Commissioners-General S. C. Nederburg and Frykenius having expressed their views and considerations, placed the government of the colony in charge of Mr. Abraham Josias Sluysken as commissary, that gentleman being then on his return from India to Europe.

A singular case is mentioned in the book of resolutions of 1794.

There was a law in existence, of 1728, emanating from Mr. Noodt, authorizing "that all slaves in the country, guilty of any capital crime, wounding themselves, and thus disabled to be conveyed,—and only in such case *ex illico* in the presence of heemraden or other qualified person at hand,—should be executed in such manner as time and local circumstances should permit ; provided the public prosecutor (officier) having taken evidence and recorded proceedings (proces verbaal) should report the circumstances properly to the Court of Policy.

Accordingly, a slave, Abraham, who had wounded his master, Matteam Hofman, and two of his sons, and set fire to the house, and who, during his apprehension, had been so wounded that the medical men declared his life in imminent danger, having confessed the crime, was executed in front of the prison at Stellenbosch, by breaking on the wheel and the *coup de grace*, under authority of landdrost and heemraden.

When, however, this case was reported to the commissary and court of policy, the proceedings of landdrost and heemraden, as under the law above-mentioned, were approved ; but it appearing that, since that law was made (about seventy years previously), the circumstances

of the Colony had been materially altered, with regard to its great extension and the establishment of magistracies in the remote districts it was deemed advisable that the law, one moreover not emanating from the government, should be repealed and rendered inoperative,—the more so as in the far distant districts oppressive and distressing cases might occur affecting slaves and Hottentots ; and because, in a well-regulated society, according to the principles of humanity and impartial strict justice, it was better that an individual, though suffering under wounds inflicted by himself, should be fined by a competent judge with such solemnity as should impress him with a sense of his guilt and deter others from committing similar crime ; and further, to prevent inferior officers and civil judges awarding severer punishment than the court of justice would inflict ; and on consideration that the order was issued merely by Mr. Noodt, as president of the court of justice, without authority of the political power or sanction of the high authorities in Holland or Batavia, the law was cancelled and ordered to be annulled, and all officers of justice, and the landdrost and heemraden in the country districts, received orders accordingly.

And now we find the last resolution, of 1st June, 1795, and approach the surrender of the Cape, by capitulation, to British authority, under circumstances and applications for relief which showed clearly that just before there existed an increasing reduction in the financial state of the colony. A perceptible change and approaching dissolution of the system of government by which this colony had been governed for so many years was evident, when towards the the middle of the



last-mentioned month, the English fleet arrived and the burghers were summoned to defend the colony; the particulars of which are described in section 2.

The Landdrost Bletterman resigned after the capitulation, and Mr. Ryno Johannes van der Riet was appointed in his place.

## SECTION VII.

HAVING now, I trust, given sufficient information regarding the foundation of and some subsequent events relative to Stellenbosch, which is, as I have said, the oldest country district in the colony, and served as a model for the subsequently created districts, I now proceed to events of a later date, namely, 16th September, 1795 (the date of the capitulation), taken chiefly from the notes of my late father in 1828, to which I also referred in the last section.

“As that day,” he remarks, “is remarkable in the general history of the colony, so is the 7th November, 1795, for Stellenbosch especially. Having myself lived in those days, I believe myself to be in some degree competent to sketch the circumstances of the times, as far as memory will permit; and if I should commit any errors, my few aged contemporaries still alive are at liberty to contradict those errors and correct my deficiencies.

“As a rule, the times were unsettled. There was no lack of people who sympathized in the rage for revolution which disturbed the greater part of Europe; and of course, there were also the conservatives. Both parties had their reasons and objects, and, from the extreme violence with which they supported their respective views and endeavoured to establish them, there was every probability that, ere long, in a mixed population like ours, consisting of free men and slaves, Christians, Heathens, and Mohammedans, natives and foreigners, a singular and motley compound of races in short, commotions would arise of a serious and dangerous nature. In that posture of affairs, however, the settlement capitulated to the

British Government. General Craig assumed the reins of government, and succeeded, as the first English governor, the Dutch Commissary Sluysken, who soon after left for Holland.

“ Even as travellers unexpectedly encountering unknown strangers stand in doubt, each gazing at the other anxious to know what they have to hope or fear, so for the first days after this political change appeared the intercourse and communication between the English and the colonists.

“ Soon, however, some of the functionaries of the former government attached themselves to the British authorities, and they reciprocally to them. The course of events passing in the original mother country, Holland, the uncertainty regarding its position, and chiefly that of the Dutch East India Company,—a fact, mutual necessity and convenience operated jointly; but with regard to this village (Stellenbosch) no alteration was made in its administration.

“ The lately appointed landdrost only notified that as we were now under the protection of the enemy formerly so much dreaded, and overpowered by their arms, we were obliged, whilst so protected, to be faithful towards them, and that he by command of high authority would administer the oath of fidelity to his Britannic Majesty according to this form :

“ ‘ I swear to be true and faithful to his Majesty George the Third, by the grace of God King of Great Britain, France, and Ireland, Defender of the Faith, &c., &c., &c., whilst his Majesty shall remain in possession of the Colony of the Cape of Good Hope.—So help me God Almighty !’

“The oath was taken by all present, about fifty in number, whose names are inserted in the Book of Heemraad’s Resolutions, vol. 22, page 5, and at the combined meeting, the commission of the landdrost was read, ‘to act in his office according to the laws, customs, and usages of the colony as it existed before the surrender, and until further disposals were made.’ The commission was addressed and directed in a separate letter to the board of heemraden, militia officers, and churchwardens of the colony of Stellenbosch. This being concluded, the relative position of the village and adjacent district was considered as temporarily and morally fixed and determined. Gradually, each one began to adapt himself to the circumstances of the times, although sometimes considerable difficulties occurred; but public duties were carried on upon the old and established footing until the 15th of August, 1796, when the landdrost received a letter from the Governor stating that the troops had been marched for the protection of the country, and containing a requisition for wagons for their use. He excused the inhabitants from taking up arms, but expected a ready obedience to his orders, in consequence of which first one hundred and sixty-two, and subsequently thirty-five, wagons provided with oxen were put in requisition.

“The cause of that extraordinary event was a Dutch fleet which had arrived at Saldanha Bay under command of Rear Admiral Lucas; but this squadron having surrendered by capitulation to his Britannic Majesty, its arrival had no further consequence, and on the 12th of September heemraden in and out of office received through the landdrost the thanks of his Excellency the

Governor and Commander-in-Chief, General Craig. The address closed with these words,—‘Heaven crown your gray hairs with the reward of those who, with a good conscience, can change temporal with future life.’

There are many interesting episodes connected with the arrival of the first English garrison under Major King at Stellenbosch, too numerous for this memoir. I find that on the 20th December, 1798, the landdrost received information from the field-cornet of Little Namaqualand “that the Hottentots there were turbulent and had assembled in large bodies, and had captured five farms, murdered one man, taken twenty muskets, and carried off a number of cattle.” It was resolved by the heenraden unanimously to dispatch immediate orders to the field-cornet, Van der Westhuyzen, to call upon the inhabitants of Namaqualand to render assistance to those of Little Namaqualand. The deliberations of the board display a degree of prudence and caution to prevent all cruelty which would do honour to real philanthropists; their directions were to endeavour by kind means and applications to make peace and effect the return of the stolen property; in case of failure to oppose force to force, but to keep always in mind that the marauders were human beings. Their proceedings were approved by the governor, who directed that no violence should be committed against the Hottentots except in self-defence, but that attempts should be made to find the murderer, one Hendrik Stevens, and to cause the restitution of the stolen arms and cattle.

The result of this commando was reported to the Governor-General Dundas. It had had the desired effect; the Hottentots were again quiet, no one had been shot.

nor had any violence been exercised, and only one person, Gerrit Owies, who had imprudently parted from the commando, was killed, not by a Hottentot, but treacherously by a Bushman with an arrow. Part of the stolen cattle and muskets was recovered, but the chief disturbers had retired to the Great or Orange River, and scarcity of grass and weakness of the horses had prevented further pursuit.

It was natural to expect that tranquillity had been restored in that part of the colony, but only thirteen days later a report was received from the field-cornet of Hantam, Mr. J. A. van Wyk, that a certain Captain Afrikander (the same mentioned in my travels) had murdered the son of a colonist, Hermanus Engelbrecht, and a Hottentot named Titus, carried off cattle and plundered wagons.

This Afrikander was described by the field-cornet as a murderer, who disturbed that country with a band of one hundred men; and that he had proceeded to the Groote River, taking with him three thousand seven hundred sheep and goats, four hundred and forty-six head of cattle, eight horses and three muskets and other stolen property, besides two wagons. This being reported to the governor, authority was received to raise a commando and proceed against these marauders, the details being left to the arrangements of the landdrost.

Before the result of this expedition could be learned, a letter and an important proclamation from the governor were received, relative to public disturbances at Graaff-Reinet. His Excellency described them as tumultuous commotions which had compelled him to direct General Vandeleur to march to that rebellious district

with a sufficient force, to afford to the well-disposed inhabitants his Majesty's protection, and to secure the leaders of those who had actually armed themselves against their lawful Sovereign; twenty of whom were brought to Cape Town by his Majesty's ship *Rattlesnake*.

The governor further communicated the result of his inquiries and the measures he had adopted and intended for the future to use to restore tranquillity, adding that he relied on the good care and influence of the authorities of this place (Stellenbosch) to prevent the necessity of stringent measures; he also transmitted the proclamation, dated 20th June, 1799, under his hand and seal, and these documents were published by landdrost and heemraden from the court-room.

The public peace, by these and other measures having been preserved in the village and district in the midst of so many alarming circumstances, Governor Dundas apprised the authorities of his intention to proceed in person to watch the movements of the vagrant Kafirs, and that Brigadier-General Fraser would meanwhile assume the command. In another letter he refers to the possibility that the insurrection of the Hottentots on the frontier would extend to those in the adjacent districts, and directs the measures which should be provisionally adopted. Both these letters of 7th and 8th August would be worth publishing; they mark uncommon readiness, prudence, and bravery in the character of this officer, and are honourable proofs that the governor was a man of undaunted faithfulness in the execution of the duties with which he was intrusted.

We cannot but respect the man who, in the hour of need and imminent danger, voluntarily exposes himself

personally to all the trouble and peril which attended these expeditions.

This appears the more evident from a letter of the landdrost of Swellendam, Mr. Anthony Alexander Faure, communicating to the board of landdrost and heemraden that he had been obliged to order all the inhabitants of his district (*kolonie*) to proceed to the distant parts of the settlement, in order to oppose the attacks of the Kafirs and Hottentots, and to disperse them; and he pointed out the necessity of writing to the field-cornets of Roodezand (Tulbagh), Breede, Hex River, and Bokkeveld to prepare and keep themselves in readiness to advance forthwith, on the receipt of the governor's order, for the protection of the interior.

A note was added to Mr. Faure's letter, stating that a melancholy report had been received that, at Swartkops River on the place of the Widow Scheepers, where several families had assembled, fifty whites were murdered only two hours distant from where the general and his Majesty's troops were encamped. Communication with the general appeared to have been cut off, and the enemy, according to intelligence from Olifant's River, had taken possession of the country as far as Van der Waldt's, which was the last farm. Here, however, Van der Waldt resisted their further progress by a commando, and at Graaff-Reinet they were kept back by the people of Sneeuwberg and Zuureveld, the inhabitants of which last place had fled for safety to Graaff-Reinet.

According to a letter from government of 16th August, 1799, the disturbances on the frontier had increased; several families had been overpowered, robbed, and murdered, and a commando was therefore



ordered from Stellenbosch, to which the following officers were appointed :

Johan Gerhard Cloete, captain-commandant.

Dirk Cloete, captain-lieutenant.

Douswe Steyn, first lieutenant.

Philip Meyburg, second lieutenant.

Marthinus Theunissen, third lieutenant and adjutant, and a commissary, Captain Kebourg, formerly of the regiment of Muiron, and two surgeons were added.

Their departure created a great sensation and affliction in the village ; public prayers were offered in church for their safety and success, and my father took his text from Jeremiah xviii, 5—10. Posterity can hardly imagine the painful position of the inhabitants in these times.

In 1800, the inhabitants of Roggeveld were kept in a state of continual alarm by Afrikander and the banditti, his followers, and a squadron of dragoons was ordered to be stationed between Cape Town and the Karoo, for the protection of the inhabitants.

In December, 1801, a report was received from field-cornet Jacob Kruger, of a cruel murder committed on a burgher, Floris Langman, his wife and three children and five or six of his domestics ; and from the field-cornet of Cederbergen intelligence was also received that the Hottentots were refusing to take service and preparing to congregate with arms as far as behind Hantam. This being reported to the lieutenant-governor, Dundas, he promptly authorized a commando to pursue the murderers, but recommended cautious treatment and forbearance to be shown to the Hottentots, so as not to cause aversion by uncalled-for severity and to make them dangerous enemies instead of useful servants.

Scarcely had this letter arrived when the landdrost received a communication from the field-cornet of Roggeveld, Gerrit Maritz, stating that an aged farmer, Cornelis Coetzee, had been murdered by his own slaves and Hottentots, together with his two sons and a butcher, Fredrik Wemer, and his servant, Frans Scherpenaard. The house had been plundered and the money with a wagon and oxen taken, and also that the wife of one of Coetzee's sons was missing.

The field-cornet reported that he had with a commando immediately followed in pursuit and captured the greater part of the murderers. In the meanwhile, the expedition to the Beriquas or Boshuanahs, of which I gave already an account in former sections, was dispatched.

The only document relative to the condition of that part of the country to be found in the records is a report of Field-cornet Jacob Kruger, stating that the marauding party was still about sixty-eight strong, some armed with muskets. In May, 1802, there was still a detachment of dragoons retained at Stellenbosch for protection, but they were then recalled.

In August, 1802, after the peace of Amiens, orders were received to have a proportion of the government supply of wheat delivered at the government magazine, for the use of the British and the expected *Butavian troops*, as it appeared from a *placaat* that peace had been concluded in Europe, and that the colony was to be restored to the Dutch.

On the 13th November, 1802, a government official notification stated that his Excellency the Governor was grieved by the progress made by Kafirs and vagrants,

who had penetrated in the woods about Plettenberg's Bay, and that a commando had been ordered to assemble on the 20th December, at Wolvenfontein, under Commandant P. R. Botha. The outlying districts were evidently as yet in a disturbed state.

My father, from whose journal I have made the above extracts, closes on the 24th January, 1829, with the following remarks: "Happy, my contemporaries and fellow-citizens, are we, that in so many respects we enjoy more peaceable times, and may now cherish the hope that the conflicting ideas of the inhabitants of this colony of the older stock and those of the recent settlers will more and more become reconciled by nature and forbearance, and by toleration of those opinions which difference of education, interest, and degrees of local knowledge created in former days, and which disturbed this settlement, formed for abundance, unity, and peaceful happiness, so that from month to month it existed only under hopes and fears.

"This internal opposition of thoughts, inclinations, and objects being considered and taken as the most fruitful sources of evil and misfortune, it is really surprising, and demands our gratitude to God and man, that at that time no greater calamities visited the colony."

And now we gradually proceed to the close of the first period of British administration. The village and vicinity were evidently in a prosperous state, many houses had been built, religious worship had found under the British the same protection as it had for about a century before under the Dutch; and infidelity which had gained ground in Europe, and had obscurely crept

in here, found a deep-rooted opposition in the settled position of our Christian church,—a dyke which could not be overpowered. The regular attendance at church in the village and elsewhere on every first day of the week, the separate assemblies under the name of *oeffeningen* (meetings), however differing in method, operated jointly to effect the same object and to divert from this country the corrupt stream which shows itself, however distant, all-destructive.

In the year 1799, a printing press had been established, previous to which, and for a hundred and forty-seven years, all laws and proclamations had been written by the pen. The first government notification of the permission to print, granted to Messrs. Walker and Robertson, is dated 21st July, 1800.

The first proclamation stating the restitution of the colony to the Dutch, issued by Lieutenant-Governor Dundas is dated 27th August, 1802. As stated before, the sensation it created was great, as those who have attentively observed the effect of hope and fear can easily imagine; but it was not until the 20th of February, 1803, that the announcement was formally made that on the 21st actual possession would be given to the Batavian Republic, according to the third article of the treaty of peace closed at Amiens on the 27th March, 1802, and all the inhabitants of whatever rank or station (not being British subjects) were relieved from the oath of allegiance taken in favour of his Britannic Majesty, and returned to the subjection of the Batavian Government. The first proclamation signed by the Dutch Governor, Commissary-General J. A. de Mist, was dated 1st March, 1803.

The Commissary-General had been meanwhile informed that the country inhabitants had been patrolling in armed bodies from fear and apprehension of the Hottentots. And when the landdrost and heemraden of Stellenbosch were in town on the 25th December, 1802, the commissary requested them to explain to the inhabitants that he considered that such conduct invited danger where it did not previously exist, and might be the means of embittering the minds of inoffensive people, who considered themselves as the objects aimed at by such armed patrols, and thus also create disturbance. He further stated that until the settlement had actually been delivered up to the Batavian Government, he could only admonish, advise, and request; he therefore exhorted them as their friend and protector, and requested them as his fellow-citizens, who would ere long be under the administration of the Batavian Government, that they should not under a mere apprehension of danger allow themselves to be disturbed, and by untimely and irregular means of defence cause calamities which it would not be in his power to prevent, and the consequences of which could not be calculated.

He further assured them that the peace and prosperity of the inhabitants of the country and of Cape Town would be cordially attended to when the settlement had been delivered over to him and the commander-in-chief, and that measures would be adopted to ease their minds with regard to the assembled natives, or dreaded insults of single or combined persons; and he trusted this explanation and assurance would have a beneficial effect.

But a circumstance occurred, which unexpectedly suspended the proceedings for the cession of the

settlement. General Janssens, the governor, and Commissary-General de Mist had been received in the most friendly manner by General Dundas, who immediately resigned to them the governor's residence situated in the castle, himself residing in the garden house till all was ready for embarkation. A large quantity of stores, it was also arranged, were to be taken over by the Dutch at a mutual valuation. This being concluded, the British troops were embarked, and a day was named for all to be on board. This was the 1st January, 1803. Everything seemed settled, when on the day before that appointed, an English frigate arrived in Table Bay. I happened to be in town and saw her coming to anchor. The captain landed and sent the boat back to the ship; he looked very mysterious and answered no questions, but desired to be brought immediately to General Dundas to deliver dispatches. The British general and admiral met in consultation, shortly after which it was observed that the latter hastened on board.

*An order had been received on no account to give up the Cape.*

The position was awkward; the Dutch had five thousand men, with all their accoutrements, landed and lodged in the barracks, and the same number of the English had embarked on board the ships in the bay.

The English troops were quietly landed, and a bustle was heard in the court-yard, the grounding of arms, &c. The Dutch general was naturally surprised, when General Dundas, being in the castle, sent to General Janssens to ask an interview; explanations ensued; the admiral (Sir Roger Curtis) was also present. He and

General Dundas with General Janssens and Commissary-General de Mist came very cordially to the following agreement.

That in order to prevent any collision between the Dutch troops and the English, the former should remove some three or four miles into cantonments in the pleasant plains of Wynberg, and the English be held in readiness to embark immediately on counter orders being received from home, for which purpose a part was to be kept in the castle, and the rest in the barracks; an arrangement which was at once agreed to and carried into effect. This was certainly a painful suspense to both parties.

In February, however, orders were received from home to deliver up the Cape to the officers of the Batavian Republic. The British troops were immediately put in preparation for embarking, and the admiral was busily engaged in allotting ships and berths for the civilians, and the announcement above mentioned that the Cape was to be taken possession of on the 21st of February, 1803, by the Batavian Government, made its appearance.

Here I am now on the point of leaving my parental roof to join the civil service in Cape Town for the future—that parental roof where I spent so many happy days. And now I will communicate some personal observations with respect to the place, its inhabitants, and such other subjects as may appear to me of interest.

## SECTION VIII.

I WILL now proceed to endeavour to describe the

## OLD PARSONAGE AT STELLENBOSCH.

It was situated in the main street leading to the Drostdy, about seven houses lower down. In front was half an acre of garden ground planted with vines and beautiful fruit trees, and enclosed by a wall six feet high, with a large green gate between two pillars opposite the entrance to the parsonage; and in one of the angles of the premises were a roomy stable, coach-house, and cow-shed.

The parsonage was conveniently built; two moderate-sized rooms and an entrance-hall in front, a dining-hall behind, two bedrooms and a spare-room, kitchen, pantry, and spacious loft; there were, besides a roomy fowl-yard and three fowl and pigeon-houses and a pig-sty; two rooms for servants and outer store, and a large wine-cellar and woodhouse.

Behind the house was a garden and vineyard, divided by a main walk of myrtle and smaller paths; along the broader walks were fruit-trees, such as varieties of the apple, pear, medlar, apricot, almond, plum, fig, and other fruit. The garden was fenced on one side by a quince hedge, and on the other by a lawn with large oak trees, and terminated on the banks of that clear brook, the Eerste River, along which small bathing places were made for our recreation. The abundance of fruit in the garden at my disposal gave me often an opportunity of treating my young companions; and several beehives supplied us with beautiful honey.



All this perhaps will appear trivial to the reader, but my object is to give an idea of the comforts provided in "the olden times" for a country clergyman by a generous congregation, with the view of enabling him to subsist in decency upon something more than the small stipend of 1,000 guilders, or £75 per annum, which he drew from the public treasury; and this good feeling did not confine itself to the mere parsonage itself, for some of the church members provided the pastor's household amply with vegetables and other produce of their farms, so that he and his family always enjoyed a share of comfort and could maintain the conventional appearances of respectability.

Thus having around us all that moderate competency required, I witnessed contentment in our family, even from my youth; and whilst the pressure of care was unknown, we enjoyed all that could be desired in the social station of unobtrusive life.

My father was religious and strict in the performance of his duties. Much of his time was given to study and reading, and his relaxation confined itself to the garden and occasionally to a little sport, but merely for the sake of recreation. He was an admirer of nature, and the starry heaven often occupied his meditations. Cheerful in disposition and instructive in narrative, in possession of qualities adapted to attract social intercourse, he was sought not only by the villagers but by strangers frequenting his neighbourhood: in return he often visited the sick, the infirm, and his parishioners. The latter, indeed, would constantly send their vehicle to convey him to their homes.

My mother was kind-hearted and cheerful; her domestic arrangements were marked by good sense and judgment, with love and attention to the children, and regard to the comforts of those belonging to the household. The stranger or village visitor met always a welcome and pleasing countenance. The happiness of all about her was her blessing,—that of her husband her chief aim and study.

The result of such examples was contentment in the family, reciprocal love and obedience; no force was needed to exact the performance of any duty. Love was the groundwork upon which this domestic edifice was raised, and happiness around was the fruit of such christian-like principles.

The family generally rose early, and were called to morning prayers, offered up by the head of the family; about sunrise the labourers proceeded to their duties in the garden, and left off at sunset, being relieved by intermediate hours of rest for breakfast and dinner similarly to the family; and in the evening the labourers, who then mostly consisted of slaves, indulged in gossip in their own quarters or listened to the music of the *ramakienjo* (an instrument with three strings stretched over a calabash, which acted like a sounding board) on which one of them was generally expert, enjoying their supper around a fire; the children were, under the eye of the mama, usually occupied during the evening with their lessons, whilst the paterfamilias was engaged in his study. About nine o'clock supper was announced, the family assembled round the table, and then we had the benefit of listening to interesting and useful information

collected in the study-room and delivered with appropriate remarks and observations; or sometimes the conversation reverted to the dear Fatherland and the earlier days there spent. After this, prayer and thanksgiving were offered, and the little family retired with the parental kiss and wish for a good night's repose and a recommendation not to neglect prayers.

The Sabbath was the day of rest. The family dressed for church, and about an hour before service wagons and vehicles of different sorts were to be seen coming to the village with well and decently-dressed families, and gradually the villagers in their best attire were seen moving to the house of God. Men and women sat separately in church, some according to their respective ranks, the one in pews the others on chairs. The landdrost and heemraden, and minister's family and churchwardens occupied pews distinguished by prominent boards above their seats. The pulpit was so placed as to command a sight of the whole congregation; the organ stood opposite, supported by a gallery, in the midst of which were beautifully painted, in oil, figures expressive of Love, Hope, and Charity.

Previously to the minister ascending the pulpit and between the ringing of the second and third bells the Dominie, or parish clerk, read chapters out of the Bible, and usually also the one from which the text was to be taken. He also published banns, and named the members who were desirous of moving to other parishes, if any, and had applied for certificates of membership, and when the ringing of the third bell had ceased he gave out the psalm or hymn to be sung by the congregation, with the time, leading the singing and accompanied by the organ

Meanwhile, the minister, having said his prayer on the steps of the pulpit ascended, and when the singing had ceased, a short prayer opened the proceedings and a blessing was invoked upon the congregation. Next an introductory discourse was delivered, taken from some text. A prayer was offered up to the Lord, in which those present silently joined, the men usually standing holding their hats before their faces or with closed eyes; the women sitting with their fans open and covering their countenances; psalms or hymns were then again sung, and the minister, having read the text, expounded the doctrine therein contained, and closed the sermon with appropriate remarks applicable to the circumstances of his auditory, and after a brief and comprehensive sermon the service was closed. In the interval after the minister had communicated the division of his subject, and before the explanation, two of the deacons were called upon to collect for the poor and church purposes, a velvet bag, to which was suspended a little silver bell with a tassel below it, fixed to a long black staff was held upright on each side of the pulpit, whilst the pastor recommended charity; it was then presented for the reception of donations to each of the congregation individually. It was considered a sacred duty, and even children never neglected to drop their mite into these bags. The minister after the recommendation proceeded with the delivery of the sermon. Thus were the ordinary church funds collected, and when extra expences were required a special subscription was raised for the occasion. At present, the custom of collecting in bags has become obsolete, and collections are now made in boxes placed for the purpose at the entrance doors. When the sermon was finished persons

wishing to have their children baptized were called upon to appear before the pulpit to hear the ministration of baptism; this being read and the promises thereby required being made by the sponsors, the name of the child was handed to the minister, either by father, mother, or sponsor, and it was baptized by sprinkling water on the forehead in the name of the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost.

This ceremony being performed, parties wishing to be married were next requested to appear; the service for the solemnization of marriage having been performed the solemnization was concluded by bridegroom and bride giving to one another their respective right hands, and whilst mutually holding them, affirming the obligations read, when they received the confirmation and blessing of the pastor. The newly married having retired to their seats, prayers and thanksgiving were offered to the Almighty for the sick and afflicted, for the baptized, the married, the widows and orphans, the authorities, the aged and infirm, and all in need were entreated for succour and mercy; and this last prayer was usually closed with the Lord's prayer. After this a psalm or hymn was sung, during which the happy couples retired arm in arm and left the church; then the final benediction to the congregation; who thereupon dispersed. The vehicles of some of the congregation stood before the church doors ready to convey them home; others remained for the afternoon, in order that their children should be catechized by the parson and prepared for confirmation; the catechizing was public in the church, to which adults were also admitted.

After church, the collections were handed over to the deacon-cashier to be disposed of by the churchwardens.

I fancy I now see them walking down the street with their minister, who usually held his black silk mantle over his left arm between them. The churchwardens were always neatly dressed in black, with white cravats, and, in former days wore wigs and small three-cornered hats. Occasionally some of them or their families stayed at the parsonage and partook of the plain family repast. For many years there was also a service in the week in church on Wednesday evening.

Though some of the slaves in and about the village were in the habit of spending their Sabbath in working in their gardens or in other labour, yet there were at Stellenbosch several who attended a meeting held for their instruction in the afternoon or evening of each Sunday, by a Mr. Johan Nicolaas Desch, who lived in the house in Green-square, now occupied by the English minister. I saw them there in 1798 and 1799. They were also admitted in church, and some regularly attended service. The coloured people had their seats apart from the rest of the congregation, and alongside of the pulpit.

The form of confirmation of church members is simply this: when a person considers himself qualified he applies for admission as a member to the minister, who convenes a meeting of applicants usually before the quarterly sacrament day. The candidates are then examined in the presence of one of the elders, and when found admissible, adopted into the communion of the church, and their names registered in the book of church members. Adults desirous of being members were also thus examined, and afterwards, if necessary, baptized; heathens complying with the same forms thus attained admission into the church.

The minister was formerly appointed by Government, but is at present elected by the churchwardens and proposed to Government; the churchwardens were elected by the board, two deacons and one elder annually vacated their seats, others were then nominated to the vacancies, and, after their names had been announced three Sundays in church and no objection raised, they were on the last Sunday in the year presented to the congregation before the pulpit, according to the form prescribed.

A certain number of poor children, under the supervision of the churchwardens in each parish, and named *diaconys kinderen*, are educated and clothed from the church funds, from which source provision is also made for the aged and infirm members.

Having thus far treated of the church and parsonage and clerical establishment of Stellenbosch, I will now attempt to describe the Drostdy House and Public Buildings, and the functionaries employed in former days.

The Drostdy House at Stellenbosch was formerly the residence allowed by Government to the landdrost, as chief magistrate of the district. This building, which was subsequently sold, and is now the Theological Seminary, stands on a terrace about ten feet above the ground, and about one hundred feet in length, with several rows of large stone steps; it is lofty, but under thatch, with a wooden framework over the coping of the front wall, at the foot of the thatch; before the building stood two large oaks, sixty or seventy feet high, of which one remains, planted probably in 1712; a wall of about one hundred and fifty feet ran on each side,

enclosing the yard. On the right of the residence, on entering the front door, was a court-room about forty feet in length, and on the left were two very lofty rooms; at the rear was a dining-hall, besides several bed-rooms, with kitchen, store-room, &c. The back premises consisted of stables capable of containing thirty or forty horses, coach-house, forage-loft, and several rooms for servants. Behind the building grew beautiful oaks, facing a fine enclosed orchard; to its right was a lawn about three hundred yards long, and dotted with oaks, leading to the menagerie, and extensive gardens and corn-fields, sufficiently large to grow forage for eight or ten horses: the whole premises are abundantly supplied with water from the Eerste River. Facing the building is a fine broad street, adorned with lofty oaks, in which at about two hundred yards stands the church. A neat and comfortable family mansion, formerly the property of the heemraad, the late Mr. J. C. Faure, terminates the perspective. To the left are the public prison and police establishment; and opposite, the houses and gardens formerly allowed to the secretary, messenger, parish clerk, and schoolmaster.

I record these particulars to preserve in memory the former establishment, already gradually changing, and to show how the chief authorities were provided with respectable and well-appointed residences, with a view to secure their independence, and to keep them out of debt by saving them from the expense of purchasing or hiring inferior residences on entering office out of their small stipends,—the landdrost, in particular, as representing Government, and holding a position something similar to a lord-lieutenant of a county in



England, required such additional aid. It was expected when the governor or chief functionaries or strangers of note visited the village that they should be entertained by the landdrost,—and he had an extra allowance to meet these expenses in addition to his salary.

In order to give an idea of the duties imposed on a landdrost, now merged partially in those of the civil commissioner of a division, I shall subjoin an outline of the multifarious routine of the duties imposed on him, to show his position. Perhaps some of our posterity may take an interest in knowing something of our original institutions.

The landdrost represented the Government in all matters connected with his office. He was assisted by as many resident burghers and inhabitants, named heemraden, as the Governor might think necessary, and they constituted with him a board, assisted by a secretary. He was to maintain the authority of Government, protect persons and property, attend to education, treat the aborigines as free people, promote their civilization and see that they received justice, and was to prevent aggression, yet be prepared for defence; no violence whatever was to be used against the indigenous tribes, except in defence. He was to encourage agriculture in its various branches, and promote it by counsel and support, especially the conversion of the Cape into wool-growing sheep; to urge the planting of trees and improvement of agricultural implements; to examine grants of lands; to register all farms and erven; to receive land-rent; and to protect the sea-coast and the wrecks in his division.

Further, he acted as public prosecutor, and had charge and superintendence of the police, and “as long

as the use of slaves in the colony should not be abandoned, the landdrost was to consider it amongst his most sacred duties to watch for the protection of those unfortunate beings; he was to judge between master and slave." (Instructions in 1805.)

He was expected to watch over the undisturbed exercise of public worship, and encourage attendance in church, and respect for religion by example; and with regard to the missionaries he had to observe certain proclamations and letter of Commissary-General de Mist. In case of absence he was succeeded by the heemraad who was annually elected to act in that emergency.

The board of landdrost and heemraden consisted of the landdrost, as president, and six resident notable burghers and inhabitants. Two of the heemraden, the seniors, retired annually, and four were nominated for the vacancies, out of whom the Governor elected the two new members. At Stellenbosch, the board met on the first Monday of every month. The heemraden were subject to a fine of five rixdollars for non-attendance. The landdrost, with two heemraden, constituted, since September, 1804, a matrimonial court. Heemraden were also expected to be attentive to the principles laid down in the landdrost's instructions, and with him to display exactness and economy in the administration of the revenue and expenditure of the district.

The revenue was raised from capitation and other taxes on stock and produce, under the name of *opgaaf*, general contributions, proceeds of mills, kloofs, tolls, poundage, and the like, fines and penalties, and sundry other receipts.

The expenditure was civil salaries, costs of criminal prosecutions, inquests, repairs of buildings, fire-engines, ferry-boats, &c., repairs of passes, roads, watercourses, fees for attendance of landdrost and heemraden on extra duties, and sundry other expenses.

The matters subject to the jurisdiction of the board were mainly confined, in civil matters, to disputes relative to lands and boundaries, and for the recovery of sums not exceeding three hundred rixdollars in vendue claims ; there was a higher jurisdiction, subject to appeal. By rules in force, impartiality as much as possible was secured.

A criminal jurisdiction was afterwards authorised, to a certain extent, by the Instructions for Crown Trials of 1819 ; besides the power granted originally to take preliminary examinations, the board held inquests, regulated the assizing of weights and measures, and had superintendence over the fire engines ; they could exact an oath to verify the statement for collecting taxes (opgaaf), and two heemraden inspected the prison monthly ; they were to receive no gifts, even of meat or drink, from litigants.

The secretary attended the meetings of the board or its commissioners, and recorded all proceedings ; he was exclusively the district notary and vendue-master.

The district was divided into subdivisions or field-cornetcies, and, on the recommendation of the landdrost, Government appointed those very useful officers, the field-cornets, to each ward,—and these were guided by special instructions, which may be seen in the ordinance for the administration of country districts of October, 1805, drawn by the late Sir John Truter, when Secretary

to Government ; they were considered as his *chef d'œuvres*.

A messenger was also appointed by Government, on the recommendation of the landdrost, under a salary of three hundred rixdollars, free lodging, and allowance of fees ; and the landdrost had, besides, for his assistance a chief constable, six policemen, and six inferior attendants, popularly known as “Kafirs.”

I fear I have been rather prolix in much of what I have stated in this as well as in some preceding chapters, but as many of the above details are not generally understood or known, I considered it desirable to record them, bearing in mind, moreover, that I am delineating the manners, customs, and forms of a past generation, whose actions would be not without interest to some of my readers, and will, perhaps, constitute the object of inquiry to some future colonial antiquary.

I cherish a respect for that extinct body, the board of landdrost and heemraden of Stellenbosch, for it was not only from it that I received my first appointment and introduction into the service in January, 1801 ; but, as its secretary for upwards of three years, I witnessed and assisted in its proceedings, and had an opportunity of estimating its value in the country districts.

I will now attempt to depict a meeting of the board. On the first Monday of the month, the first official attendant who presented himself to sight at the drostdy was the messenger, dressed in black, with a silver shield, blazoned with a lion on a red field, suspended by a chain and hanging on the left side of his breast, preparing the court-room, and afterwards walking on the stoep in front of the drostdy-house. Next arrived the secretary,

with his portfolio and papers, attended by one of his clerks, a quarter of an hour before the board attended. The heemraden followed successively, dressed generally in black, and when assembled, with the landdrost presiding, the large village bell beside the Drostdy-house was tolled for some minutes, whilst the national flag was hoisted, and the public assembled in the hall in front of the court-room.

The board being assembled, the doors were closed and prayers read by the secretary, and the minutes of the preceding meeting confirmed and signed by all present,—the landdrost rung the clear-sounding silver bell, and the large folding doors were thrown open, and litigants and others attracted by business or desirous to communicate with the board on various matters admitted. The president used to be seated in an arm-chair at the upper end of a table covered with a suitable green cloth, silver inkstands being used; opposite him sat the secretary, and on either side of the table sat the heemraden. The business of the day began with the civil suits.

The names of the parties were called in succession by the messenger, according to the roll. Each case was distinctly read by the secretary, and then heard; those requiring discussion and consideration were decided with closed doors, but the judgment was pronounced in public. The suits being finished, other matters connected with the general administration of the district were disposed of, the accounts examined, and the landdrost, as cashier, authorized to pay those passed, and the meeting usually closed by one or two o'clock; the sittings, I should have mentioned, generally commenced

early,—at nine, sometimes at eight o'clock. Besides these ordinary there were extra meetings of the board in criminal proceedings, for collecting taxes, inspection of lands, holding inquests, &c., for all which there were fixed allowances paid, namely to the landdrost at the rate of nine shillings, to heemraden each six, and secretary three shillings per diem, under the name of "vacatie."

Amongst the notables elected from time to time as heemraden were the Van der Byls, Cloetes, Meyburgs, de Villiers, du Toits, Marais, Hoffmans, Faures, Herolds, Mosterds, de Waals, Neethlings, Wiums, Morkels, and others whose names escape me; they were mostly men of influence and landed property, and of the most respectable families.

The establishment of the matrimonial court in the district by Mr. Commissary-General de Mist was of great convenience. It was composed, as before mentioned, of the landdrost, and two heemraden, assisted by the secretary. One of the sections of the marriage ordinance enacted that, after the publication of banns, the parties could appear before the court and have the banns solemnized according to the form prescribed by the rules of that law. This was done on the first Sunday of every month at twelve o'clock, in the court-room, by the secretary reading the form in presence of the matrimonial court, after first ringing the bells. Under this ceremony, the marriage being considered as a civil contract, all was done that the law deemed necessary to constitute a lawful marriage,—leaving to the parties to have the ceremony also performed, if so inclined, by a clergyman in such manner as their respective religious persuasions

required. But in 1806, Sir David Baird, by proclamation, prohibited the matrimonial courts in Cape Town and the country from performing the marriage ceremony in future, and directed that all marriages in this settlement, as was the case before Mr. de Mist's regulations were issued, were to be performed by an ordained clergyman.

For the convenience, however, of inhabitants in the country districts the registry of marriages in the court of heemraden, and marrying by clergymen in their cures or parishes, were continued.

As happens sometimes even in Cape Town, some of the young couples arriving from the country districts were dependent for their outfits on the depôts of the village; and ludicrous scenes frequently occurred. On one occasion, a poor fellow, whose fingers were encased in a pair of tight gloves, made his appearance before the board. Utterly unaccustomed to their novel covering, his sturdy, coarse fingers, used to grasp the plough-handle and the spade, now refused to serve their hapless owner; he had to produce the written consent of the parents (generally written, with a due regard to economy, on a very small bit of paper), and found his efforts to grasp the scrap, which was stowed away in his pouch, wholly fruitless, not being able to feel it through his new cuticle. After a good deal of ineffective groping he was fain to call for the assistance of his intended, the fair bride, pointing to his several pockets, out of one of which the good girl (I think I still see her blushes) at last succeeded in abstracting the precious document, with much excitement. I believe her maiden name was "Grietje." Never did a pair leave the court with more

haste or under greater embarrassment. I was then the secretary.

Another scene, rather peculiar, happened also whilst I was secretary. A rich old widow, upwards of sixty, had engaged herself to an old gentleman of nearly the same age; they were, according to custom, to come to the village to undergo the matrimonial ordeal. To our surprise, one day we saw a fine horsewagon, in which this brace of venerable turtles was seated, stopping in front of the Drostdy, stripped of the sides of its cover or tent, and the tails and manes of the horses closely cut. This unusual trim roused our curiosity, especially as the vehicle was followed by the little mob of the village. The explanation was soon given; bitter were the complaints made against a certain relative of the old lady, who, disappointed by her marriage in his expectation of a handsome inheritance on her demise, was strongly suspected to be the author of the mischief which had been committed during the preceding night.

The old lady having answered the usual questions, appeared still in sorrow, but our kind-hearted president having congratulated her on "the happy prospect in expectation" (I scarcely think he meant heirs), could not resist the temptation, or rather escape the civility, of sealing the court's wishes with a kiss. This drew a smile and complaisant courtesy, and the good aged couple retired, seating themselves again in the wagon amidst the gaze and satirical looks of those they passed.

Both the board of landdrost and heemraden and the matrimonial court were recommended in cases of dispute before them to do all in their power to effect an amicable



settlement and prevent litigation ; so that they were in many instances peace-makers and mediators.

Having thus far confined myself to matters concerning the church and state of the district, I will now attempt to give some sketch of the different classes of inhabitants and others composing the community.

The first class, I mean those who possessed large landed and other property and of some influence, lived comparatively in ease and comfort, some indeed in affluence ; their estates and lands produced abundance, for labour was sufficient, owing to the introduction of slaves, who were obtained at very moderate prices ; and their influence was considerable on account of their property and connections. Their powers with regard to their domestics were extensive, I might almost say arbitrary ; and accustomed to command at pleasure, they generally displayed in appearance and manners a degree of self-confidence and independence correspondent with the republican spirit of the mother country.

They were tenacious of rank and ambitious to be elected as heemraden or militia officers or church wardens,—offices which then conferred dignity.

The respective ranks of the officials were upheld according to a scale of precedence established by authority (*ranglysten*). When on duty, they were respected in the exercise of their power. When in church, they had their pews of distinction, and their wives were seated according to the ranks of the husbands, their chairs being arranged accordingly. The least deviation by the sexton or any other inferior created a sensation and provoked a rebuke ; so strictly were these regulations respected, that even at funerals after the

members of the family had followed the deceased, each individual present was called by name to follow in procession according to his rank in the "ranglyst." I have been told of an instance where a man of some rank had been rather late in his attendance, and the undertaker had actually halted the funeral procession in order to place him according to his rank in the *cortège*.

The funerals in the country were generally well attended; relations, connections, and friends made it a point, however distant their residence, to pay the last tribute of respect to the remains of the deceased. Hence a custom arose of preparing refreshment to be partaken after burial, regard being had especially to the distant travellers. This simple and well-meant custom at a later period degenerated into a mere feasting. When the mourners returned to the house of death, it was not unusual to present them with a variety of cakes, amongst these some in the shape of large loaves of bread named "*geraspte brooden*," rasped bread, smoked sausages, olives, cold ham, old Rhenish and choice wines preserved for the purpose, pipes, tobacco, and with the more wealthy in such profusion that it was customary to take a share of cakes home for the family (*pour les enfants*). The practice has long since ceased, and the attendants at funerals retire from the grave to their homes after receiving simply thanks for their attention, especially those who aid to carry the coffin to and from the hearse. These bearers, usually intimate friends, in former times commonly received some donation, generally silver money, as did the pall-bearers.

The general character of the colonists was marked by hospitality. They were considered honest in the perform-

ance of their engagements, so that in loans of money the verbal promise and simplest acknowledgment on paper were in many instances accepted on good faith and considered a good security ; they were generous in assisting one another either by becoming sureties or giving credit, especially to young beginners and married couples on commencing life. The customary way to establish the young farmer was to purchase a farm, sometimes entirely on credit ; the parents then aided by a gift of slaves or such other contribution as their means afforded, and the majority who thus commenced their career succeeded by industry and by sober and economical habits in redeeming their farms, so that at a more advanced age they were clear of debt and possessed of unincumbered property. I know myself of many such instances. There were, however, many other instances in which the struggle for a competency and livelihood was attended with much care and exertion ; but though the gain was scanty, the perseverance and submission to circumstances were to be admired.

When they felt their rights injured, which was sometimes the case under the administration of the East India Company, when their interest was in conflict with that of the authority over them, they were resolute in asserting them. The history of the colony under Governor van der Stell and others will show their representations of grievances to the Home Government.

In their families they generally imitated the patriarchal form of government ; the word of command seriously given by the parent was obeyed without murmur or hesitation, and disciplinary directions met but seldom with opposition. Families were, on the whole, generally

numerous. Marriage was considered a sacred union, and as such maintained and respected. In their daily costume the respectable inhabitants of the country and village were plain but neat and clean, each regulating his dress according to the seasons and weather; he thus often escaped these maladies which a changeable climate is apt to cause by unguarded exposure; and this, joined to early rising and sober meals and regular habits, often produced instances of longevity.

In the morning early they drink a cup of coffee; about eight o'clock they partook of a moderate breakfast, at which meat appeared, and in some families of French descent light wines; a solid dinner was provided at twelve o'clock; tea and sweetmeats followed at three o'clock; coffee and biscuit or bread and butter came in towards evening, to which were sometimes added on the farms fine fruit in season, such as water and musk melons, grapes, &c., served neatly on a little table in front of the house, a repast of which I have often enjoyed. At eight o'clock in the evening supper was served; this usually constituted the family meal. After dinner, however, the early rising in the morning induced a gentle siesta. The mother of the family gave the tone to the household, and in order that nothing might escape observation, she was in the habit of sitting at a small table, with a drawer for her keys, *nic-nacs*, &c., in the back hall, whence she regulated the duties to be performed by the daughters and female domestics. Sometimes there stood before her a tea-pot and shining kettle to serve those inclined with weak tea, which, in some places, where the water was indifferent, was very acceptable. It would have been deemed rude not to

offer a cup to the visiting stranger. The "good wife" was, moreover, usually the family scribe; the internal arrangement of the household was therefore considered her department exclusively, and it was surprising to see how well versed and clever some were in the performance of these domestic duties. As there were but few medical practitioners in former days, those too often living very distant, the mother of the family was usually expert and consulted in cases of sickness or accident. In order to be prepared she was in most houses provided with medicines or remedies, composed partly from the apothecary shop and partly from herbs of the country known from experience to possess medical or healing qualities. Great faith was placed in small boxes of medicine prepared at Halle, in Germany, and known under the name of *Halsche medicynen*. In ordinary cases, and before medical aid is called in, these remedies are resorted to. They are known as *huysmiddeltjes* (domestic medicines), and are sometimes applied with good success.

No respectable family was seen without the Bible in its possession, some too with books of prayer or hymns, which, with other religious books, were read with attention and reverence. Some families owned a Flavius Josephus and books of martyrology, and it was not unusual to hear in some houses the singing of psalms and hymns before daylight and in the evening before supper; at meals, prayer and thanksgiving, either by the father, mother, one of the children, or schoolmaster, was observed, and in some families I cannot recollect to have seen it ever neglected; I know, when yet young, that religious instruction was given in the evening even to the slaves belonging to the household, particularly by a Mr. Frans Roos of Moddergat, Hamman of Stellenbosch, Roux, and others.

With regard to the slaves, notwithstanding the great power allowed to the masters, I think that in this country slavery existed in its mildest form; there was a good deal of kind feeling shown towards those slaves who had been inherited and those born in the family (*huysboorlingen*). I have seen several of the latter nursed by the mistress of the house, and treated precisely like her own children. In fact, they had become almost members of the family.

From the different modes of education, and through example, caprice, passion, exaction, and disposition of the different masters, there were undoubtedly exceptions; but coercion was at times required to check idleness and disobedience, especially in the instance of those imported Negroes, from whom it was natural to expect aversion to labour. It is true that in some instances the power granted by law to the masters was abused; but as this operated against the master's own interest, and was moreover checked by provisions of the law, which authorized the sale of an ill-treated slave, who could not be again purchased by his master's relations, and in some aggravated cases of all the slaves, and was moreover visited by additional fines or imprisonment, and in cases of murder, even with capital punishment,—cases of excessive ill-treatment I consider to have been rare compared to the others I have mentioned.

Yet, in however mild a state slavery may be considered to have existed in the colony, the absolute power exercised by one human being over the other, the temptation and opportunity for doing so, and abusing it in the more distant localities without fear of detection or control, the separation of families by sale or other means, the scanty supply of food and clothing, the

confined apartments allotted the slave, and several other circumstances, especially the immoral state of concubinage, all made it ever appear to my mind as a state in our society undesirable and contrary to the principles of Christianity and good morals, and unnatural between man and man, however much tolerated by custom and even protected by law.

Whether it was from principles imbibed from my father, who, born in East Friso, a country perfectly free, highly extolled the liberty of the subject and the non-existence of slavery in Europe, and the blessing of being served by free people and not serfs, or whether it was natural to my own feelings, I cannot say,—but there was something so repulsive in that state of bondage and so contrary to the principles of justice that when the day arrived of the slave emancipation in this colony, though I was a sufferer in a pecuniary point of view, I felt the event was a great blessing and benefit to the community at large, and was a tribute of infinite value to humanity.

Had the Home Government been fully acquainted with all local circumstances, and the actual inclination of the inhabitants to co-operate and promote emancipation, the manumission of the coloured races might have been effected in this colony at less expense and with more satisfaction to all parties.

At the period of which I now make mention there existed a Philanthropic Society for purchasing young female children, with the object of freeing them and leaving them with their parents or judiciously apprenticing them during their nonage. Had the funds of that society been larger, it alone in a few years might have

extinguished slavery ; an annual grant of five thousand pounds or six thousand pounds, in addition to the subscriptions, would have been ample to effect gradually the object in view, and the result of such a measure less embarrassing to the owners, who were, strictly speaking, under the registry by Government established and countenanced in that species of property ; and such was then the disposition to promote emancipation, that when a slave was offered at public sale, and it became known that he was to be purchased for freedom, custom and feeling forbade competition, so that he might be liberated for a moderate sum.

But I feel that the case of this colony could not have been made an isolated one ; it stood closely connected with those of her sister colonies : the grand measure had been determined upon and adopted by the Imperial Parliament, that in the British dominions slavery should not exist, and the measure of compensation under valuation was resorted to.

Had the payment been made in the colony, either through the treasury or commissariat, according to the valuation of the Government appraisers, the owners, especially landholders, would not have suffered to the extent some of them have, notwithstanding the distress through want of labour which was immediately felt. But the payment of the compensation *was to be made in England* ; the appointment of agents to receive the money became consequently unavoidable, and this led to speculation and jobbery, to the profit of a few speculators but to the loss of the slave-holder. Reports were industriously spread wide and far of the uncertainty of payment, or rather the certainty of non-payment, of the



compensation claims, which induced many ignorant of the true state of the matter to dispose of their claims at very reduced discount to the speculator who had perhaps helped to spread the report. Some who had bought their slaves on credit were pressed by their creditors for payment; others required capital to proceed with the cultivation of their lands by free labour and for other incidental expenses. I am under the impression that vast sums have been realized by some of the speculators, while great losses were sustained by those whom Government was desirous to compensate; and I have no doubt a discontent was thus created which ultimately led in the distant country districts to the emigration which soon after began to pour over the boundaries of the colony.

With regard to the slaves, it was but natural that their expression of joy should be great; and on the 1st of December, 1839, numbers were seen in groups with happy countenances proceeding to Cape Town. Some expected to find a large table with eatables spread on the Grand Parade, but they were of course disappointed. Much of their joyful expectations was damped by the day being an uncommonly rainy one, torrents of rain came down from the clouds. This caused the speedy retirement of many, and some returned to their old masters' homes and continued in their former service, and up to this date there are instances in which the former slaves reside and work for wages on the estates of their late owners; but many of them have gradually established themselves independent of service, and there is no doubt that the condition of that class has now been materially improved; they receive handsome wages when

employed; and in the vicinity of Cape Town the weekly pleasure parties taking their excursions and pic-nics, and conveyed in wagons or other vehicles to the pleasant environs of Wynberg and Constantia, prove their comfortable state and position. Some have attached themselves to Christian churches and institutions, but most, especially in Cape Town, to the Mohammedans, with whom they were previously more or less connected.

When I consider the emancipation in point of humanity, my mind is imperceptibly drawn to that period before 1813, when the length of confinement in prison or degree of corporal punishment were in cases of domestic offences unlimited, and left in the hands of masters and at the discretion of the authorities. However, by Governor Sir John Francis Cradock, the corporal punishment in such cases was limited to thirty-nine lashes, and the public authorities having superintendence of any place of confinement were directed not to permit any slave to be detained for more than *one* month. That under the former system abuses of unlimited authority had been committed cannot be doubted; it is but the natural consequence of an uncontrolled arbitrary power left in the hands of human beings guided by self-interest.

As deputy fiscal in Cape Town it was part of my duty to dispose of cases between masters and slaves. The limitation made as to the degree of punishment was to my mind very relieving. Constant, I may say almost daily, applications were made to have slaves punished at the prison, under statements and accusations of various domestic offences. And though I feel at this moment

some satisfaction at having in several instances succeeded in obtaining pardon, in others a restraint in the exercise of that authority which was licensed by the law for the sake of keeping in a state of subjection and subordination that unfortunate class which was doomed by slavery to submit to the will of those who possessed them in bondage and who were deprived of the privileges of free subjects, yet I have my doubts whether in that difficult position several of these cases could be strictly tested by those rules for the administration of justice which at present favour the public trial of all offences. The state of compulsion and bondage created naturally in the slave the inclination to resist in bad temper even the lawful commands of the disposers of his servitude.

Comparing the number of punishments inflicted in those days with those, since the emancipation, and especially in latter years when I held the magistracy of Cape Town, and when corporal punishment was rarely found necessary except for public crimes, I cannot but rejoice at the sparing of pain and human suffering in our society under the present state, now that slavery is unknown; and watching for some time back the state of crime, I am fully convinced that under the frequent infliction of corporal punishment, crime will not decrease, but harden and debase the human mind; whilst if but sparingly and suitably applied in cases where the law and circumstances will justify such severe exercise of power, the feelings of rectitude and correctness of conduct, and the interest in character, reputation, and self-respect is better preserved, and the body of the community at large kept in a more wholesome state in regard to crimes and offences.

I would state more on this important subject, were it not that I feel already to have extended the limits of this memoir, but the reader will, I trust, indulge me in a matter in which, both as a public man and a private citizen I have been deeply concerned.

I will now return to the customs and manners of my countrymen, and attempt to give some further idea thereof and of their general character and domestic circumstances.

I fancy myself entering the house of an old respectable countryman, and especially the hall. There was the mistress of the house usually seated, receiving her familiar guests, in dress clean and orderly, surrounded by members of the family and several female servants, generally well employed in needle or other necessary work. On the tea table which she occupied stood the urn and kettle, alongside the waterbuckets mounted with copper, the copper fountain hanging on the wall with a little cock, destined to wash hands,—and these were all kept remarkably bright; the floors, when of clay, were weekly rubbed with blood to preserve it, and in inferior dwellings with cow-dung; in the houses of those in easy circumstances linseed oil or grease was used to give it, when floored with Batavian tiles, a polish. This made it sometimes so slippery that it really required a steady step to preserve one's balance.

One of the front rooms was usually a parlour, and particularly in summer kept dark and cool. It was furnished with stinkwood furniture, and the chief piece was a large wardrobe (cabinet), with folding doors and drawers, silver mounted, and this was destined for the neat Sunday dresses and extra linen. In some rooms I

have seen organs for sacred music, but no carpets or fire-places were in my younger days in use ; the stinkwood furniture was preserved by the rubbing of linseed oil or wax, or varnishing.

Another front room was furnished with bedsteads and fine soft feather beds and other pieces of furniture, and some little ornaments. This was kept for the special purpose of receiving strangers, so that the friend or traveller was generally welcome and his reception prepared. The ladies were very particular about the rooms reserved for that purpose. I have often had the pleasure of sharing in the hospitality of my country friends, and thus speak from experience.

The rest of the house, such as bedrooms, nurseries, pantry, kitchen, &c., were of course the exclusive domain of the mama.

The husband on a farm was generally occupied outdoors during the day, and found with the family at meals or tea ; and in the evening when horses and cattle were stabled and provided for, he took his seat in the arm chair in the family hall, enjoying his pipe and conversation until supper was announced.

The village of Stellenbosch was in those days very sociable. The landdrost, secretary, pastor, village physician, and some of the most respectable inhabitants, about a dozen in number, met in turn at their respective houses in the evening, when, smoking the social pipe with canister tobacco, and in winter discussing a glass of punch or good wine, the evening was pleasantly passed. Those fond of reading entertained the company by what they had collected from their own libraries, others from reading newspapers and pamphlets circulated. I

know that my old gentleman used to be supplied with a good many in the Dutch, English, and German languages, and that a pleasant evening passed until nine o'clock. This was the regular hour for parting, when the lanterns brought by the respective servants were lighted, and the party separated with a hearty shake of hands and bidding one another good night. When the company assembled at the parsonage, I was allowed sometimes as a favour to sit in the room, generally the study, and I well recollect hearing some very interesting and instructive conversations; and not unfrequently religious subjects were introduced.

The ladies used to accompany their husbands, and were received in a separate room, and amused themselves by conversing on different subjects connected with their department or taste, enjoying a cup of coffee, tea, chocolate, sweetmeats, cakes, &c.; and when the clock announced the hour for departure they joined their husbands, some being carried in sedan chairs, then in fashion, by two bearers.

The custom was to send in the morning either for your friends, or they sent a message to know whether it would be convenient to receive company, and if accepted, the families were thus socially assembled.

Stellenbosch was then the resort of many respectable strangers and English visitors; their society was certainly most agreeable and to me very instructive; our house was often frequented by them.

It happened sometimes, especially at the close of winter, when the days are beautifully clear (and the climate vies with any in the world) that my father, with a view to divert his mind and enjoy the beautiful

scenery about the village, used early in the week to visit his parishioners, and either in a chaise or on horseback, accompanied by some fond of sporting, would cross the fields, adorned with a great variety of flowers; and he was occasionally successful in supplying the family with game. I saw him once shoot a rheebuck at about eighty yards' distance with the gun he left me. One of these favourite excursions was to the waterfall in the Jonkershoek mountains, situate about ten or twelve miles from the village. Some of the villagers were invited to accompany our party; they carried with them guns and were followed by a number of dogs. When the morning star made its appearance I was summoned from sweet slumbers to join. The good mama had prepared coffee and cakes at our starting, and orders were given to our cheerful body-servant, Hendrik, to saddle Frolic and Prince, the two shooting ponies, and Turk, Fanny, and Caffre, the sporting dogs, were kept in readiness and in charge of the servant; and at the dawn of day the party started, amply provided with supplies of refreshments for the day. My sisters or other young ladies accompanied us occasionally on horseback, and whilst we rode along the banks of the Eerste river above the village, admiring its serpentine course betwixt a number of small trees and bushes of various sorts, and running over a bed of light-coloured stones betwixt two high mountains, the sun rose from behind the top of these stupendous rocks, changing the dark hue of the sky into brightness, and interesting objects made their appearance in the dawning light, showing a picture of fragments of rocks, caves, precipices, little streams, lofty summits, trees, &c., enlivened by birds such as wood-

pigeons, eagles, crows, hawks, and others of the smaller feathery tribe, and amongst them the honey-bird, for which some of our followers were looking out in hopes of finding a beehive, as it was credibly asserted that that bird led watchers to a hive. Other animals, such as bucks, jackals, &c., were also observed, and amongst them, not unusually, a group of baboons. In fact, such was the scenery that it could not fail to excite feelings of admiration. Three or four beautiful farms planted with vineyards and orchards made also a change along the road; and having passed these, at about five or six miles' distance from the last, the waterfall or cascade is seen dropping from the top of the mountain between a cluster of trees on natural terraces, widening in the middle and at the bottom in proportion to the stream, where it joins and forms the source of the Eerste river.

The river being crossed and horses unsaddled, we approached the foot of the fall, and gradually ascending the mountain under cover of trees about one hundred and fifty feet above the level ground, a beautiful basin is seen of about twenty-five feet diameter, with clear fine water, the receptacle of the stream, formed between high rocks adorned with creepers and tresses of long grass and plants hanging downwards, moistened by the drops of water from above. This basin is about four or five hundred yards below the perpendicular wall of rocks, having at the top a prominent point, near which the fall commences. Here the party rested in the space adjoining the basin and enjoyed the field feast supplied and gathered in the shape of a pic-nic from several contributions by the partakers. After the pastor had



said grace, and called attention to the wonders of nature and the interesting scenery around us, for such opportunities never escaped and his feelings were too lively, and he was too much attached to subjects which could raise the mind to intellectual enjoyment, the party returned usually towards evening well pleased at having spent a happy day.

On one occasion this pleasure excursion might have proved fatal. I was too young to accompany the party, but I heard my father often relate the fact that whilst they, about twenty or twenty-five in number, were sitting near the basin above mentioned enjoying themselves, a large baboon made his appearance on a rock, prominent far above the place where they were sitting, bawling out and looking downwards. This excited some of the young folks to return the cries, when one of the elder gentlemen, a Mr. Wm. Wium, an experienced sportsman, observed the animal walking backward and forward, as if intending to move the rocks and roll them down, such as in his sporting excursions he had seen on other occasions before, and he warned them that it would not be long before the baboon would return the compliment of mocking him by rolling some of the stones down the precipice. Scarcely had he spoken, when, to the amazement and fright of the party, a large rock and volley of small stones were seen rolling down from the spot where the creature had been seen. One of them fell in the midst of the party and slightly wounded one of the ladies in the leg; none of the others luckily were touched. The narrator used often to express his astonishment at the choice of the point, being right perpendicular above the basin, made by the brute and

taken to answer his object, so that the stones should reach the spot where he and the party were. He quoted it as an instance of extraordinary instinct and sagacity in that species of animal so nearly approaching the human being, and stated how providential was the escape of the rest of the party, of which the half at least had the chance of being severely injured by the larger pieces of rocks. He said that this should be a lesson to trust to the warnings of experienced men, and that it reminded him of the old proverb, *simia quam similis turpissima bestia nobis*.

Another pleasant excursion in my youthful days was to the Hottentots' Holland strand. The family was conveyed in a large wagon to Fishhoek (Gordon's Bay), and there we met some of the kind and hospitable people of the neighbourhood, or perhaps another party who followed from the village. The ladies vied in preparing the fine fish as a dish called the "fish-soup," and in other modes; and the large harder or mullet was roasted on pointed sticks by the fire;—this was the "spit-fish." Sometimes the party succeeded in finding a few oysters for their pastor, and thus many a happy day was spent. With what anxiety, and I may almost say sleepless hours in the night, was the morning of such days expected. I fancy I see the party preparing, and their enjoyment. The distance admitted returning in the evening to our homes.

Sometimes we visited the well-known place Zandvliet, and were there received by the owner, Mr. Rudolph Cloete, with great hospitality. The strand of Zwartklip was near, and I have there seen in one haul upwards of three hundred large fish (steenbrassen) caught and

drawn on shore. On that estate, at present the property of Mr. Pieter Laurens Cloete, was a large lake (now drained and converted into a fine, productive corn-field) abounding with waterfowl; and I recollect, with some degree of pleasure now, the excursion in a boat thereon in pursuit of the wild-ducks, which afforded good sport.

The owners of places in the neighbourhood of the village used to send, occasionally, their wagons for our family to spend the day with them; and we returned towards evening, after experiencing great civility and enjoying their hospitality,—frequently well supplied with vegetables and fruits, and other items which the liberality of these kind people afforded for the comfort of the household.

The Eerste River supplied an abundance of small fish, namely, the carp, and a beautiful white silvery fish with red-tinted fins; and many an afternoon the children and their little companions were entertained by fishing, and well supplied with necessities, and attended sometimes by my cheerful parent. The river also produced eels, rarely caught, however, with the hook, and only during night time in deep places by some one who had sufficient patience to watch.

Among the kind neighbours was Mr. Hendrik Cloete, sen., the ancestor of the numerous family now residing about Cape Town, at Constantia, and different places in the colony. This gentleman was, when I knew him, proprietor of that fine estate Nooitgedacht, about six miles from the village, being a large wine-farm, with extensive woods of fir trees, which that enterprising agriculturist had planted in his younger days;

they were the only woods in the district. He possessed about one hundred slaves, and enjoyed every comfort attainable in the country. He had his sportsmen supplying the table with game and fish, a large poultry-yard and pigeon-house, a box with eels, kept alive by being placed under a little running stream. He was then a widower; and but one son, Mr. Johan Gerhard Cloete, a bachelor, lived with him. Often was he visited by my father, who took me with him, and his kindness and hospitality were great. In person he commanded respect, was peculiar in manner, and was considered one of the wealthiest residents in that part of the country. Though of grave appearance, he was not averse to amusement, and enjoyed a joke.

A large baboon tied to a pole beside the house used to engage my attention. It was mischievous, and once took a crawling child (one of the slaves), to the top of his pole, about eighteen or twenty feet high. The state and anxiety of the mother during the time the animal held the poor infant, struck me forcibly. However, by coaxing him with fruit, he was induced to come down gently, holding the child, which was safely rescued out of his grasp.

I hope now to have given some idea, though imperfectly, of the state of our village society and inhabitants whilst I lived amongst them; and will proceed to close this section by attempting to describe, in two sketches, *Morning* and *Evening* scenes in the days of my youth, for the edification of my young countrymen, drawn partly from fact and reality, and in doing so copy two of my literary productions written originally in Dutch in 1838.

## A MORNING IN THE DAYS OF YOUTH.

“In the vast extent of this extreme point in the southern part of the world, is a fruitful valley, situated between high and steep hills. It is watered by a brook, abundant in clear and pure water, and is destined by nature as a charming and agreeable receptacle for man.

“On this spot is a village regularly laid out, showing the taste and order of the founders; the oak of a hundred years stands there in full growth and foliage. The commander who selected the situation was a man noted in history as uncommonly well acquainted with the country; and upwards of one hundred and fifty years before this, the corner-stone was laid of this the first of the South African villages and inland towns. Thanks to his choice!

“In plainness and simplicity, this village showed its beauty for more than a century; it afforded an agreeable excursion to the stranger who visited our shores. Hospitality, that sister of Sociality, resided there, and offered amiably her unadorned flowers. But about fifty-five years ago, a fire which raged destructively in its streets, deprived most of the stately oaks of their beauty, and many a peaceful family of its home; and thus the beautiful *original* vanished. The axe speedily cut both tree and branch to the ground, the trunk was rooted out of the attached soil, and the plain buildings and their ruins were levelled, and replaced by others of more modern architecture.

“In the days when formalities were unknown in the village (tradition says), it appeared as one family home; the villagers were known amongst themselves from childhood; virtues and vices were speedily exposed,

and either praised or unceremoniously condemned. The voice and opinion of the seniors decided the differences in the village, by good and sound sense; and the judgment of these plain and honest men was all decisive, and friendly and indulgent feeling paved the way to mutual good understanding. Reciprocal support in distress and want was the pleasing and useful fruit of such proceedings, and it has been stated that scarcely a person, failing in the honest pursuit of livelihood, was known to have held his hand out for assistance and succour without meeting with compassion. Distress could not be seen without a fellow-feeling.

“Rather more than half a century ago, it was the lot of a faithful labourer in the vineyard of the Lord to be appointed as pastor in that village. His description in later days of the pleasing intercourse and happy state of the villagers, when he took charge of his Cure, often raised in those who listened to his narratives a wish that such days could return; his plain but sincere doctrine,—his friendly and social disposition,—contributed, whilst in possession of health and vigour, much to spread happiness, and charmed the greater part of his flock. They listened on such occasions to him, whilst he riveted their attention with pleasure and delight.

“He instructed in the most simple mode, and taught the first duties owing by man to God and his fellow-creatures. He was faithful to his Great Master; and his doctrines and his labours were signally rewarded by acknowledgment and gratitude, after a continuous service of forty years. When—under age and infirmity—this feeling continued, and after departure, he and his were kindly kept in remembrance.

“In the family of this man, Love and Contentment had taken their abode, and domestic blessings followed his labours; and amongst the mercies for which he often offered thanks to his Heavenly Father, were those of having an amiable and faithful partner in life and a numerous family.

“In advanced years he observed (in order to dispel unnecessary care for the future and to raise confidence), the blessings which he received and could enumerate at the birth of every child; and in referring to them, found cause to be grateful. He had kept in mind that great promise: ‘The Lord will provide.’ His fate he thus considered, compared to others, blessed above thousands; and, in conclusion, he was in the habit of confiding his cares and anxieties to Him who in His providence provided so amply for the children of men, and even the smallest insect.

“By his hand walked a lad, the pleasure and hope of his life. The formation of his mind and heart was his delight: and by unfolding to him in proper time the book of Nature, he guided, already early, his heart to principles of reverence and to the origin of the creation, and exhibited the wonderful beauty and texture which even in an apparent insignificant flower, by microscopic examination, and in a grain of sand and dust with its scarcely visible inhabitants, could be detected; and thence he gently directed his thoughts and raised them to Him who governs and maintains the whole, and usually closed by eliciting a feeling of gratitude for being ranked amongst the reasonable beings capable to conceive and admire such wonders and beauties, so as to give cause for thanks and glory.

“ In one of these beautiful summer mornings which in this southern country and moderate climate dawn so brilliantly,—(when the heavens with clear azure, and the stars with double lustre appear),—the heart of this parent, moved thus early full of hope for his favourite, quietly left the side of his partner, approached the bed of his young disciple, and addressed him with an affectionate voice, such as we may fancy a patriarch formerly called out to his son:—“ Follow me.” It was to tender to the Lord an offering of love and gratitude, but in a mode less symbolical.

“ By a road and walk which had been made, according to our fancy, in a garden planted with the best fruit trees, and showing a productive vineyard, the lad was conducted by the hand of his father to a shaded grove situated on the banks of a clear brook ; and a place was chosen in a simple bower (which but shortly before had been constructed from branches of a beautiful oak standing near and bent) and some sods formed the seat on this occasion.

“ The surrounding hills showed grandly from that spot, their shadows covered the darkness of the valleys and compared to the counterpart of the firmament, the heart was touched by that production of the Almighty, which separates *Light* from *Darkness*; and then he spoke nearly thus: ‘ My son, as great as is the difference between light and darkness, so great is also that between virtue and vice. The virtuous walk as the stars move on an even surface in the glance of God’s light,—stately,—majestically,—orderly,—shining here and hereafter in eternity ; the vicious are obliged to sink as the darkness of these valleys, the light of Truth will efface their works ;



obliged to choose the dark walks they run the risk of losing the right course,—they are entangled betwixt thorns and thistles, and ultimately nothing but holes and caves will give them shelter. In futurity they gaze on similar gloomy and dark prospects, and in vain shall they, thus straying, invoke the aid and consolation of men. Choose thus early the path of virtue, and whatever shadows may gather over you, your fate in life will be as that of the stars in the firmament, you will rise and set with lustre ; yea even beclouded, the brightness of your nature will not change.’

“ Under these or similar conversations the morning star rose from behind the summits of the hills, and more brilliant in appearance than the others, it engaged the attention of the gentle instructor, and he proceeded thus : ‘ As that star rises there (so superior in light and so striking in lustre) is to you and me, thus was it once with the shepherds in the fields of Palestine, and thus it is at the present day for the herdsmen of this vast extensive country ; it announces to those expecting light the approaching dawn of morning, and makes their hearts happy in the prospect of relief. The Almighty finger, which marked its course from the commencement of creation in remote ages, keeps that brilliant star still in its track and balance ; and many a shepherd, perhaps, raises already his morning hymn of thanksgiving and praise. Come, let us also raise a morning song to the glory of Him who created this beautiful globe.’ And having sounded a flute, as it were, to prepare the voice, that beautiful German hymn, ‘*Wie schön leuchtet uns der Morgenstern,*’ was sung, with a feeling and melody better felt than described. ‘ This, my son, is the hymn

which a virtuous poet left to his countrymen ; would to God ! that it were raised every morning in this your, by nature, highly favoured native country ; how happily would then the husbandman and his household commence the tilling of the ground, and, however laborious it might be, obtain his bread by the sweat of his brow, under the impression of a well-regulated mind and heart, and the day of toil close with content ; how happy and sweet would be the hour of retirement, and the cheering rest of night be courted. Accustom yourself now in the days of youth to these and similar morning devotions, and abide thus calmly for the blessing of the Lord on your daily course.’

“ Now opened more and more the dawn of morning, as the tips of the hills were tinted with light, and the soft murmur of the running brook attracted the attention of the good man, when he resumed : ‘ As quietly as the little stream glides away, so gently and undisturbed run the early years of youth ; and as the winter season changes this quiet emblem in its appearance, so you will learn that the stream of life does not always run smoothly, for even in the spring season thereof we are exposed to its effects. And when winter approaches then you will be taught also that the course of your life’s stream shall be changed. You witnessed, last winter, how this brook rose over its banks,—how the stones, lying so quietly there, knocked against each other and, as it were, even imitated the thunder by their rolling,—how trees with their roots upwards drove on the surface,—and how the Almighty has kindly restored the scene into the gentle and soft one of this day. His power sent the heavy rain, and caused fountains to rise abun-

dantly,—but He also withdrew this evidence of His providence according to His will and pleasure. When, in the course of your life you observe the scenes change, bring to mind this moment, and be prepared in your soul; and should days of prosperity and happiness be your share, then be thankful and enjoy them in contentment; but if your stream be troubled, think of the resemblance which this quiet gliding brook teaches, and rest in humble expectation that the storm will cease. Enjoy yourself innocently in the days when cares are unknown (as the little fish you see there swimming so peacefully), with whatever may be allotted to your share of comfort, in the circle around you; but keep in mind, as a creature destined for a higher sphere, that you have not received existence for temporal enjoyment only, and, under the uncertainty of its fleeting, prepare yourself quietly for a winter day, and seek timely a refuge which may in stormy weather afford a safe asylum. After the close of the period of early life you will imperceptibly be drawn to the world's ocean, and your relative position there will be the same as this brook stands to the great receptacle of the sea. You will then have to steer your bark of life with knowledge and prudence; whilst it proceeds undisturbed and light winds touch your sails, so long shall you prosperously and pleasantly pursue your voyage. But receive in kindness my warning; you will soon detect the weakness of your limited powers and inexperience when the gales and storms shall beat and shake your vessel; knowing this, choose in time that Pilot for your safety who will preserve and teach you to find the true course, and never forsake or frustrate the hope of the humble but confident mortal. Consult the

compass which He has supplied, and you will be able to conquer the effect of the winds and avoid the blind rocks, and to meet the tempest with steadiness, and know how to brave adversity. As an anchor of safety He will be as your father and protector in the moment of danger, yea, even in peril of death, be on board to preserve you; and trusting to Him, though all may be dark about you, a light will rise in obscurity, and your oppressed mind confidently fixed, shall, even as these valleys before us, seem brightened by a clear and blessed morning.'

"Ultimately the sun burst forth his first beams of light, and, as a brightening nourisher, enlivened the scene of nature; the birds of the wood sang in cheerful chorus, or chirped, as if welcoming the monarch of day, and all around us assumed a bright aspect. The sunshine enlivened nature around us; and thoughts and exultation of the mind were drawn towards Him! who, as the great luminary of the world, first rose and appeared to the Bethlehemite.

" 'Thus, my son,' continued the parent, 'has also this light appeared for you, greater and more bright than even the sun; his appearance and rising spread beams of heavenly light on earth. To the mortal who does not close eye and heart to the Truth by Him revealed, He even now brings fertility, and ripens sweet fruits to be relished by the soul. So visible as this great light is to the eye, so shining will also be the rays of the Sun of Righteousness and Blessing, enlivening the whole universe and creating true faith on earth, and warm the soul of the true Christian to gratitude, love, and praise.

“ ‘ Let, then, every rising sun remind you of His love in the redemption of Man, and endeavour to close each day by its setting peaceful with God and your fellow-sojourners on earth, readily forgiving the same as you hope once to receive mercy and pardon at the hands of your Father in heaven.

“ ‘ This Sun of Righteousness, according to Heaven’s fixed decree, did once set here on earth; and for the salvation of the sons and daughters of the dust, this setting was apparently involved in sombre clouds, and although, as yet, to the mortal eye, personally veiled, He is and remains as His emblem before us, in never-ceasing existence, and shall, as sure as this morning, again appear, for the comfort and consolation of his true followers and children, who, either in prosperity or adversity, have lived under that happy expectation on earth, and who have unshakingly relied upon His promise and merits. His doctrine, my child, (which I hope to disclose more and more to you, as your mental faculties increase), will, I trust, remain with you as a light to your path and a lamp to your feet, until your thread of life shall run out; and we once meet in the House of many habitations with your and my Father! the great Creator of yonder splendid rising sun,—I pray and trust, to our eternal happiness.’

“ These were nearly in substance, the morning lessons with which a beautiful day commenced; the movements of the villagers were heard, and the lad returned to the parental home and family with his venerated father.

“ He was presented to the mother, who bestowed the morning kiss with natural affection, and, when she learned what had passed, recommended with a happy

smile that the lessons might be never forgotten ; and I have no doubt a silent prayer to that effect accompanied her wishes."

The above is a collection of lessons retained and imparted for the edification of my young countrymen and friends. Paternal love dictated them, and they are calculated to raise a friendly feeling between parent and child, and to establish early religious principles,—to make room for that want of feeling which measures distance between parent and child, so that fear (instead of cordial affection and true filial love) is fostered, and that it may lead to prevent punishment and consider such extreme as a discord (a note false and disturbing the harmony of a connection more pure and noble than any others), a relation which seems to have been united by the Creator with a chord in which his attribute of Love is interwoven with Wisdom, one in which attachment and natural inclination move the strings, and sound judgment vibrates the tone, and which prepares the heart of the offspring for dutiful and affectionate impressions.

The paternal lessons and advice imparted, and from time to time repeated and improved, left a deep sense of their importance in the mind of the lad. Advancing in life he estimated the value thereof more and more, and offered sincere thanks in silence, and sometimes with tears of gratitude, for the principles thus imparted ; and even when the aged parent had departed, the wish was humbly entertained that he might be once again united with those who bore him so much love on earth, and be favoured with the continuation of heavenly communications in the higher spheres of eternal bliss.

And now I will close with the promised sketch of an  
 EVENING IN THE DAYS OF YOUTH,  
 also drawn partly from fact and reality.

“The lad had now closed his fifteenth year under the guidance of his parent, and had reached the evening of the last day; and the following morning would entitle him to be a burgher (citizen) of his native country, and to be inscribed as such on the rolls of the colony; his name was to be mentioned amongst those who could be called upon for the service of the State, and enlisted in the militia bodies destined for the protection and defence of home and hearth.

“This transition was of too much consequence to be passed unnoticed; different motives of action, duties of more importance stood now in connection with his age, and to leave the young man unacquainted with these? no! such could not be the case under the feelings of paternal duty.

“It was one of those fine winter evenings of July, closing the agreeable winter-day, which can scarcely be excelled in other parts of the world. Countrymen! you have certainly, as I did, seen many such in South Africa, not as in the northern countries the ground covered with snow and under a white cloth concealing the beautiful plants and productions, and as if dormant awaiting the rays of the sun of an approaching and sometimes far distant spring,—no! Our winter produces in time the most beautiful flowers, the fields are covered therewith, and show themselves in their loveliest attire. It was when the tops of the hills surrounding the village were dotted with the pure white of snow, and the blue rocks were breaking through that stern and uniform

aspect, when even then, near these points wholesome herbs are growing, and flowers in diversity of shape and colour are found on the slope of those hills, forming a beautiful tapestry such as would delight the eye of those acquainted with Botany and feelings for the production of nature, and enrapture the lover of fine beauty, and eclipse those produced by the cleverest artists.

“ I thought, Oh southern country ! however sometimes underrated, were you to be viewed without prejudice, how many happy days might be spent on your soil by those who possess a heart and mind in peace with God and Man ; for how many who elsewhere toil for their daily bread with care, could a home and refuge be found here. Yes, even an abundant magazine of the necessaries of life. Happy country ! in which hitherto the extremes of riches and poverty are unknown. Your moderate climate has already been beneficial to so many health-suffering strangers. Your relief and refreshments are not difficult to be obtained by the contented, and are sufficient to the demand ; how many a visitor from the East, suffering under the effects of climate, a hot sun, and care, did you not send back with a stock of health, of greater value than could be obtained for gold or silver ? and liberally were they provided from your productive soil. Oh Fatherland ! small and insignificant as yet compared to other states, your citizenship shall soon be highly estimated and the ground truly valued by which the grand Creator so abundantly rewards the diligent searcher and labourer. Your kind hospitality, Africans, so well known, shall, as before, find means to offer your plain but plentiful dish with cordiality,—you are justly praised for this excellent quality.



“But I find that feelings of the heart are carrying me imperceptibly from the course I had contemplated ; but who can mention, without sensation, the spot upon which the mother’s hand first rocked the cradle, and where paternal love spread the mat for crawling, and the nurse’s plain lullabies were heard for his first and sweet slumbers ? Who can be so unfeeling ?

“I consequently return to the home where contentment once dwelt. It was when the day had declined and the evening star appeared, and her course was observed from the garden of “*La Gratitude*,” until in the west it seemed to sink below the horizon and out of view ; eminent in lustre to the other stars it could not fail to attract the attention of father and son ; agreeable instructions were given and received, observations were made with reference to its rapid course, until after a pleasant walk the parental dwelling was entered, in which the family was gathered by the fireside, and soon was the cold forgotten, which in winter nights sometimes produced ice, and we were in the habit of collecting it out of the large cabbage leaves.

“The sacrifice of a feeling and religious heart was now lighted on the family altar ; that Word by which the will of the Supreme for time and eternity is prescribed was explained, and the head of the family expounded it in a plain and intelligible manner, brief and to the point, such as was calculated to meet the comprehension of those belonging to the family circle ; and with Gellert’s beautiful German hymn, “*Für alle gute sey gepreist*,” translated by the leader in Dutch, accompanied by the pianoforte, this impressive home solemnity closed.

“ Opposite each other sat the parental couple, sometimes with pleasing smiles looking at the circle of children around them, then again diverting themselves by conversation and becoming jocular remarks, and thus shortening the rest of the evening; reflections on days gone by,—cares, and the happiness which their first-born had created,—the welcome kiss he received, and how as helpless his first sounds had struck their ear and heart. Yea, methinks, seeing the change of significant impressions on their countenances, it expressed feelings of gratitude for the past and confidence for the future.

“ The father’s address was then nearly thus: ‘ My son! until now you have been spared and favoured above many of your fellow-companions. You are on the point of saying farewell to the days of boyhood and to enter those of the young man. Duties of great importance may await you with regard to your temporal, and certainly eternal, existence. With one wrong step the ground may be laid for irreparable injury, and you may be lost for ever. O! let me beseech you to guard with trembling, the first step, it is so easily followed up by the second and third, and therewith the approaching ruin is completed.

“ ‘ My object, however, is not to make you enter with a dark prospect, or mind disturbed with anxiety and care, upon the world’s stage; no,—you may gather sweet flowers and fruits and enjoyments such as many a youth before you has innocently obtained. My aim is only that you direct your course according to that Word and those Precepts which couple real happiness with virtue.

“ ‘One evening will be too short to impart all my heart dictates ; from time to time, either in this house or in the temple dedicated to the service of the Supreme, or in that which did not receive existence by the hand of men ;—yes, wherever it may suit, I hope to teach you the duties owing to your God, your fellow-creatures, and your countrymen. To treat on each of these will be to me an agreeable task, and I will prepare you to perform that which belongs to a useful man and a good citizen ; so that you may depart from hence prepared for your position in life, and (should it please God to accept my wishes) for that of an inhabitant of heaven. Extensive I feel is the task comprehended in these words ; but this shall not discourage me, nor ought it to affect your determination to follow my precepts ; remember that the prize is only gained by him who perseveringly walks to the end in the course of *duty*.’

“ And this was followed by an evening hymn, composed by the parent in Dutch, in an hour of retirement ; it contained sixteen verses. And with reference to them he closed thus : ‘ Endeavour, my child, to be early conversant with such thoughts ; they convey prayer and thanksgiving, and confidence that you will be watched even when sleeping ; and when the last evening draws near, and you are on the point of slumbering for the long night, to rest from your works on earth, your dying bed shall be soft, and you will rest on the down-bed of the Christian. Your pillow shall be without thorns, and your bedstead shall not be shaken by the anxieties of a wounded conscience. Thus, though helpless in the body, you will enter into the rest of a child of heaven until the lovely and merciful voice will call you to rise,

and the morning dawn of that day which shall never see gloom or darkness and last for ever and ever.' And these lessons were gratefully received by the son, who in after-life enjoyed their beneficial results."

And now I will take leave of Stellenbosch, where I left my parents, family, and friends so happily situated, in order to commence my public career in the beginning of 1803, in the capital of the Colony, to be engaged in the more busy and turbulent scenes of town, and employed in duties of more importance to my native country.

I fancy now the farewell of the dear village with all its beautiful scenery and productive grounds,—the kind-hearted and good villagers amongst whom I spent so many happy days,—the farewell to the home of homes,—dear and beloved parents,—relations,—and kind friends,—with the wish that a blessing might be their lasting share. And with feelings like these I parted.

## SECTION IX.

PREPARING myself to become a professional man, the medical line—for which I had contracted a taste under Doctor Somerville, by being taught to bleed and pierce the ears of the young ladies at Orange River for earrings, and having accompanied sometimes one of our village practitioners in his visits—was the one I should have preferred. Correspondence had already passed, and to the University of Groningen, where I had some relatives, it was contemplated by my father that I should proceed.

But it so happened that the President of the Batavian Court of Justice, a Mr. Strubberg, seemed to recognize my father as one of his fellow-students, and hence arose between them an intimacy which gave rise to my employment; that gentleman, understanding the financial difficulties under which the parent laboured in regard to my future destiny, handsomely offered his patronage, and in the beginning of 1803 a note from him communicated my appointment as amanuensis to a mixed court of members of the Court of Policy and Justice. Mr. Daniel Denyssen, afterwards H. M. Attorney-General of the colony, was then Acting Secretary, and when the Court of Justice was established I was appointed as clerk to their secretary's office, in March, 1803.

The Batavian Court of Justice consisted of six members and a president, all graduated in law, appointed in Holland. They succeeded the old court under the British, and their records and the access I had to those of the former court and the duties attached to the office

gave me great insight into the principles of law proceedings, which up to that period were foreign to me ; and studying their practice and mode of procedure, I became gradually acquainted with authors in law, and laid the groundwork for a colonial lawyer.

Were I to communicate the mode of procedure and collect a code of cases of celebrity under the administration of justice in those days, my pages would swell above the limits of a memoir ; perhaps I may be induced, should it please God to spare me, to make a separate miscellaneous collection.

One of the first documents copied by me was the Act of Amnesty to the farmers of Graaff-Reinet, who were then confined for rebellion in the castle, and under sentence. My duties consisted generally in copying the resolutions of the Court ; and as in those days scarcely any public pleadings but the illiquid cases were conducted in writing and the copies thereof made in the secretary's office for the practitioners, I had the opportunity of reading them, and thus to extend my legal information.

Gradually I rose in the office up to the first-class of clerks. I was sometimes employed by the secretaries as confidential clerk, and by them recommended to the Governor, General Janssens ; and in His Excellency's office also I did duty to January, 1806, when the Cape was captured by the British Forces.

As civil servant, however, I was not exempted from burgher or militia duty. Amongst others, two companies under white and blue colours, and one of cavalry, were formed in Cape Town. In the white it was my turn to be appointed as an ensign. On the day when the colours were to be distributed, we were marched up to

Government House, and there I received my colours from the hands of the eldest daughter of General Janssens, presented with a pleasing smile and courtesy, with a recommendation to protect them, which I returned with a deep bow and salute, whilst music was playing the national air and a *feu de joie* fired; and in the evening of that day I was introduced, for the first time in my life, to a ball at Government House, to which all the burghers' officers were invited, and we appeared in uniform. My captain was Mr. Coenraad Johannes Gie; of the blue company was Mr. Andries Brink (feathers in the hats and colours distinguishing them), and of the cavalry, Mr. Johannes Tobias Jurgens was the "Retmeester." The duties were, occasionally mounting guard, exercising on the parade or at Green Point; and to mine were added those of secretary to a board of burgher discipline, appointed to try certain cases of transgression of the rules of organization, and other petty offences falling within its jurisdiction. Some of the sentences could not, however, be carried into execution before the secretary had presented a minute of proceedings to the Governor and Commander-in-Chief, and obtained his *fiat*.

My uniform was a blue coat with facings, the lower parts turned up into a point with a hook-and-eye, a pair of silver half-epaulettes, plated buttons, a white feather, a round hat, silver-mounted small sword, with half boots, and white trowsers and waistcoat.

When the troops had marched, in 1806, to meet the British, at Blaauw Berg (blue mountain), on the opposite side of the bay, the two companies (white and blue), and part of the cavalry were left in charge of

the town. The last guard mounted in the Castle was of my company; when relieved by the English, they marched out and deposited their arms and colours in the Town-house.

When the battle was fought I could see it plainly from the top of the Town-house, and with a spy-glass distinguish the firing, and, after an hour or so, one of the parties retiring from the plains between Blaauwberg and Rietvalley to Tygerberg, our company was then under orders to be ready for marching to the army, but therewith ended my martial occupations.

There was no doubt at the time, that General Jansbert left town to meet the British in the above direction, for the sake of saving it and its inhabitants from attack and bombardment, and thus was actuated by humane principles.

Upon my arrival in town, in 1803, the house of my kind grandmother (the widow of Mr. P. J. de Wet), was my home; her kindness and love towards me cannot be forgotten: she died in February, 1806. I had breakfasted with her as usual at a small table, where she was in the habit of sitting, and within an hour after, I was called from the office, and found that on the spot where I had left her, she had been seized with an apoplectic fit which terminated her useful but (in latter days) care-embarrassed life. This sudden death deprived me of a kind relative and a comfortable home. Since then I took rooms with an aunt, Miss Johanna Alberta de Wit, and dined daily with my uncle, Mr. Jacobus Christoffel de Wit, and his amiable wife, formerly Miss Maria Brink; no child could have been treated with more care and kindness than I was by



these good relatives : honoured and revered be their memories.

I will now proceed, and endeavour to show the mode of life in town. The Keyzers and Heerengracht (now Adderley and Darling-streets) were the residences of the high functionaries and most respectable families in our society. The appearance was very different to the shops which now occupy nearly all the houses in those streets.

In the middle, ran canals, with sluices, along the parade towards the sea, near the jetty. The water was allowed to stand until it reached the top of the sluices and then carried off once or twice a week, and thus were the canals kept clean. On the side opposite the front door of several of the houses were neat seats and bowers, and there (wind and weather permitting) it was not unusual to see the families enjoying themselves in the afternoon ; the gentlemen with their pipes, the ladies by taking tea, cakes, and sweetmeats ; and persons known and passing by were invited to join ; and thus were either walking or evening parties and an unceremonial acquaintance formed and maintained.

Society was usually kept up by evening parties. Small circles of six or eight families were alternately formed, and assembled in turn at their houses. They were either invited or it was ascertained in the morning whether reception would be convenient or acceptable. In some of these meetings the gentlemen used to amuse themselves by smoking or playing a game of *l'ombre* or *quadrille* (the favoured games in those days), whilst enjoying some refreshing beverage ; others by a conversation on the news of the day, or as received from

Europe, and other topics ; whilst the ladies in a separate room were pleasantly engaged by fancy and other ladies' work ; or by passing their time in those conversations in which the fair sex so happily know how to amuse themselves. If the children were of sufficient age they accompanied the parents, so as not to be left among the slaves and domestics ; and they were allowed to amuse themselves by some innocent game, or with dancing. At nine o'clock, when the Castle gun fired, the lanthorn and sedan chair bearers were assembled at the door, or in the front hall. There was then a general rise, and after bidding a cordial good night, the companies separated ; except sometimes on birthdays, or other gala days, when the guests were invited to stay and partake of a good substantial hot supper. Early dinners on such days were also not unusual.

In most families early rising was customary ; and after taking coffee, and dressing, each turned to their various avocations. In those days it was not unusual to see the hairdresser, clad in white, trotting with his long white hairpowder bag, and the German barber powdered and neatly dressed, with his black velvet bag going from house to house to serve and decorate his customers. The long tails then worn by the gentlemen rendered the assistance of the hairdresser indispensable. One of these, by name *Canterbury*, was particularly noted for telling the news of the day, with such additions and colouring as some of the droll or sarcastic employers used to supply him, and vain of the intrusted secrets he did not fail to circulate them faithfully as received. Hence the strangest news was spread ; and tales increased until his stories became so incredible and

doubtful, that proverbially they received the reply of *Oh! that is a Canterbury*. But at all events he was a curious and amusing character at the time.

The day was usually thus divided:—after breakfast the functionaries went to their offices (this was between eight and nine o'clock), those on business had perhaps already commenced with day-break. From eleven to twelve there was a pause; and either the Society-house frequented or morning calls given or received. In several houses bitters (*amara* and others) were presented, mixed with sweet and other wines and taken as stomachics and to sharpen the appetite. From twelve to one or two o'clock was the general dinner hour; three was the most fashionable, and after the early one, an hour's retirement or repose was enjoyed (why should not the early rising be an apology?). The most respectable and fashionable, after that, used to dress for either a drive in the country or a walk to the gardens, or to be prepared for evening society. Young people had access (and found pleasant amusement and recreation if considered acceptable companions by proper behaviour and conduct), to these family circles; and as each one was known from childhood, this familiar mode of conversation gave the whole community the character of one family, and a stranger, if considered respectable, required but a slight introduction to be admitted.

The proprietors of estates at Rondebosch, Brewery, Newlands, Wynberg, Constantias, and Gardens above the Town were always prepared to receive the afternoon visitors, and entertained them with real and social hospitality. Their mode of showing it was not

expensive, and their guests did not expect it, and thus their visits were always welcome. In the Government Garden there was an alcove of oak-trees (to the left of the garden, front of Government House) at least one hundred feet in length and thirty broad, covered and shaded by the leaves and branches known by the name of *Kolfbaan*. There were several seats provided, and the families resorting to it were generally well dressed, and occasionally met by the Governor, his lady, and family, or by the inmates of Government House and strangers; and thus existed an agreeable intercourse between the visiting parties.

At the top of Government Gardens there was no outlet as at present; the Paddock and College and other adjoining buildings formed one square, walled in. And several species of wild animals (such as the deer, ostriches, large tortoises, &c.,) were in an open space, whilst the more various ones (such as lions, tigers, wolves, jackals, &c.) were kept in separate dens (where the college stands now) for public show; and where the middle walk terminated facing a large gate.

The square to the right of that walk above the present Botanic Garden was tastefully laid out and supplied with various bulbs, plants, and heaths, during the government of General Janssens. A member of the Court of Policy, a Mr. de Salis, took a particular fancy to direct the cultivation and improvements; and a Mr. Thibault, a Frenchman and civil engineer (a gentleman of excellent taste), made the plan, and laid it out; a small serpentine stream, with fanciful bridges, ran through the grounds, to which was added a *labyrinth* of small oak trees.

Some of the myrtle hedges along the middle walk, were from six to eight feet high.

In those days there were scarcely any balls; amateur concerts and plays constituted chiefly the public amusement. The most respectable members of society joined. Even the President of the Court of Justice assisted at the concerts in playing a bass, so large that he was obliged to stand during the performance.

The plan was, to form the subscribers into a club. Each member was obliged, if called upon, to join, so that those who were capable and took an active part were not subject to hissing or censure. For whoever thus disturbed the company was sure to receive a ticket and programme to join the next performance, and hence much ill-feeling and unpleasant remarks were avoided.

The terms were made so reasonable that I attended six interesting performances during a winter for fifteen shillings; and concerts were even less. The public theatre (now St. Stephen's Church, in Hottentot or Riebeek-square) was hired for the purpose. That theatre was held by different shareholders.

The military officers mixed frequently with the inhabitants, and, having no mess, lived with the families as members, and thus became familiar acquaintances.

The gentlemen in town had, besides private associations, a rendezvous at a Society-house named *The Harmony*, in the Heerengracht (now Adderley-street), in the house and store now occupied by the Messrs. Borradaile, Thompson, Hall, & Co., where the amusements were: reading, billiards, and cards. And some members occupied a room set apart for conversing, smoking, and the reading of newspapers. Dinners also could be

ordered at a very moderate rate; whilst every sort of beverage was supplied when required.

This society originated in some of the principal functionaries, merchants, and others of the respectable part of the community, purchasing the house and becoming shareholders, admitting to their number those who were duly proposed. And after a certain number of days' notification of their names, were ballotted for, and thus admitted, by paying an entrance fee, I think of £1 17s. 6d., and monthly contributions of four shillings and sixpence. Strangers were also admitted when properly introduced. Some of them were officers of the first rank, both of the Army and Navy; the whole formed an interesting club. It was a great favour to a young man to gain admittance, and required special recommendation. My good superior (Mr. Secretary Beelaarts van Blokland) obtained for me a membership; and my contact with strangers and distinguished members of the society was very instructive, and has been useful to me in after life. It confined itself to a limited number.

The mode of living, generally speaking, was domestic and private. Whether it were the sober habits, or the moderate and low prices of the necessities of life, or the cheap labour when slavery existed, or the economical principles adopted, I will not venture to determine, but certain it is, that with few exceptions there was an appearance of comfort and ease amongst the inhabitants, and visible contentment.

On the Sabbath most of the families in Cape Town regularly attended church. Their attire was decent and respectable. There were morning and afternoon ser-

vices in the Dutch Reformed, and forenoon in the Lutheran Church, and also regular services amongst the Roman Catholics, mostly of the military in the Batavian service.

The mode of service in the Dutch Church I have already described in a former section ; and now I will only add that of the Holy Sacrament, as administered by our ministers. After the sermon, the form prescribed for that part of the service is read from the pulpit, verses from an appropriate psalm or hymn sung, when the minister descends ; having placed himself with his elders, assisted by deacons, at the head of a long table, covered with a fine white cloth, the communicants are invited to join ; when seated, a prayer is offered, the bread broken, and served round on silver plates, and the wine (usually red) passed in silver cups from one communicant to the other, in remembrance of the Saviour's suffering and death. When finished, the minister delivers at each table a short address, alluding to the feelings and duty of Christians, and after a verse has been sung (in which all join) the communicants leave, dropping, in a covered plate, alms for the poor. Thus successively the tables are occupied, until the last member has received the Sacrament ; and after the closing address and benediction have been pronounced, the minister then ascends the pulpit, thanksgiving and prayer are offered, psalms or hymns sung, and the congregation separates. I have seen in Cape Town seven or eight hundred communicants joining on one Sabbath day. Marriages and christenings were only performed in the afternoon. The old Dutch Church in town had inside an imposing appearance from the number of coats of

arms and shields exposed on the walls, belonging to the old and some very noble and patrician families, such as the Van Oudtshoorns and others. It was once the custom to bury in church, and several tombstones carved with arms and inscriptions marked the rank and descent of those whose remains were deposited under them. The Dutch ministers at that time (1805) were the Revs. Serrurier, Fleck, and Manger.

The preservation of the public peace was confided to the Fiscal (Attorney-General), as chief of the police, and the municipal duties to a board (de Raad der Gemeente), appointed by the Governor and elected and proposed by the board.

The Dutch garrison for protection of the colony at that time consisted of:

The 22nd Battalion Infantry, 9 companies;

5th do. of Waldeck, 7 companies;

1 company of Auxiliary Infantry;

1 Battalion Hottentot Light Infantry, 4 companies;

9th Battalion Riflemen (Jagers), 4 companies;

Cape Riflemen, 2 companies;

A Battalion of Artillery, 4 companies;

Auxiliary Artillery, 2 companies;

Malay do., 1 do.

Horse do., 1 do.

Field Train, 1 do.

Light Dragoons, 2 do.

and an institution for Cadets destined as Artillery.

Of the Militia, or Burgher Corps:

2 companies of Infantry;

6 do. Cavalry.



The Government establishment :

The Governor and General-in-Chief.

Court of Policy.

Councillor Consulent.

Court of Justice ; Attorney-General (Procureur-General).

Court of Appeal.

South African School Commission.

Committee to inquire and revise all Administrations.

Chamber of Commerce.

General Grain Committee.

Committee to revise the public registry of debts.

Committee to compose a general Placaat.

Colonial Chamber of Accounts.

Chamber of Insolvent Estates.

Bank of Loans.

A Director of Public Domains, Buildings, Wharf, and Outposts.

A Government Sworn Surveyor.

A Master of the Naval Arsenal (Equipage Master) and Dockyard ; he was also Port Captain and Director of the Signals, &c., &c.

A Capitaine de Port at Simon's Town.

Superintendents and Overseers of Public Property at Saldanha and St. Helena Bays, Mossel and Plettenberg's Bays, Zoetemelk Valley, and Outeniqua Land (now George).

A Receiver-General of Duties and Tithes, Revenue of the Country Districts, Custom-house Duties.

Committee to improve Breeding of Cattle and  
Agriculture.

Committee of Vaccine.

A public Wood Magazine.

Grain Magazine.

Government Press.

Do. Slave Lodge (the building now occupied for Public Offices).

The Town Establishment :

A Burgher Senate.

Commissioners of Matrimonial and Petty Cases.

Wardmasters (51).

A Board of Fire-wardens.

Vendue Master.

Schools :

1 Latin.

1 French.

1 for young Ladies.

9 ordinary (Dutch), and other minor offices.

The Country Districts numbered six, namely :

Stellenbosch,

Swellendam,

Graaff-Reinet.

Uitenhage,

Tulbagh, under Landdrosts assisted by Heemraden.

The district of Stellenbosch was so extensive that it comprised fifty field-corneteies.

By noting the above I have attempted to give an outline of the state of our society and its government between 1803 and 1806.

I shall now continue to mention some events which, I think, already have long escaped recollection, but might be read with some interest.

In January, 1803 (just on the eve of the colony being returned to the Dutch), some ill-disposed persons broke the signal-box on the Lion's Rump, and exposed, during the night, the signals for a fleet. This created much alarm (as both the garrisons of English and Dutch were in a state of suspense as to the future government), and the Governor offered a premium of rds. 500—then about £100—to detect the perpetrators.

On Saturday, the 19th February, 1803, an English frigate, *Concorde*, arrived with despatches relieving the Governors of their state of uncertainty regarding the government of the Settlement ; and on Sunday, the 20th, in the evening, the Batavian troops marched into the Castle and mounted the guards. On Monday, the 21st, the standard Batavian flag was hoisted at 8 o'clock a.m. on the Castle ramparts. The Castle, Dutch frigate *Speon*, and the English Admiral's ship saluted, and the salutes were returned from the Castle. On that day General Janssens gave a large dinner, at which Lieut.-General Dundas and several officers of his staff and many Dutch officers attended.

On the 1st of March following a solemn day of thanksgiving for peace and the restoration of the Cape to the Dutch was ordered ; and the new Governor and Courts of Policy and Justice were publicly installed. I witnessed the scene, and it was conducted with much solemnity and decorum.

On that day the Commissary-General, in a proclamation, published his views with regard to the future administration of the colony. A charter was promised and a general amnesty granted to all those who had been guilty of political offences against the former

Government ; and the old British court of justice continued until the 1st of April following.

On the 9th of May succeeding, the engaging Hottentots as free servants under printed contracts, in the presence of public authorities, was introduced by proclamation.

The Burgher Senate received from Government in the same month a support of 41,618 guilders (equal each to 1s. 6d. of our money), and a loan of 25,000 guilders to improve the town.

In June Governor Janssens made a tour through the colony, and from his report (which was not altogether favourable regarding the treatment of the natives), the Commissary-General gave his humane views on that subject in a proclamation. He seemed determined to have justice done between the parties, and to support religion and education. This memoir is too limited to give the whole of his sentiments ; but to the friends of humanity this forms an interesting document on our records.

In August General Janssens returned to town. His account of the destruction of property seen on the frontier, and the suffering of the inhabitants by depredations of the natives,—his measures adopted to establish peace,—the mentioning of the good feeling and hospitality of the inhabitants and his Excellency's interest in the general welfare, and recommendation to be united, are worth perusing, as a confession of his principles and an evidence of the interest he entertained for the community intrusted to his care and government.

In the same month the society “Tot nut van 't Algemeen” (*pro bono publico*), still in existence, and origi-

nally founded in Holland in 1784 for the public instruction of all classes, held its first meeting in the Town-house. The chair was taken by Mr. J. A. Vermaak. He explained the object,—namely, the instruction of youth, improvement of agriculture, and the encouragement of arts and sciences. As subjects worth considering were also mentioned, the oil extracted from the palmas Christi, diseases of cattle, improving the breed of sheep for the production of wool, and the introduction of Spanish or merino sheep. Teachers in the Dutch, French, German, and English languages were invited and prizes offered. Several speeches were also made, and the meeting was closed with the verse :

“Dit is dan d’ eerste proef om groeijen, bloeijen, leven  
 Aan konst en wetenschap ook in dit land te geven,  
 Onttrek uw hulp haar niet, bewoners van dit land !  
 Dan ziet gy eens de landbouw bloeijen,  
 Uw kroost en wetenschappen groeijen,  
 Terwyl verlichting hier het onverstand verband.”

Which in substance means:—the first proof shown to afford life and growth to the arts and sciences in this country, addressing and encouraging the inhabitants for support, under the prospect of seeing future agriculture flourish, and the rising generation acquiring the sciences, and banishing ignorance by enlightened pursuits.

In September, 1803, apprehensions were already entertained of peace being disturbed in Europe, and the Burgher Militia was established, the Governor calling upon every sixth man to come forward as a volunteer to be in readiness for the defence of the colony, and if the number was not forthcoming, the difference to be supplied by requisition through the field-cornet.

The Burgher Senate, under authority, also called upon all able men in town and vicinity, between sixteen and thirty-five years, to be formed in a corps and keep themselves in readiness for defence.

The Governor, consistent with the principles of the Batavian Government laid down, stated :

“That every burgher is bound to maintain, support, and protect the peace in the place where he resides, and the security of his fellow-inhabitants.

“That the time and mode of execution of this sacred and honourable duty should be prescribed by the executive power.

“That the young able men should be chosen in preference, and

“That all armed bodies were bound to carry out and obey—without assuming the right to deliberate or determine on orders received.”

I saw also, for the first time, a military execution. Three deserters were shot at Green Point. One belonged to the Jagers, son of a clergyman in Holland. His case attracted particular notice and feeling. It seemed that regretting his enlistment, he entertained a strong desire to return home to his father, but as no discharge under the expected war could be obtained, he resorted unfortunately to repeated desertion. I was particularly struck with his appearance. His coolness when preparing to meet his fate was most remarkable, and generally observed by the spectators. Methinks I see him yet, kneeling on the small heap of white sand, taking off his military cap previous to being blindfolded. The whole garrison marched past the corpse by order of the General, for example's sake.

The rumours of war between the French allies and the English increased in October, and Mr. Commissary-General de Mist addressed, by proclamation, the colonists on the duty of defending the colony in case of an attack. And all parties in the country who had served in the army or navy were ordered to appear before a special committee.

The places "Rustenburg" at Rondebosch and "Paradys" above Newlands, were offered for sale, probably because the treasury required aid.

A declaration of war was issued on the 8th of October, and an impressive appeal made by the General to the soldiers to do their duty.

The Governor (probably from humane feelings and a desire to promote peace and good understanding with the natives) ordered the release of all Kafirs retained in service. Only those who served one year and were inclined to continue were permitted to remain.

In order to increase the strength of the garrison, auxiliary artillery, infantry, and Hottentot corps were raised.

Mr. de Mist proceeded on a tour to the interior, to gain personal knowledge.

In October, 1804, General Janssens published a very feeling and impressive address to the inhabitants (too long to be inserted here in detail) to co-operate in the defence of the colony; and in it a promise was made, that slaves lost in military service should be compensated for.

In December the respective limits of Swellendam, Uitenhage, and Graaff-Reinet were fixed.

A report was received that four Bushmen were killed by a servant, Volson, on the place of Leopold Heuzer.

in Nieuwveld, and a strict inquiry was ordered to be made by the landdrost of Tulbagh. A sacred compliance with the articles of agreement made with the aborigines, and a quiet but rigid watching of the conduct of itinerant butcher servants (who had already caused so much evil and mischief) were recommended to the authorities and inhabitants, as the readiest means to prevent disturbances.

In those days, even, there were ill-disposed persons who could not rest without injuring the most useful of public works, for much damage was done to the pipes and watercourses in town, so that Government offered a reward of rds. 1,000 (£75), for the detection of the perpetrators.

Under the existing declaration of war, all men between sixteen and thirty-five in the city, were ordered to appear at the Town-house to be enlisted in the Burgher or Militia corps.

All British subjects were directed to take their *domicile* at Stellenbosch, under surveillance of the Landdrost, and a committee formed of the Burghers (Capt. Wium) and his First Lieutenant (the Landdrost) presiding, — to superintend and give temporary leave of absence to the well-behaved.

The enemy being expected, caution was given not to attempt to interfere with the means of defence, or to influence the well-disposed to effect the subversion of their principles. Signals were also established as far as Hottentots' Holland, Stellenbosch, and other stations in the vicinity. A wagon pack of 300 wagons, 800 horses, and 2,000 oxen, in teams, were to be furnished within the Hottentots' Holland (now Sir Lowry's) and



Roodesand (Tulbagh) passes, and also wagons in town, and placed under Ritmeester (Captain) Dirk Gysbert van Reenen, of the brewery, near Newlands, under the title of Captain-Wagonmaster-General. Each horse-wagon, when required, was to be forwarded with five muids of barley and two and a half sacks of chaff, and the ox-wagons each with at least two sacks of chaff when ordered. In Swellendam district and beyond Hottentots' Holland, 160 ox-wagons were to be kept ready, each with a span of oxen, leader, and driver. A powder magazine and arsenal were also established at Swellendam.

This shows clearly that the General contemplated, in case of retreat, to occupy the country beyond Hottentots' Holland, and to defend the passes leading to the back country.

Paper currency was increased by 300,000 rds. (about £80,000), for special purposes, namely,

	Rds.
(a) For enabling the inhabitants of Stellenbosch to rebuild their houses destroyed by fire . . . . .	75,000
(b) For building residences for Landdrost and Secretary, and Prisons at Uitenhage and Tulbagh . . . . .	50,000
(c) The Committee to improve Cattle, and other agricultural pursuits . . . . .	25,000
(d) For constructing Granary and Buildings connected with the administration of Justice, particularly Prisons, the latter so as to be more in accordance with principles of humanity . . . . .	150,000

The special hypothec for that increase is mentioned in a proclamation of 3rd October, 1804.

In 1805, the attention of the public was drawn by Government to the plantation of wood, and several modes suggested to encourage it, as a scarcity of firewood was apprehended.

In February, the Commissary-General de Mist published his farewell address, expressive of his feelings regarding the colony and its inhabitants, and recommending obedience and support of Governor Janssens. It seems that the war checked the project he had in view, to extend the trade and general resources of the colony. He felt attached to the country, and expressed his acknowledgment and thanks for the hospitality and kindness of the inhabitants, and especially for that received on his travels, and he recommended them to the protection of the Almighty,—closing with the hope that the administration of the present Governor might long continue so as to promote the interest of the Settlement. Thus departed Mr. de Mist—after having prepared several instructions for public boards and departments, and originating some of our colonial laws. He left on the 25th February, in an American vessel,—conducted to the sea-shore by the Governor and Commander-in-Chief, and his staff, the Court of Policy, and other high functionaries; and proceeded between the lines of the whole garrison and militia corps to the old jetty, near the castle. This I had a good opportunity of seeing, as belonging to the latter corps, and being placed in the lines.

Shortly after, three corporals and twenty men of the Hottentot corps deserted and proceeded towards the

Hottentot and Hanglip mountains; and they were pursued by a party of the burgher corps. When approached they resisted with arms, and five were killed. One burgher was killed, and two others and a slave wounded. It appeared that one of the corporals had formerly deserted whilst in the English service, when General Dundas generously pardoned him. The parents of one of the farmers killed (named Saayman), received for life the use of a loan-place, *gratis*. Also the two wounded and the burghers (Captains Wium, Morkel, Linden, and Human) received each a silver cup, with appropriate inscriptions and their names, for services performed.

Mr. and Mrs. Pahud (parents of the present Governor-General of Java) opened, by memorial, their plan for a public institution of education and instruction for young ladies, and received assurances of government support.

A law was made with regard to *missionaries*—they were only to labour beyond the limits of the colony. With the exception of the Moravians being established at Baviaanskloof (now Genadendal) and Bethelsdorp, certain restrictions were made, and amongst them was one to prevent the farmers being deprived of Hottentots engaged in their service.

Previous to Mr. de Mist's leaving, two sons of Governor Janssens laid—in the presence of their father, the Commissary-General, the Court of Policy, Burgher Senate, and several of the high functionaries,—the corner stone of a building intended for a water reservoir, opposite the place where now stands the Commercial Exchange. I witnessed the ceremony. Mr. de Mist particularly attracted my attention. He was dressed in black velvet,

and had a gold chain suspended over his breast and a medal. He was a man of imposing figure. The building erected upon that spot was a needle of about thirty or forty feet high, based on squares of stone, with four spouts running from the mouths of lions, and was a beautiful specimen of architecture, according to a design of the civil engineer, Thibault. It remained, however, unfinished, and the reservoir never held any water, and was afterwards levelled, after the capture of the colony. The present more serviceable plan of general distribution of water all over the town was since established.

The public paper (*Kaapsche Courant*) made some very appropriate remarks regarding public conveyances by post wagons and carts; and I believe occasioned the first post wagon which was established by the Burgher Senate between Cape Town and Stellenbosch, to run twice a week at six shillings per seat.

Mr. de Mist left, among others, an interesting ordinance for schools. The Governor was the patron, a member of the Court of Policy, the president, the presidents of the Orphan Chamber and Burgher Senate and three ministers were members of the school-commission, assisted by a cashier and secretary.

In April there appears to have been a great scarcity of wheat. The sale of fine flour was prohibited, and fine bread only allowed for the aged and sick; the distribution being in the hands of public authority.

The Governor, anxious to ascertain what could be done to promote the welfare of the colony, had twenty-eight queries distributed amongst the notable inhabitants—about monetary matters, taxes, products of the country, trade in corn, improvement of cattle-breeding, free

markets, diseases of cattle and horses, conveyance of produce, production of vegetables and firewood, and a committee of eighteen gentlemen were selected to reply to these queries. The Governor opened his views on the state of the Settlement. The results I have not been able to ascertain; they were, however, various, and different in substance as I understood, so that no fair conclusion could be arrived at.

One of the last publications of Mr. de Mist was a regulation on church matters in this colony.

In November that remarkable and able ordinance was published for the government of the country districts. Mr. de Mist had left orders, and the Governor and Council carried it into effect.

This important law, regulating the duties of landdrost and heemraden, the secretary and messenger, field-cornets and constables (as before mentioned), was framed by the late Sir John Truter, when Secretary to Government, and marks the ability of that functionary and his knowledge of the interior state of the colony and its wants.

About six weeks before the colony surrendered, the military forces required barley and chaff, and a general requisition was resorted to, and the farmers in the Cape (Tulbagh and Stellenbosch districts) were ordered to deliver such a quantity as, according to a published list, appeared opposite their names at fixed prices, namely: barley at four skillings per muid, and chaff at two skillings (ninepence) per sack, under certain penalties to be levied on the parties failing. This was certainly a stringent measure, and the farmers felt oppressed, but it was in time of war, when the attack was daily expected. Now the Government purchases at market prices.

The scarcity of grain was great, for even the purchase of rye was prohibited under a penalty of rds. 500. But the inhabitants liberally met Government by voluntarily delivering at the Government granary nearly one thousand muids of wheat at fifteen skillings per muid. This conduct was complimented in a proclamation as meeting the desire of Government therein expressed.

The last public sale of negroes was held under sanction of the Dutch Government in December, 1805. I shall not attempt to describe the scene. They were but barely covered, some in a very miserable state, and, thus exposed, appeared to feel deeply the necessary separation between their relatives and friends.

On the 25th of the same month intelligence was received by an American vessel that an English fleet with troops on board, under command of General Baird, had left Madeira for the East Indies. He calculated the fleet to be one hundred and twenty sail, and this gave rise to the apprehension that they were destined for the Cape. All the forces were warned to keep themselves in readiness, since the approach of the enemy was expected, and great preparations for defence were made.

In the beginning of January, 1806, a contingent of Hottentots for military service was ordered, namely :

From Cape Town and district .. ..	20
Stellenbosch .. ..	40
Swellendam .. ..	50
Graaff-Reinet .. ..	40
Uitenhage .. ..	25
Tullbagh .. ..	25

On the 3rd of the same month a small brig manœuvred in Table Bay as if going to anchor; but, when nearly in reach of cannon-shot from shore, she retired, and no other reason could be assigned but that she had been detached from the fleet to ascertain the position of the bay and shipping.

On the 4th signals were made, from various points, of a formidable fleet being in sight, and in the afternoon Lion's Rump hoisted all the signals it could, and the general opinion was soon confirmed by signals made, that an English fleet had arrived and anchored towards evening between Robben Island and Blaauwberg Strand, calculated at fifty-nine sail.

Meanwhile all preparations were made to resist the enemy as much as possible. Signal guns were fired to apprise the people in the country, and an alarm given to warn the militia and other corps.

General Jan Willem Janssens commanded the land forces of South Africa, and the corps under his command were :

The 22nd Battalion Infantry of the line,

5th do. of Waldeck,

1 do. Hottentot Light Infantry,

9th do. Jagers (Riflemen),

5th do. Artillery,

1 Squadron of Light Dragoons,

1 small body of Horse Artillery for 2 pieces of cannon,

A Field-train,

The Malay Artillery,

altogether amounting to 1,457 men, not including officers or non-commissioned officers.

On the 5th the companies of burgher cavalry of Ritmeesters (Captains) Linde and Human arrived in town, and already early in the morning at 5 o'clock they were assembled at the different alarm posts ; and in addition to these were :

- 1 company of Cavalry of Cape Town,
- 2       ,,       Infantry,
- 2       ,,       Auxiliary Artillery,
- 1       ,,       ,,       Infantry,
- 2       ,,       Cape Town Riflemen (Jagers).

At Stellenbosch there were stationed, besides, a company of cavalry under Ritmeester Wium, and one at Wynberg under Ritmeester D. G. van Renen.

Detachments of the Hottentot infantry, and Malay artillery were successively despatched to Blaauwberg, in order to prevent landing.

On the 6th, observations of the movements of the English were continued, and further preparations made.

In the afternoon of the 7th the General left town with the force of 1,457 men above mentioned, to which were added detachments of the burghers under Wium, Linde, and Human, and the command of the town was left to Lieut.-Colonel Baron Von Prophalver, with the remainder of the forces.

On the 8th, during the night, heavy firing of muskets was heard in the camp, on the Blaauwberg flats ; this, however, originated with a sergeant who had charge of one of the main posts near the sea, and had got intoxicated.

The General, who had been reconnoitring the enemy the previous day, estimated their force as 6,000 strong.



Meanwhile, intelligent officers (on whose information the General could rely) were despatched to watch the movements of the English; and it was proposed to inspect them further with the assistance of Colonel Gaudin Bouchere, formerly belonging to the French ship-of-war *L'Aflante*, lost in Table Bay in November previous, and whose equipage, about 150 strong, had volunteered to join the army of the line when leaving town. But this measure was checked by the intelligence received early in the morning that the enemy were approaching. Everything was arranged for battle; and at 4 o'clock in the morning the right wing of the Dutch army was attacked and manœuvres were made and executed in the best order.

A Scotch regiment marched forward in front, and after exchanging shots at a distance. formed a line, and a general discharge of musketry followed. But only a few of the Dutch were struck, on account of the distance. Opportunity was now watched, and the approach of the enemy at a shorter distance looked for, when a general charge was contemplated; but meanwhile the English brought up six pieces of cannon. General Janssens stood with his staff in front, and a howitzer was thrown between them, and struck the horse of a French Captain Ricard, from Isle de France (who at his request had joined the staff), in one of its legs.

The General in the meantime rode along the line, encouraging his men to do their duty; and a general hurrah was heard in reply from the soldiers, but rather low amongst the battalion of Waldek. Expectations however were great, and hope increased. Some howitzers were thrown between them, and created a

great sensation. They occupied the centre and took to flight, and notwithstanding the threatening of officers and the encouraging of the General, like cowards they fled. They were then abandoned by the chief, to take command again of the other brave troops who had kept the field. He saw to his regret that the left wing of the 22nd battalion also retreated. He then went up to them and exhorted them, by the honour of the mother country and their own reputation, to stand. But the confusion in the army was already so great that it had no effect, and speedily there was a retreat; and the General despatched the Commandant Henry to Riet-valley, to stop those who were retreating on their arrival, and however grieved at the fate of the officers, he declared the battalion of Waldek unworthy to remain with him any longer, and he ordered them to return to town.

## FROM OFFICIAL RETURNS :

				Strength before Battle. After Battle.	
Colonels,	..	..	2	—	1
Lieut.-Colonels,	..	..	3	—	3
Adjutants,	..	..	6	—	4
Drum-majors,	..	..	2	—	2
Captains,	..	..	24	—	15
1st Lieutenants,	..	..	32	—	17
2nd ditto,	..	..	35	—	24
Sergeant-majors,	..	..	26	—	18
Sergeants,	..	..	98	—	70
Farriers,	..	..	27	—	16
Corporals,	..	..	168	—	106
Cadets,	..	..	15	—	14
Drummers,	..	..	56	—	38

			Strength before Battle.	After Battle.
Privates,	..	..	1,457	— 972
Train Officers,	..	..	2	— 2
Commanders,	..	..	8	— 8
Cannon and Wagon-drivers,			94	— 88
Horses,	..	..	930	— 503
Howitzers,	..	..	2	— 2
Field-pieces,	..	..	14	— 13
Caisons,	..	..	13	— 12

And with the remaining force the General retired to Hottentots' Holland, now Sir Lowry's Pass.

However, the whole was gradually reduced by desertion and other casualties to about five hundred men; supplies also began to fail, and a correspondence was opened between him and the British General Beresford, which led to an honourable capitulation, signed at Hottentots' Holland on the 18th January, 1806, by General Janssens and Brigadier-General Beresford, executed in the presence of the late Sir John Truter and the since Acting Colonial Secretary J. C. Smyth, and ratified by Sir David Baird, Major-General and Commander-in-Chief; and Sir Home Popham, Commodore, commanding the naval forces.

The Batavian troops were to march from their camp within three days, with their guns, arms, and baggage, and with all the honours of war, to Simon's Town, and retain all private property; and the officers their swords and horses. But their arms, treasure, and all public property, cavalry and artillery horses, were to be delivered up. In consideration, however, of their gallant conduct, the troops were to be embarked and sent straight to Holland, at the expense of the British Govern-

ment, and not to be considered as prisoners of war, and not to serve against the British until after being landed in Holland; and when embarked to be treated in every respect as British troops.

Cape Town castle and circumjacent fortifications had previously surrendered, under capitulation dated 10th January, 1806, signed by Baron von Prophalver, Sir David Baird, and Sir Home Popham, in the presence of the late Sir John Truter and J. Palmer, at Papendorp, near Fort Knokke.

According to this capitulation, the garrison was to surrender and march out with all the honours of war; and then to lay down arms and become prisoners of war; and to be provided with passages at the expense of the British Government; public property to be faithfully delivered up.

I cannot help admiring the honourable terms of these capitulations so generously acceded to by the British commanders with respect to the enemy,—brave, but powerless. The account of the battle was taken from authentic documents.

When the British army landed at Blaauwberg another detachment was sent to Saldanha Bay, and some boats were upset in landing at Blaauwberg strand, and several soldiers drowned. It was believed, at the time, that the casualties on both sides amounted to about eight hundred men.

The British forces, including the naval, were estimated at about twelve thousand. They formed a square (nearly enclosing the whole Parade) of four deep, when the royal salute was fired for the first time after the capitulation. The troops were marched into barracks,

and the naval forces into the castle ; and the gates were locked to prevent disturbance ; and, during the evening and at night, the town was perfectly quiet.

Thus closed the last administration of the Dutch Government.

I continued in the office of the Court of Justice, and assisted on extra duty at the office of General Janssens until his departure, in copying and arranging his papers ; and received a letter of thanks in February, 1806.

## SECTION X.

As I have closed the preceding section by the proceedings of the last Dutch Governor, I hope to be indulged to return to the first chief, and to allude to part of his government, character, opinions, and principles.

JAN ANTHONY VAN RIEBEEK, Commander,

is the man who formed this Settlement, and to his memory I am about offering this tribute, which I trust will not be deemed unacceptable.

My desire to contribute to that object arose from reading his diary; and some of the events therein-mentioned appeared to me interesting to those desirous of knowing something of the early days of this colony, so I attempted to select from these and other authentic resources a limited collection, with the view of gratifying the reader's curiosity.

Principles with regard to civilization and the propagation of the Christian religion amongst the aborigines will be found corresponding with those of the present day.

Refreshments for ships, inland trade, and occupation of land to a limited extent, in order to plant the Settlement, seem to have been the primary objects.

The Government, consisting of the Commander assisted by a Council, appears to have been guided partly by instructions and partly by circumstances as they occurred. In some matters of discipline they were rather grave and arbitrary, according to our present ideas of social order. With regard to the natives, however, inclined to keep peace, but with respect to

the colonists, when a tumultuous spirit was shown, the measures adopted appear to have been prompt, bordering even on severity, in order to check a progress which might have been fatal, and tending to frustrate the whole plan and retard the occupation of the country for many years.

Without further observation I will now proceed,—hoping that my young countrymen and readers will not regret the moments spent in the perusal of the sketch.

Van Riebeeck was a medical man, and had been about three weeks on shore at the Cape in 1648, when a Dutch fleet anchored in Table Bay, and goods were embarked, saved from the wreck *Haerlem*.

With reference to a representation made in 1649 to the directors of the Dutch East India Company, by Leendert Jantz and N. Proot (who had been wrecked in the said ship and spent a season here, and who briefly set forth and explained the service, advantage, and profit which would accrue to that company from building a fort and making a plantation at Cabo de Boâ Esperance), van Riebeeck submitted on June, 1651, his considerations and reflections upon the said representation and the project of establishing here a fortress and plantation.

He drew attention to the spot eligible for a fort close to the Fresh River, on an elevated position, with the view of making it defensible—not trusting the natives, and to fence it in, together with the plantations and pasture grounds. He alluded to the water being procured with so much trouble by the crews of vessels, who, however cold, had to wade in the sea up to the neck to obtain it, causing much sickness. He suggested that it might be

improved by means of wooden pipes, or by building a pier, and thus getting it into boats dry, and with one half the trouble and number of men. He also proposed the erection of signals, and arming the fort with large guns, &c.

The cultivation of the grounds and raising vegetables for the refreshment of ships seems to have been his favourite plan. He compared this country with Japan and the northern parts of China, and considered the breeding of hogs and the trade with the natives in cattle as most advantageous. He recommended the settlement as economical for the provisioning of vessels and saving wages of seamen,—as productive of cattle and sheep and wild animals, both large and small (including rabbits),—and held out the prospect of a profitable trade in hides to Batavia and Japan,—of whaling and melting train-oil; and about the natives he stated in a despatch :

“With regard to what L. Jantz writes of the natives or their children learning our language, it is deserving of notice, and no less a good thing, and consequently the propagation of our Reformed Christian religion, which he seems to hope is still better; wherein a good teacher would do the best service if your Honours were pleased to consent to an expense, which is calculated also to tend to the better edification of your servants to be stationed here.”

He then tendered his services in hopes of promotion to India, and proceeded with three vessels, *Reyger* (Heron), *Goede Hoop* (Good Hope), and *Dromedaris* to the Cape, under special instructions dated March, 1651; being chiefly—to land, build a fort and lodge, to select a proper piece of land for a garden, and



grounds best suited for depasturing and breeding cattle, to keep up a good correspondence and intelligence with the natives, to erect beacons of occupation, and having all ships, as they arrived, piloted by boats to the best anchorage, and to settle;—chiefly to provide the passing and repassing East India ships with refreshments, so as to avoid touching at St. Helena.

The land was made on the 5th of April, 1652; the first party landed on the 6th, and the first act of authority of van Riebeeck “as senior merchant and on behalf of the Directors of the East India Company, commander of the fortress to be constructed, ships and concerns, also over their possessions to be settled at *Cabo de Boná Esperance* and his council,” was the proclamation of 9th April, 1652.

He served his employers faithfully, and exercised his experience and industry in execution of the intentions of the general company; and their instructions from that date to the 2d of April, 1662, when his successor Zacharias Weigenaar arrived and was welcomed.

There can be no doubt that seeing the misery suffered by the seafaring men from scorbutic and other diseases, and long voyages without refreshments (and particularly as a medical man), van Riebeeck moved by compassion and humanity was induced to make his representations; and the necessity was obvious, for even subsequent to the occupation there were several instances of vessels arriving with forty, fifty, sixty, and even one hundred men suffering from disease, besides numbers of lives lost during the voyage; and it is indeed gratifying to find from his diary how many were here restored to health,—since vegetables could be produced and ships provided with

fresh meat and water. And to the great Benefactor of mankind only is known the extent of misery relieved by the instrumentality of this man,—the originator and founder of the great hospital required and established by his exertions in this southern part of the globe.

It is true also that he seems to have been anxious to exert himself for the benefit of his employers, and thus to be distinguished as their servant, with the view of being promoted. But soon indeed had he reason to regret the holding of such a responsible situation, for already in April, 1653, we find him earnestly praying the directors in the following terms: “That your Honours will think of removing me hence to India and to some better and higher employment, in order that in due time and in consideration of better services than I can find here, I may earn promotion; for amongst *these dull, stupid (botte plompe), lazy, stinking people*, little address is required, such as with the Japanese, Tonquinese, and other precise nations thereabout, *who, as I have experienced in my ten years’ service, give enough to do to the brains of the cleverest Dutchman.*” He further applied to have not only the title, but rank, as commander, and to receive the usual emolument of one hundred and fifty guilders (£11 5s.) per mensem, under an instrument in *debata forma*, and stated: “I shall hold myself fully rewarded and satisfied for the services which I have done here to the utmost of my ability; hoping that in reaching India through your favour, I shall render you services of somewhat more importance than I have here field for,” &c.

By a despatch of the Chamber of XVII, of September, 1662, it appears, however, that the salary drawn by

van Riebeeck was only one hundred and thirty guilders (£9 15s.) monthly; and, notwithstanding his above application, he was not released before having served full ten years.

In a despatch from the Council to the said Chamber of 9th April, 1662, the following passage is found, which shows the character he bore amongst his contemporaries :

“ And as the said Commander Riebeeck is now entering upon the third year beyond his second engagement, and thus upon the eleventh year of the service of this place, *in which time he has, under God, converted this Cape from a barren waste to a desirable place of refreshment*, where a sufficiency of fruit may always be had for the refreshment of crews of your outward and homeward-bound fleets, besides the cattle which are occasionally purchased in abundance from the *inhabitants with whom we are now on the best terms*, through which we have also so far advanced your object, namely the cultivation of corn :”—(here follows an enumeration of the different fruits produced and flourishing in a place that was found a dry waste):—“ and as we are not aware that we have ever left anything untried :—and as by your letter of 30th September last year, you have been pleased to state that the work is now in order and brought on a good footing there :—your said most obedient and dutiful servant the Commander van Riebeeck most humbly prays, that in consideration of his long services here, you will be pleased at length to favour him with such a thankworthy augmentation, especially in rank and salary, as may more and more bind him to your service.” Thus recommended to his superiors he parted, and sailed for Batavia on the 7th May, 1662, and held

the situation of Director of the Settlement at Malacca from October, 1662 to October, 1665, and subsequently other engagements. One of his sons, Abraham van Riebeeck,—born at the Cape on the 18th of October, 1653,—was Governor-General over the Dutch possessions in the East Indies in 1709. He received his education in Holland ; held several important situations at Batavia from 1676 to the 30th October, 1709, when he was promoted to be Governor-General ; and died on the 17th November, 1713. *He was the second child born at the Cape* of European parents ; and as a distinguished South African did honour to his native country.

Mr. van Riebeeck did not depart without leaving to his successor a memorandum for his information and guidance ; it mentions that the Company's first object had been attained,—that in addition to other refreshments there was a good prospect of fruit in time (particularly from vines and olives),—that the corn-lands turned out much poorer than was expected ; and it alluded to the trade and condition of the Cape tribes.

The names and number of the tribes bordering on the colony I will merely mention—as curious and unknown to most of my readers, and to be preserved as a geographical description of the country on its first establishment ; they are as follows :

1. The Goringhaiconas, under Capt. Harry, 18 men ;
2. The Goringhaiquas or Caepmans, under Gogoso, 300 men ;
3. The Garachouquas (tobacco thieves), under Chow, 600 or 700 men ;
4. The Cochoquas, in two divisions, one under Oedason, the other under Gounema, distinguished as Saldanhars, 1,000 men ;

5. The little Chariguriquas, subject to Oedason, 300 men. (All these exclusive of women and children).
  6. The Namaquas, who are favourably mentioned ;
  7. The Charnouquas, under a Choque or King, Souson.
  8. The Heusaquas, mentioned as rich and friendly to the last tribe, and inclined to trade ;
  9. The Hamcumquas, stated to be the greatest and most powerful of all the race of greasy Hottentots ; the chief is entitled Choebaha, which seems to mean Emperor (taken from the records) ;
  10. Chamaquas,
  11. Omaquas,
  12. Atiquas, .
  13. Housunquas,
  14. Chariquas,
- } subsisting like the Hamcumquas ;
15. Choboqua, or Cobona, residing in fixed houses of wood, clay, or other materials.

Amongst other matters, van Riebeeck, touching upon these natives in the memorandum to his successor, states :

*“ Nothing is more serviceable to the Company than peace with the Hottentots.*

“ It being above all things necessary that you always endeavour to live in constant peace with the Hottentots, one tribe as well as the other, not only that the roads may be everywhere safe to facilitate further discoveries, but also that the tribes above named may always be able to come down without apprehension, with their cattle, for the refreshment of the crews of the Company’s ships.

“ To this object, in the first place, a more than usually liberal reception will much contribute, and especially if little squabbles occurring between our

people (particularly the ships' people and them), be not too seriously taken up, but rather passed over occasionally, as if in ignorance (especially at first), or otherwise they would become so shy that they would flee inland with all they possess, making the other tribes so shy also that they would keep away altogether, and you would thus find yourselves in a moment deprived, not only of daily barter with the Saldanhars, but also of the trade with all the other tribes before named. The best advice, therefore, that I am able to give you in this matter is, that you keep your attention constantly fixed, steadfast as a wall, to this point, to live without the slightest estrangement from your neighbours here, the Caepmans, or Goringhaiquas, and the tobacco thieves, or Garachouquas, as well as with Oedason, the king of the Saldanhars, which may be effected, beside the friendly treatment aforesaid, by keeping a sharp and strict watch by mounted or other guards (already brought so far into order) over the Company's live-stock and that belonging to the freemen, that a fair opportunity of driving them off is never afforded the natives without exposing their lives to danger; for should they have even the least chance of success, they could not refrain from the attempt, and on this account a very close watch will be always required here.

“*Au reste.*—That when they sometimes perceive some simple greenhorn from the ships going to some retired spot (ergens achter aff lopende kyker), and rob him of his tobacco, bread, and brass or iron buttons from his clothes, it is not a matter of such mighty importance but that it may be easily arranged. The quarrels also which occur between them and the ship-people

more than with those who are resident here (and which proceed perhaps to the length of pelting each other with stones), ought not to be too gravely regarded, for our men, who, when playing and wrestling (*stoeijende*) with them, sometimes get thumped a little harder than they will bear, and are thus provoked to abuse them, and call them black, stinking dogs, &c., are themselves in a great measure the cause. For the natives fully understand these and other Dutch words, and so forth, so that I will add that our common people are often found, when out of our sight, to be the first cause of many disputes (*questien*) which are sometimes attended with trouble in order to restore tranquillity among these natives; and this may be best accomplished by a show of injustice (*ongelyk*) towards our people, paying the others by a kindly promise of inflicting some kind of punishment on our men on board of their ships.

“And although this course appears to many of our people somewhat improper, it is nevertheless most absolutely necessary, in order that we may live in peace and quiet, and I have therefore always pursued this line of conduct, and enforced it upon others; and whatever better course you may be able to adopt, cannot fail to be still more serviceable to the Company, for in the event of disagreement you will not be able to keep a single Hottentot here or hereabouts, and therefore friendship with those who have been herein named, should be kept in mind as one of the principal maxims; in which case the trade will not only continue to flourish more and more, but the roads also will be safe for travelling in every direction, to search for what has not

been hitherto found, and as before observed, the Directors and their Honours at Batavia will be thus best satisfied, for it may be seen from the public and private letters from both quarters, that journeys for the purpose of discovery are not disapproved, but expressly ordered to be prosecuted with every assiduity, and therefore so far from dissuading you from continuing them at fitting seasons of the monsoon, I would most earnestly recommend their being prosecuted with vigour at the seasons before mentioned."

I have given this part of the memorandum at full length to show the policy and original peaceable disposition of our first ruler towards the natives, in order to remove impressions which may be entertained to the contrary.

I would feel inclined to give a biographical sketch of this remarkable man's life, but no sufficient particulars could be traced previous to his proceeding and commencement of this Settlement. It would be, I feel confident, as acceptable as that of the great founder of Pennsylvania, the famous William Penn, who soon after (namely, 1st September, 1682) set sail with about one hundred emigrants, mostly Quakers (of whom only seventy arrived) on board, to lay the foundation of that colony now so flourishing in America.

In order to spare details which are amply given in the *Zuid Afrikaansche Tydschrift* and Mr. Moodie's valuable records (from which I derived some of the above and subsequent information, and which may be of little interest at this distant period), I shall merely confine myself to a few passages illustrative of van Riebeck's character.



*He appears to have been a man who respected religion.* His first prayer,—his ordering regular service on the Sabbath, which he signifies by the name of “sermoen,”—his note on Sunday, 12th May, 1652, viz., “In the unthatched part of the house within the square of the incomplete fort, Domini Boukens, minister, arrived per the *Walvisch* (Whale) delivered *the first sermon*, and celebrated the Lord’s Holy Supper; the Almighty be pleased to grant His gracious blessing on that our work, Amen,”—and several other passages in his diary, from which his hope and trust in the power of Providence so distinctly appears, proves his religious tendency and disposition.

On the 6th of April, 1654, he noted:—“This is the second anniversary of our safe arrival at this place, under God’s holy guidance, with the ships *Drommedary*, *Heron*, and *Good Hope*, to build and establish this fort and colony, according to the orders of our lords and masters; and as the Lord God in all these matters, until this date, granted many blessings so that it succeeded well and prospered according to desire,—it is resolved, and for the first time commenced, to celebrate this day, being the 6th of April, in honor of God, and with thanksgiving, *so that it be instituted for ever* as a fixed day of thanksgiving and prayer, and that thus the benefits granted to us by the Lord may not be forgotten by our posterity, but always kept in memory and commemoration to the glory of God!”

He set apart the 26th of June, 1654, to be a day of fasting and prayer under the sufferings of the people from sickness and ill-health. Such days appear to have been frequently ordered under affliction and calamity.

One of his stringent regulations to support religious customs and devotional duties was also issued, purporting:—That as some of the people were living so ungodly, that, as pigs to the trough, they went to dinner without prayer and thanksgiving, the gaoler or police officer should take his rounds when the cook served his meals, in order to fine those whom he found neglecting this Christian usage,—for the first time, a quarter real, the second, a half real, and the third, quadruple, besides arbitrary correction. Here, however, we must do him the justice to consider of what material the people were then composed.

As a first step to introduce religion amongst the natives, he took, shortly after his arrival, into his family a little Hottentot girl, Eva. Mrs. van Riebeeck taught her the language so that she could speak it as a Dutch girl, and gave her religious instruction. When grown up she was allowed to visit, and was in the habit of visiting, from time to time the native tribes, but she on such occasions assumed her former habits and dress.

On one occasion, the 29th October, 1658, she returned and related, “that being detained by the illness of herself and her sister, wife of the chief Oedosa, she had taught and instructed her how we are to pray to our beloved Lord. That this had been received by all these people with tears in their eyes, and not ridiculed as by the chief Doman and other of the Caepmans.”

On another occasion, when returning from a visit on the 23rd December, 1658, to the fort, with some of the Cochoquas, she made up her mind not to visit them again for some time, on account of the drought and danger from lions; and to make a stay with the view of

learning our religion, and at the request of her sister and brother-in-law and more people, who, according to her statement, "had already adopted and felt in their hearts, that what she had taught them about God and His service was true, and consequently had several young children instructed by her, and that she taught them to pray before and after dinner, and when going to bed and rising, and to thank God, &c.; and when she spoke about our religion (some of them laughing) the Chief Oedosa had interfered, and by his authority caused that they were obliged to hear it with devotion, not daring to laugh, and some apprehending that what she said was good, so that several of Oedosa's people at his and his wife's request, attended her to be in company with the commander, namely, sisters and brothers, and their little children to be left here, that they might be taught from childhood." And consequently at the request of Eva, nine of these people were admitted to the evening prayer, and allowed to lodge at night in the fort.

*This, then, is the first account of the introduction of our religion amongst the natives, and admission to a Christian prayer meeting; the meaning, I suppose, was translated by Eva, and this is, therefore, the primitive attempt of missionary labour by a female Hottentot; and in order further to cultivate a good understanding with this tribe, Eva returned with a party, consisting of the Ensign van Harwarden and fifteen soldiers, and presents to the chief of the Cochoquas, consisting of copper, beads, pipes, and tobacco, a case of Spanish brandy, and beer, bread, spices, and sugar loaded on a pack-ox.*

Van Riebeeck finally encouraged the instruction of slaves. On the 17th of April, 1658, he commenced to arrange the keeping of a school for the male and female Angola slaves, in the morning and evening under a Catechist (*Ziekentrooster*), Pieter van der Stael, being well versed in reading the Dutch language, and to encourage them to go to school and listen to, or learn, prayers. He ordered that after closing school, they should receive a (musje) small dram of brandy, and two inches of tobacco,—that their names should be registered, and that to old and young, married and unmarried, names (having none) should be given in the presence of himself. *He proposed to attend this school personally for some days*, so as to establish order and regularity, to which they seemed inclined, and they were each properly clothed.

These instances amongst others will, I trust be sufficient to establish the character of the founder of the colony as a practical Christian, and a man peaceably inclined towards the coloured races.

It appears to me that he opened the communication with the natives, and in order to approach them on friendly terms, availed himself of the services and interpretations of:

1. HARRY, a Hottentot chief, then known by the English as “King Harry,” who had made a voyage to India and visited Bantam, and spoke broken English.
2. DOUMAN, a native, who had been to Batavia with the Commissioner van Goens, and understood the Dutch language perfectly.
3. EVA, abovementioned, a Hottentot girl, who had been educated in his own family.

*Harry* distinguished himself by being the first who resided near the fort, and showed the way to the top of Table Mountain on the 29th September, 1652; and by introducing, on the 9th of October following, two Saldanha Hottentots, and the next day, twelve or fourteen others, to whom were added on the 12th, about twenty more, these were kindly received and treated with wine and tobacco.

On the 20th of the same month, the trade already commenced, and three cows were bartered with copper and tobacco to the value of twenty-one stivers and twelve pennies, and four sheep at ten stivers and one and a half penny; and two lambs at five stivers ten pennies (penningen) each.

*Harry* took great credit to himself in these transactions, and claimed a reward of á plate of copper of one pound for each head of cattle, in the shape of brokerage. This however appeared strange; so that the commander, for this, and other reasons, began to suspect *Harry*, and to think that it would be better to trade without his interference.

Without entering further on the details of trade, suffice it to say that the natives continued at intervals to supply cattle and sheep until van Riebeeck left; copper, beads, and iron seemed to have been the chief articles of trade, whilst brandy, tobacco, arrack, bread, and biscuit were added, as inducements to increase the traffic.

Such was the good feeling already established on the 23rd of the same month, that *Harry* made his appearance again with three or four others, and brought two beautiful Eland heads with horns as a present.

The suspicion about *Harry's* conduct was confirmed, when, before the close of 1652, he twice advised the commander (once at dinner) to attack a tribe, the *Fishmen*, and entrap them, and kill them, women and children, and capture their cattle, and to call in the assistance of two other tribes. The commander, however, had the prudence to avoid this application by an evasive answer, and, finally, by a declaration that he and his people declined to entertain the proposal, having come here to trade and not to harm anybody, and to live in peace and on friendly terms with all.

At the latter end of 1652, thousands of head of cattle and sheep were seen near the fort, but the natives declined bartering for any. Van Riebeeck observing them and not succeeding in the trade, and having on the whole but eighty-eight head of cattle and two hundred and sixty-nine sheep, could not help, in a fit of despondency to speculate on the possibility of easily capturing a number of the cattle grazing under the care of but few unarmed men, and the advantage that would thereby accrue to the Settlement; but he closed with the remark, that it required more thought and wiser consideration than theirs, which were slightly stated; and that better experience was wanted to inquire and deliberate on the subject,—besides orders expected from higher authority. If it had been permitted, at least ten thousand could have been captured; the natives showing such good faith and confidence.

The first year closed with bartering a few oxen and sheep, and a battle was fought between the *Saldanha's* and *Fishmen*; four of the latter were killed. Application was made by the first to assist, but this was evaded

by the commander, he being anxious to be on good terms with both.

Without further entering into details with regard to van Riebeeck's proceedings up to the date of his departure (since they are copiously noted in the collections in the *Tydschrift* (periodical) and by Mr. Moodie, and my object abovementioned has I consider been attained), I will close this sketch by relating how that man's services were estimated in later days, when the Dutch, in 1803, resumed the government of this colony.

His coat of arms was introduced at the Town-house in Cape Town, on the 2nd of July, 1804, and granted by the Commissary-General Mr. J. A. de Mist, L.L.D., to the inhabitants, to remember in gratitude the first founder and governor of the Colony.

The Burgher Senate observed this day, on which the arms were publicly presented, with all solemnity.

The Senate assembled, with the Attorney-General, at 9 o'clock in the morning. The great national standard was hoisted at the castle; the president and secretary of the Senate, escorted by dragoons, proceeded to the castle, to convey the Commissary-General; and a deputation of two members and a secretary waited on the Governor and Commander-in-Chief and councillors of the Court of Policy to accompany them to the Town-house. On their arrival, the president, Mr. J. J. Vos, made an appropriate speech, to which the Commissary-General graciously replied.

A guard of honour of grenadiers attended, and the new arms were exposed in and outside of the Town-house. It consisted of three golden rings on a red field, resting on an anchor, representing the Hope on a gold

surface, and trumpets and music sounded whilst the Commissary-General, conducted by the full Senate, left—under a salute of twenty-one guns.

The Senate gave that day a sumptuous dinner, and the Commissary-General, the Governor, the Court of Policy, and their Secretaries, Heads and Presidents of Departments, Clergymen, and several functionaries attended, and were cordially and hospitably entertained; and in the evening the Town-house was illuminated.

The President thanked the Commissary-General for granting the arms of the brave *Riebeek*, the founder of the Colony, in appropriate terms, and for the Senate as representatives of the Burghers addressed the Governor, with assurances of loyalty, and hoped that by encouragement of agriculture, trade, and navigation, and useful sciences, the colony might be relieved of its financial embarrassment.

The Commissary-General returned a graceful speech to these addresses, alluded to the gratitude due by posterity on the occasion to revive the memory of this brave man—*Johan Anthon van Riebeek*; and the object of establishing this colony. He expressed his desire to name Cape Town, *Riebeek's Town*, if there were not reasons connected with trade, &c., to the contrary. He alluded to the gold surface on which the anchor rested, as expressive of his wish for the wealth and welfare of the Colony, and named *van Riebeek* the father and founder. He exhorted the Senate and Burghers to be in unity in repelling the enemy from without and within; and concluded by wishing permanent prosperity to *Riebeek's Town*.



Several toasts were given on the occasion, such as :  
“*Prosperity and Success to the Colony and its Capital,*”  
“*The Burghers of the City,*” “*All in power,*” “*Commerce and Navigation,*” “*Agriculture,*” “*Instructors of Youth;*”  
and finally, “*The brave van Riebeck, may his memory never be forgotten by an ungrateful posterity.*”

## SECTION XL.

ONE of the first measures which General Baird adopted was to call upon the inhabitants of the country districts, not only to remain quietly and peaceably on their farms, but to continue with their harvest, and though the intercourse with the country was restrained whilst General Janssens had not surrendered, yet Mr. Jacobus Johannes Vos, president of the Burgher Senate, was authorized to grant passes to bakers' wagons, &c., countersigned in the castle, and the inhabitants were further enjoined not to afford any assistance or attend to the orders of General Janssens, and to return to their places on pain of confiscation ; and they were warned against the inevitable misery of a protracted warfare in the bosom of the colony.

The next step was the taking of the oath of allegiance to his Britannic Majesty by the acting as well as the late members of the several boards and civil officers, and also by the principal inhabitants of the country.

And to establish civil authority, the General appointed His Majesty's Fiscal (Attorney-General) Willem Stephanus van Ryneveld, Esq., to be his Majesty's chief civil magistrate and counsellor in this Settlement, and to execute all the immediate duties of the civil administration under his superintendence and direction ; and all persons were directed to attend to his orders and directions in the same manner as if issued by himself.

This gentleman was a South African who had never been out of the colony, but he raised himself by talent and application, so that he was intrusted with the highest offices, and employed in matters of great

importance; he has been secretary to the court of justice, fiscal, president of the orphan chamber, and of the court of justice.

His position as fiscal and public prosecutor was most trying under the disturbances of the country, but to the interests of Government he firmly adhered.

He was a great promoter of agriculture by countenance and example, and advocated the introduction of the Spanish and merino sheep into the colony, and the conversion of the Cape sheep into wool-growing, and wrote an interesting pamphlet, printed in 1805, on that and other subjects connected with agriculture, trade, and finance.

When in 1811 the Governor Lord Caledon created the establishment of circuits in the country, his Excellency directed that a commission of the court of justice (to which two members for the purpose were added) should once within the year, or oftener, make a circuit to the most distant districts, Mr. van Ryneveld joined the first circuit as president.

His sudden death in 1812 was much regretted, and the *Government Gazette* expressed it in the following terms: "The public will learn with the deepest sorrow the decease on Friday, 14th instant (August), of W. S. van Ryneveld, Esq., president of the court of justice, orphan chamber, &c.

"The unrivalled qualities of this respected magistrate and virtuous man were so well known that it does not require more than to state his death, to draw from every voice the acknowledgment of his irreparable loss to this colony.

“ His life was spent in the direct pursuit to exalt the state of his native place, and his excellent understanding, urged on by enlightened and enlarged views upon all subjects so peculiar to himself, eminently fitted him to extend the real interest of this rising settlement.

“ In the dispensation of justice from his superior seat, it was his unceasing wish and the last great employment of his mind ‘that right should be done to every man,’ careless of distinction or consequence, not within the ordinary spheres of action and observation alone, but that this great principle, equally of nature and policy, should be general, and know no bounds but the wide limits of our dominion.

“ The judge, the statesman, the confidential adviser, and the disinterested supporter of government were all acknowledged in him; but these high qualifications were even inferior to the man of amiable and social life. His friends, his family, his wife, children, and dependents will never forget the cheerful companion, the kind and benevolent master; his public and private virtues ran so near a course, the public eye of humanity cannot say where was the leading passion which was foremost in his earthly race.

“ Merit so various and alike conspicuous will ever remain the boast and pride of the Cape of Good Hope. Here he was born, educated, and solely passed his life. But such were his gifts from nature, the greatness of his mind, and the goodness of his heart, he wanted not the aid of travel; and instead of receiving example from the range of distant climes, he will give it to

other countries, and where his character reaches, honour and distinction will be the claim of this settlement."

He was buried on the Sunday following. His Excellency the Governor, the Major-General commanding and staff, the great body of the clergy, and all the civil officers, led the solemn procession, minute guns firing at stated intervals. The whole of the inhabitants of all grades in this city (Cape Town) came forth, united in the performance of the last melancholy duties to that great and good man.

He had a commanding figure, pleasing countenance, and lively eye, was cheerfully and socially disposed, and attached to his public duties; he enjoyed the implicit confidence of his superiors and was much respected by his inferiors.

When a young man I used often to visit the family. His eldest son, the present civil commissioner of Stellenbosch, Mr. Daniel Johannes van Ryneveld, was my youthful companion; and the kindness I received at the house of this gentleman when in town on occasional visits is still gratefully remembered.

When in 1808 I had an offer to join one of the practitioners and advocates before the court, and applied to him for advice, he kindly opened the prospects in the service and dissuaded me; and that was the cause, fortunately, that I continued in the public service.

The correspondence between him and my father proved to me, since their demise, that they were on intimate terms, and entertained a mutual regard.

I hope that this digression will be indulged, as I still feel for the friend of my parent and the highly meritorious and distinguished countryman.

And now, to return again to further public proceedings witnessed by me of anterior date, I will resume and continue the period following immediately after the surrender ; and state that, anxious to see my parents and visit my intended (to whom I was then engaged, and who resided at Stellenbosch in the family of Mr. J. C. Faure), I proceeded thither. At the foot of the hill (Papegay Berg), just before reaching the village, the English troops had encamped. In passing I was stopped, but, intimating my anxiety to see my relations, allowed to pass. His Majesty's troops had then taken possession of the drostdy (district) ; this was about three days after the capitulation of the town and citadel.

Sir David Baird, whilst in pursuit of the Dutch army, to effect completely the purpose of his expedition (but disposed to proceed with the inhabitants on a friendly footing in every respect), made it known, that foreseeing the dreadful consequences which must ensue to the inhabitants from a warfare in the bosom of the colony, he would still endeavour to prevent those calamities.

Under the orders he had received to afford to all inhabitants peace and protection, he ordered the General in command at Stellenbosch to enter into negotiation with General Janssens, who, with a detachment of his troops, had retired amongst the mountains of Hottentots' Holland, and he stated : " I am ready to make the said General with his small party of brave troops the most honourable proposals of capitulation as far as it may be consistent with my honour, but should I not be able to effect this purpose, I shall have recourse to arms."

He exhorted the inhabitants as their lawful Commander-in-Chief, as their father and protector, to feel with

him what their interest was, peace, unanimity, obedience to the laws, hoping not to be reduced to the disagreeable necessity of having recourse to the severity of the laws.

This had the desired effect; the capitulation of General Janssens (before mentioned) was completed as intended, and peace and tranquillity soon restored.

I have noticed these particulars to show how the present British administration commenced in this colony, and because my future career was therewith so closely connected.

Under the constitution of the British court (of which first Mr. Olof Godlieb de Wet, and afterwards Mr. van Ryneveld, was president), I continued in the office of the court, of which Mr. Gerard Bealaerts van Blokland, LL.D., formerly Attorney-General, was secretary; and in April, 1807, I received under his recommendation my first promotion in that office. It is due to that gentleman to state (who went afterwards to Holland and was there a Minister of Finance) that by his selecting me from time to time to do duty in extra hours out of office, and by employing me to copy the records of the court (of which there are several volumes in my handwriting at present in the office of the Registrar of the Supreme Court), and other extra duties, coupled with his guidance, that I had the advantage of obtaining a more extensive insight into matters connected with the judicial department; added to which, I kept in spare hours in the evening—in order to improve my knowledge in notarial practice—the protocol of Mr. Gerrit Buyskes, my former secretary under the Batavian court, and then an advocate and notary public in practice. He was since president of the court of justice at Batavia.

Meanwhile I resolved to enter into the matrimonial state, and on Sunday, the 4th of May, 1806, I married my present wife (then Miss Jannetta Johanna Blanckenberg), and we have been blessed with seventeen children, of whom twelve were sons.

In those days a marriage in the village was a remarkable event. During the weeks between the proclamation of banns, daily visits of congratulation were received in the afternoon and evenings, when the visitors were treated with sweets and delicacies, tea, coffee, &c., and their wishes expressed for the future happiness of the young bride and bridegroom.

On the Saturday before marriage we had to appear before the matrimonial court, and seated in a "*vis-à-vis*," which the landdrost, Mr. van der Riet, had kindly supplied (there was then no other carriage in the village). The coachman, his whip, and horses, were decorated with ribbons, &c., according to custom. We proceeded to the Drostdy House from the house of Mr. Jacobus Faure, whose lady was the bride's sister. Having been ushered with the usual ceremony into the court-room, and appeared in due form before the court, and answered the usual queries satisfactorily, the secretary—my old friend, Mr. Wege—was authorized to forward the certificate required for the solemnization of the nuptials.

We repaired again to Mr. Faure's residence, and beyond that to my parents *La Gratitude*, and were there met by relatives and friends, receiving their cordial congratulations, and I cannot recollect how many kisses. We had a comfortable family dinner; "our health and prosperity" was the toast given by my then happy father, with his blessing. The day and evening



were cheerfully spent in the family circle, and we joined cordially in the juvenile amusements of the evening,—for the bridegroom was but nineteen and the bride eighteen years of age.

The bride was then (for the last time as such) conveyed to her home in the evening, and took a farewell of her young companions, to enter the next day into that state which would separate her from their juvenile society, and to connect her future intercourse with that of the married, and assume the more serious avocations of matrimonial life. The last visits received during the bridal days were generally considered as parting from the young and unmarried associates, and taking the higher degree of a married woman, and an admission into the society of those already mothers and heads of families, and to enter upon the duties of the household.

The Sunday morning dawned and was beautiful, calm, and serene ; all about me seemed sharing in my happiness. Parents, sisters, and brothers, my good old nurse *Leonora* (in fact all belonging to the family), met me when dressed for the occasion, with cheerful countenances, and these expressed unmistakably their kind wishes. Before church time the *vis-à-vis* made its appearance again in front of our house, and conveyed me to the bride, where I met an assembly of relatives and friends, and amongst them as "*best man*," the bride's only brother, Mr. Carel Gerhard Blanckenberg, and as bridesmaid, my eldest sister, Aletta Jacoba (now widow of the late Colonel A. Cameron), both still living ; and at the third ringing of the bell, we proceeded in the same carriage to our old church, passing many of my young companions with smiling countenances, and receiving their salutations in the street.

Having conducted my bride to her seat according to custom, I retired to mine, and after service those desirous of entering into the holy state of wedlock were called upon to appear before the pulpit, and there were five or six couples besides ourselves. The marriage ceremony was performed by my father, and we joined right hands according to the form prescribed, made the promises required regarding our mutual duties ; and having received the blessing given with true pastoral and parental feeling, we returned to our seats. An impressive prayer was then offered for our happiness, and whilst the congregation was singing the last Psalm, each went up to his bride and left the church arm in arm, as customary ; and we were conveyed again to Mr. Faure's house ; where, soon after church, a number of kind relatives and friends followed, to express their best wishes for our future welfare and success. I cannot help thinking that these prayers and wishes influenced our success in future life.\*

It was the custom also in those days to decorate the reception room in which the happy couple were seated to receive the congratulating visitors. We were placed on a sofa, under a large looking-glass decorated with a wreath of myrtle, flowers, ribbons, &c., in the shape of a large heart ; and the floor was strewn with myrtle and other flowers or leaves of gold and silver paper cut into small pieces.

The kind sister Faure had a sumptuous dinner prepared. There were about forty guests, chiefly relatives and friends. One of the large pies agreeably disappointed the guests by liberating a number of small live

\* Marriages at present are solemnized on week-days.

birds with little red beaks (roodbekjes) that had been confined. An old sportsman had caught them for the occasion, to amuse the party. They of course flew in all directions round the table, and caused great merriment.

In the evening the young folks enjoyed themselves. A couple of village musicians amused them. In those days it was customary on marriage occasions, and it was thought harmless. Soon after supper, the eldest of the company (our kind-hearted friend, Mr. Bletterman, formerly landdrost) pretended to open a dance, when the bride conducted by him took her leave. The bridegroom soon followed accompanied by several of the married ladies and gentlemen, bidding good night ;—and so we retired.

Thus ended that day, the most remarkable and important to my future course in life ; in which even now, after nearly fifty-two years (I wrote this on the 8th of April, 1858), I rejoice with thanksgiving to my Heavenly Father for His many and unmerited blessings ; and especially for having been spared with my partner to this day. About a week after, we proceeded to town and took our residence with my uncle, Mr. Jacobus de Wit, and stayed there some months before we occupied our own house in Plein-street, which I had purchased ; receiving from him and my good aunt the greatest kindness,—for they were to us as second parents.

It would require a separate volume to note the various cases decided and disposed of by the court of justice during my employment in their office, and would form an interesting collection of *causes célèbres*. One, however, of the most remarkable in the days of slavery (and which the emancipation from slavery has

prevented from ever happening again) was about the expiration of the year 1808. It was that of an *insurrection*. I will endeavour to give a brief account, taken from the sentence. Such documents contained also, besides the judgment, the *species facti* of the crimes.

Some time previous to the month of October, 1808, it so happened that a certain James Hooper, an Irishman, lived in Cape Town with *Louis*, slave of a Mrs. Kirsten. Hooper told him "that there were no slaves in his country and that every person was free." And they concerted with another slave, *Abraham*, a plan to endeavour to make the slaves in this colony also free, and if need be to employ violent means. Louis undertook to speak to such slaves as he knew in the country; and he did so, first to some of a Mr. Louw, in Zwartland (now Malmesbury), and found them ready to assist.

Thus prepared, Hooper and Abraham proceeded to Louw's and spent the evening with him, Hooper pretending to be a gentleman and Abraham figuring as his servant.

The plan being communicated to one Michael Kelly, also an Irishman, he agreed to join, and Hooper hired a wagon, pretending it to be for an Englishman to Rietvalley, therefore but one day's journey.

Louis, under advice of Hooper, provided himself with a blue jacket with red collar and cuffs, and two silver epaulets, large and small swords, and ostrich feathers for plumes, and then joined Hooper and Abraham, and Kelly, and a deserted slave they met on the road, and proceeded to Mr. Louw's place, to incite as many as possible in the interior to insurrection and rebellion;

and having assembled and armed themselves, to march to Cape Town and take a battery, and demand by letter from the Governor the liberty of the slaves in this colony, to storm the prison and release the prisoners, and to fight for the liberty of the slaves. Louis was to be the governor or chief of the blacks, Hooper to have a high situation, and they expected assistance of some people living five months from Cape Town ; but who these were was not ascertained.

At Louw's, Louis put on two gold epaulets, Hooper a silver one, and having with Kelly armed themselves with swords, their first object was to arrest Louw, but he was not at home.

Louis was then introduced to Mrs. Louw as a Spanish captain (he had the dark tinge of that nation), and this kind lady gave him plenty of forage for the horses, a good supper, and permitted all to sleep there, showing them their bed-rooms. Mrs. Louw took supper with them, and several inquiries were made about Louw.

The next morning they were joined by Louw's slaves (ten in number) and a Hottentot, and proceeded then to the place of a Mr. Basson, and caused horses to be put to his wagon, and bound him. Doors were then forced and guns and powder taken, and they stated that it was the Governor's and Fiscal's orders to take all Christians and slaves to Cape Town. Mrs. Basson fortunately escaped, together with a Miss Smit, through a window, and by letting themselves down by a rope.

They, now having twelve wagons and four saddle horses, keeping Basson under arrest and having pinioned him on the road, went to the place of another Mr.

Louw, seized him, took his money, gun and powder, and armed several of his slaves with swords; also to one Mr. van der Westhuyzen's, committing the same acts, adding wine and clothing to their robbery, and binding him. And here (under a threat whilst holding the muzzle of a gun to the breast and forcing) even an act of ravishment was committed.

The number of insurgents had now so increased that they could be formed into two divisions, and Louis took command of one of them, and they proceeded through Koeberg and Tygerberg, Vissershok and Paalen, visiting in all thirty-four farms, taking with them, the masters and Christians (whites) bound, and their wagons, horses, arms, ammunition, and slaves: holding out to these that they were to be free, committing several outrages, and directing their course towards Salt River, where some poles for the guidance of travellers were planted. This seemed destined as the place of rendezvous.

The slaves (whom they had induced to follow them partly by force and partly by making them believe were then to be free) cried out every where that such was the order of the Governor, the General, and Fiscal.

From some places they carried the masters bound, from others unbound, in the charge of armed blacks; at other places they distributed wine among the people, committing great excesses, and under the shouts of *huzza* and firing (in and outside of the houses), they broke windows, chests, and trunks to pieces, entirely plundering the latter, so that several farmers suffered severely; and the most, one Mr. Christian Storm, of whom not a single slave joined the insurgents, but

concealed themselves in the bushes. He was surprised by these men, armed, in the middle of the night in his own house, where they broke open all the chests, trunks, and doors of different rooms, and deprived him of nearly everything that came in their way ; and having afterwards bound him, almost naked, as they had taken him out of his bed, they threw him into a wagon ; whilst another party committed violence and plunder at a place in the neighbourhood of a Mr. van der Spuy, taking from him his writing desk and papers. They also seized a Mr. Adriaan Louw, of Drooge Valley, a man upwards of seventy years, on his place, and ill-treated him in the highest degree, laying hold of him by his hair, giving him a blow with the but-end of a musket on his head, and beating him with a sword.

Some farmers were left behind as prisoners, whilst they proceeded to the place of a Mr. Arend de Waal, at the Paalen, and ill-treated him, taking his guns, and arresting two other farmers Messrs. Joubert and Lategaan, then travelling on the road.

The Governor, Lord Caledon, having received a report of this insurrection on the 27th October, between 9 and 10 o'clock in the evening, had detachments of cavalry and infantry immediately despatched. Some of the parties were apprehended at Blueberg and the Paalen, others at Tygerberg. There were confined at Fort de Knokke, one hundred and twenty-six ; at Maastricht at Tygerberg, two hundred ; escaped, five ; total three hundred and thirty-one. Wagons, horses, guns, &c., were immediately returned to the owners, but a great many articles were lost in the confusion. The five prisoners who had escaped were successively apprehended,

and to the masters were returned two hundred and forty-four slaves, and some of the others, who appeared to have been acting passively ; and only fifty-one were actually brought to trial, after a preliminary examination.

The prisoners consisted of two Europeans, one Hottentot, and forty-eight slaves. Their sentence was pronounced on the 31st of December, 1808. Sixteen were to be hanged, and the bodies of four of them exposed ; the others to be scourged, and eight of them exposed with ropes round their necks (punishment next to capital), and twenty-one in addition, branded ; besides some who were condemned to the public works for life, twenty-five, fifteen, ten, and five years,—three were returned to their masters to work in irons, and four to witness the execution, and be returned to their masters.

Ultimately, His Excellency the Governor exercised his power of remitting the punishments, so that nine only were to be executed, the bodies of five exposed, four confined for life, six for fifteen, two for five, and one for three years (after punishment to be returned to their masters), the remainder also after witnessing the punishment. The sentences against one of the Europeans and one of the prisoners (Adonis) condemned to capital punishment were suspended, and ultimately that of Kelly was remitted, but he was sent to England to await His Majesty's pleasure, whilst Adonis was banished for life.

Thus ended this melancholy event, under a kind Providence, without bloodshed before the apprehension of the prisoners ; and fortunately the insurrection extended itself but partially, and was confined to that part



of the colony where the slave population was less dense and not so civilized as in other quarters.

The sight of so many prisoners, and the proceedings which I read in the office whilst copying some of the examinations and sentences, made a deep impression on my mind, and raised serious thoughts regarding the existence and justice of slavery. For the desire of liberty being the origin of the crimes committed, was (as it struck me) but natural, though at the period of bondage unlawful. The order, peace, and state of society then, however, required severe measures to check further and fatal progress; so they could not be avoided.

Proceeding in the office under a cheerful discharge of my duties, and flattering hopes of success, I met in 1809, going one morning to the office (then in the castle), a gentleman (Mr. Francis Dashwood) who had been residing at Stellenbosch for his health when I was a lad learning my Latin lessons. He used to visit my father and observed this, and had the kindness to invite me to his house, and took some interest in my progress. He asked me what prospect I had in the service? I opened to him my views, and he advised me "to continue and endeavour to distinguish myself."

It so happened that, soon after, Government determined that the Venduemastership should not remain attached to the situation of the secretary of Stellenbosch but be separated, and my old friend, Mr. Wege, resolved to be *venduemaster*. Apprised of his intention, I communicated my wishes to succeed him, as secretary, to my friend, Mr. Dashwood. He had the kindness to draw up my memorial; being at that time Receiver-General, he was a man of influence, and by his favourable

representation of my case to the Governor, Lord Caledon, the recommendation of the Colonial Secretary, Mr. Alexander, and the testimonial of my superiors I succeeded in obtaining that situation, and received my appointment, dated 18th December, 1809. This promotion was a great step, for, besides being allowed a house and garden, my salary amounted to £75, with fees, and I was the only notary *ex officio* in the district.

My family had now increased to three children (two daughters and one son). This promotion brought me back to the office where I had commenced my public career in life. The duties were not foreign to me, and the judicial and notarial parts had become familiar. The records were kept plain, and I had many precedents, and the forms of accounts were so accurately prescribed, and I had such good clerical assistance, that the office was conducted with ease; so that during the afternoon, time was left for exercise, and the evenings for study.

This appointment was particularly gratifying to my beloved parents; for it brought me with them once more in daily intercourse, and renewed the enjoyment of earlier days; it contributed much to our mutual happiness, and we felt truly thankful and spent many happy moments in each other's society.

I had the satisfaction of finding amongst my father's papers after his demise, a letter from Lord Caledon, in his own handwriting, dated 18th January, 1810, in which the following lines are inserted:

“ It has been my study in the selections which I have made for office, that the individual should not only be eligible from his public capacity, but also from his

private worth, and it must be an additional source of pleasure for you to know, that had not your son appeared eligible in each point of view, I should not have selected him for promotion. His own merit brought him to my notice, and my respect for your character confirmed me in the inclination to serve him."

Before proceeding further, I will retrace some public events between 1806 and 1810, and note them for the information of my readers.

In March, 1806, I witnessed a severe public chastisement. Some ill-advised and malicious persons spread false reports respecting the arrival of an enemy's fleet, and one in particular (Cornelis Maas) was even wicked enough to state in General Baird's presence that he himself had not only seen an enemy's fleet, but had spoken to some of their officers in Saldanha Bay, from whence he had come with all possible speed to report the same to His Majesty's Government. It created great alarm; the garrison was turned out, and placed under marching orders. This, however, appeared to be a false information, and he was publicly flogged at the cart's tail round the town, and banished from the colony. And the General published that such false reports should be punished with death or such other chastisement as by a general court-martial should be awarded.

In the same month a sentry upon duty at the barriers of the lower castle yard was fired at and wounded, and a reward of one thousand rixdollars offered to discover the perpetrator.

In April, the Governor commenced his arrangements for the government of this Settlement, and the Batavian Court received his thanks for the attention and good will

with which they had continued to discharge their important duties, and the new Court was appointed, of which Mr. van Ryneveld was to be the Vice-President and Acting-President, in addition to being His Majesty's Fiscal and Attorney-General; and two members of the old Court were re-appointed, besides four other members, with the former Attorney-General as their secretary.

The Chamber for regulating Insolvent Estates was also reformed on a reduced scale; and Mr. Rhenius, formerly second in command (*gezachthebber*) nominated as Political Commissioner for Church Affairs, and Mr. G. F. Grand (late extra Councillor of the Board of Policy) as Inspector of Government Woods.

Hottentots willing to serve His Majesty were to be enlisted by the landdrosts.

The first postal arrangements were directed by Mr. William Caldwell, as Deputy Postmaster. Relays of Hottentots were stationed as runners at the houses of farmers on the route, to convey the mail bags. This was the infant or forerunner of the now so extensive establishment of the Post Office.

The requisition for wagons, horses, and oxen for the public service was established by law.

The issue of gunpowder was restricted, and could only be obtained under a certificate of the landdrost of the district, and for protection of cattle against the different tribes of savages.

A sale of imported negro slaves was authorized by Government the same year; this, I believe, was the last of that inhuman traffic.

In January, 1807, Sir David Baird delivered over the Government to Lieutenant-General Grey, the ap-

pointed Lieutenant-Governor and Commander of the Forces; and on the 24th he left in the transport *Paragon*. Addresses were presented to His Excellency, one by the British merchants and another by the principal inhabitants.

In the first-mentioned, Sir David was highly complimented for the order and discipline maintained in the army; and with regard to the civil government it stated: "And from the wisdom, justice, and moderation of your civil government, you have the singular satisfaction of a conqueror leaving the conquered beloved and regretted by them."

In the second, from the Court of Justice, Burgher Senate, and other public boards, civil and ecclesiastical, deep regret at the departure and thanks for paternal protection are expressed, and it further mentions: "By your wise and well-directed measures for our internal government, together with the unparalleled discipline of the troops under Your Excellency's command, our rights have been guarded, and the whole colony enjoys at this moment a state of tranquillity and plenty seldom or ever realised. Though we have not a moment's doubt of the fatherly care of His Majesty to have appointed a successor every way qualified to fill the important situation of the Governor of the Cape of Good Hope, still, however, we cannot help expressing our sincere sorrow at the loss of Your Excellency; and we beg leave to assure Your Excellency that our gratitude for the blessings the colony has experienced under Your Excellency's Government will never be obliterated from our memory. Accept then, worthy sir, of our most heartfelt acknowledgments; and may the Almighty

Giver of all Good grant Your Excellency every happiness and prosperity that life affords; in which we may assure Your Excellency we are joined by every well-thinking inhabitant of the colony.”

Thus I saw this Commander of the Forces and British Governor of our colony depart, under a salute from the Imhoff battery of seventeen guns. A multitude of spectators attended and our best wishes followed him.

On the last day of the month the instructions for vaccine inoculation were published, and the medical practitioners referred to a committee of a president, two members, and a secretary, previously appointed.

In April the first supreme medical committee of three physicians were appointed, and their instructions published.

About that time some malicious person had put a shot into the gun on the castle ramparts—usually fired as the morning and evening gun. Considerable damage was done to one of the houses in town, and lives were risked. A reward was offered to detect the perpetrator.

In May, 1807, His Excellency the Earl of Caledon was proclaimed Governor; and Andrew Barnard, Esq. (husband to the well-known and hospitable Lady Ann Barnard), Secretary and Registrar of the Records in this Settlement; a Court of Appeal in Civil Cases and Vice-Admiralty Court were also appointed. In June the small-pox made its appearance; the powder magazine was broken into; and policemen were employed to convey mails to the interior.

In November the first tenders were invited for delivery of forage for the Colony, instead of the usual

assessment of the farmers. This was to them a great relief.

To encourage the production of wool, the Agricultural Commission offered for sale a great number of bastard Spanish rams at Groenekloof. They had sent to two field-cornets in Roggeveld also one hundred and forty rams. Some farmers, however, objected, stating that the Cape sheep were preferred by the butchers; these, however, denied giving that preference.

At that time twenty-six Government places were offered for lease at Groenekloof.

In 1808 the boundaries of Tulbagh district were fixed.

The first and only wagon-load of wool in that year, belonging to Mr. Hillegert Muller, of Swellendam, arrived in town, and realized rds. 670. How great has been the progress in the production of that article since! A Court of Appeal in Criminal Cases was established. Rds. 150,000 issued from the Treasury to the Lombard Bank, to be advanced in small sums and at short periods for the convenience of trading and other parties desirous of keeping up credit. This is the first establishment of discount.

In March, 1809, Mr. W. S. van Ryneveld was appointed President of the Court of Justice, in the room of Mr. O. G. de Wet, and Mr. J. A. Truter, H. M. Fiscal.

In April the Cape district was established under a landdrost and heemraden, and their instructions published. Mr. T. Tom was the first landdrost. I note this, because as civil commissioner of that division for nearly twenty-four years, I still feel a deep interest in its prosperity and welfare.

In June a free pardon was offered to all deserted slaves on returning to their masters' service.

The Governor, Lord Caledon, found it necessary for the benefit of the colony at large, that not only the individuals of the Hottentot nation, in the same manner as the other inhabitants, should be subject to proper regularity in regard to their places of abode and occupations, but also that they should find encouragement for preferring to enter the service of the inhabitants to leading an indolent life (by which they were rendered useless both for themselves and the community at large), and established the system of written contracts by the parties before a fiscal, landdrost, or field-cornet, and other salutary rules, as appears in a proclamation of November, 1809.

Having noted these public proceedings, which might have been extended to a length far beyond the plan of my memoir, I will now resume my personal career.

On the 1st of January, 1810, I was gazetted as Secretary of Stellenbosch, and continued in that office until the 17th March, 1813, when I was appointed as Deputy Fiscal in Cape Town (that is, assistant to the Attorney-General of the Colony), and took my oath of office on the 25th following. The desire to rise in the service and promote the education of my children (then five in number), induced me to accept the proposal made through the then landdrost, Mr. W. S. van Andrenge. The salary of my predecessor was mentioned as being £375, exclusive of fees, so that in that point I also expected to gain an advantage. I left the dear village, not without much feeling of regret, as being again separated from my beloved parents and a large



circle of kind friends, among whom my brother-in-law, Mr. T. C. Faure and his lady, my old secretary, Mr. Wege, Mr. and Mrs. Bletterman, and several others, had become dear to me.

Soon the quiet scenes of the village changed with the turbulency of town, for my occupations were of a less pacific nature. Daily was I obliged to hear and dispose of the complaints of higher and lower classes, or bring them into a course of judicial investigation and decision. I had to regulate the police department (of which the fiscal, Mr. Daniel Denyssen, was the chief), to represent the public prosecutor in preliminary examinations before commissioners of the court, and conduct the trials of inferior and police cases, and several other duties connected with that laborious office; so that I was never certain of my time, day or night.

I was rather disappointed, after accepting the office, to learn that £150 of the salary above mentioned had been a personal gratuity to my predecessor, so that my salary reverted to £225. In a pecuniary point of view, therefore, I considered myself not to have advanced; and, with the expenses of town and no allowance for house-rent, to have made rather a retrograde move. I was consequently induced to represent my case, but no redress was obtained before 1817, when my salary was increased; and, from a Government letter of the 5th May to His Majesty's Fiscal, it appeared that His Excellency the Governor had received the sanction of His Majesty's Government in England to an increase of my salary (in consideration of *useful* and *meritorious* services), to an amount of Rds. 4,500, so long as I should fill the situation of Deputy Fiscal; and upon my

vacating the office should revert to its former standard of Rds. 3,000, and my increase was to commence from the 1st of July, 1806.

This was not only satisfactory to my feelings, but with the cares of my growing family a great relief; and I need hardly add that it prompted to further exertion in the service.

The occupations of that office were such that for about seven years I did not leave Cape Town, except under most urgent circumstances. I also performed extra duties, namely, as Secretary of a Commission of Inquiry into the conduct of a minister of Swellendam, charged by the Landdrost with misconduct in his public and private proceedings. Of this committee the late Sir John Truter was chairman, and the senior minister of the Dutch Reformed Church and political commissioner in church matters were the members; and it was while acting in that capacity, under the immediate eye and observation of Sir John, that I first attracted his attention, and that the foundation was laid of a future intimacy, which lasted until his demise. In another part of my memoir I may perhaps be induced to give a sketch of that amiable gentleman and able functionary. The result of the inquiry was a suspension of the minister for six months.

In February, 1818, I was specially charged by Government with the management of all matters of police, the superintendence of the inferior officers and servants employed in the Fiscal's department, the care and proper treatment of prisoners, and the investigation and settlement of all petty disputes. The duties belonging to the Prosecutor's department (such as examining

witnesses, conducting trials before commissioners) were allotted to an advocate.

Another important extra appointment was of the 16th June, 1819, by Government letter, stating that as the Governor was desirous, in order to the framing of a regular compendium of colonial law, that the local laws and institutions of this Government should be brought out of that diffused state wherein they were into one regular whole containing all the local ordinances in force,—I was requested to undertake with Mr. D. F. Berrangé, the Secretary of the Court of Justice and a Doctor at Law, under the guidance of the Chief Justice, Sir John A. Truter, the forming of a general placat, to contain, under distinct heads, all the proclamations, ordinances, resolutions, and other provisions which had been enacted and issued by the successive Governments of this Colony, since its first establishment to the present day,—so far as they were still observed, and considered to have the force of law.

My friend Berrangé and myself, being well occupied during office hours, found it most convenient to meet in the evening at his house, where, as a useful reference, we framed and extended an alphabetical register of all the colonial laws, in ten volumes, still extant. The more important object, however, in contemplation, was a minute of such parts of the Roman and other laws as were adopted in the colony; and this was to be more exclusively the task of my brother commissioner, Berrangé, he being a regularly educated lawyer. But whilst matters were thus progressing, the report of a change in the administration of justice and the establishment of an English Supreme Court reached us; and, under

the expectation that different laws and regulations would be introduced, and my increasing duties as a permanent sitting commissioner, the work was checked and dropped,—when both Sir John and Mr. Berrangé retired from office.

This, however, gave me great insight into the colonial laws, and opportunity to get more and more acquainted with Sir John, under whose guidance I since attempted to translate Van der Linden's Criminal Code. This work was in the Government press when an edition arrived of a translation of the whole of that author's works by Mr. Henry, so that mine was not necessary.

On different occasions I was also surrogated as a member of the Court of Justice whilst Deputy Fiscal, until the 21st February, 1823, when I was honoured with the appointment of member of the Court of Justice, then the Supreme Court of the Colony.

On that occasion I received a letter from Sir John, stating that he was much pleased that I should succeed the judge, Mr. Matthiessen (this gentleman had served the Colony fifty years), and as the course appeared to him to be opened by Providence, he recommended me to keep it constantly in view, and to remember that I should have to account for this my stewardship; and by using the talents intrusted to me, to attain the object of my call; and directing it with modesty and Christian confidence, I could hope to experience in this my new situation happy feelings; and, in order to keep this account as clear as human frailty and insufficiency would allow, to examine it every night when going to rest. He further recommended me to increase my knowledge, and to be attentive to everything tending to

extend my experience ; but chiefly to strive that each of my fellow-citizens should be satisfied that my conduct was based on the great precept of our Saviour, "Whatsoever ye would that men should do to you, do ye even so to them."

This kind and friendly letter, and other hints expressive of his feelings and sentiments, left on my mind a deep impression of the high responsibility attached to the situation of a judge. When I accepted it my health had been suffering under intense application to the various duties in the Fiscal's department ; and as those of Commissioner of the Court were alternately taken, I soon found relief by the intermediate days of rest ; and this, with the exercise I had whilst going on circuit in the same year, restored my health.

I had previously the offer of joining the Court by Lord Charles Somerset, but declined on motives of conscience, and the importance and responsibility attached to a judgeship. Also that of becoming the Sequestrator of the Colony ; and another by the Colonial Secretary, Colonel Bird, to be Landdrost of Swellendam ; but I preferred the situation I held, not being involved in pecuniary responsibilities.

It was my good fortune to have in 1823, as a brother judge on circuit, Petrus Johannes Truter, Esq. (son of Mr. Truter, with whom I had travelled in 1801), and in 1825, Johannes Christoffel Fleck, Esq., who served with me for several years as clerk in the Court's office.

The details of these circuits and cases tried, would alone make nearly a small volume. Suffice it to say that in 1823 we found the country in Albany, which had been taken and occupied by the settlers, uneasy and

*unsettled*. And some of the cases brought before us were conducted with great warmth—I may add, prejudice—against the court, as if acting under superior influence. However, as some of our new colonists had been disappointed in their expectations entertained on leaving home, and had great difficulties to struggle with, this was to us no matter of surprise, and my colleague, with me, resolved patiently but firmly to pursue our course of duty, irrespective of consequences.

In May, 1826, the Lieutenant-Governor Sir Richard Bourke, in council, considered that from the population in Cape Town and vicinity it was found necessary to establish an executive police therein, and that it was expedient, in order to give effect to that establishment, and for the speedier administration of justice, that a magistrate should be in daily attendance to take cognizance of all such matters, and dispose according to law of all such persons as should be brought before him by the police; and that one of the members of the Court of Justice should be appointed a permanent sitting Commissioner, retaining his seat in court, and His Honour was pleased to give me that appointment with a salary of £500 per annum. And the matters subjected to my jurisdiction were: “All misdemeanors which are not subject to a more severe punishment than correction in the public prison, temporary imprisonment, fines and confiscations in those cases relative to the public revenue and police, all complaints of masters of ships against their seamen, of tradesmen and others against their apprentices, of masters against their servants, whether freemen or slaves, and *vice versa*; and further, all complaints of parents against their children,

and in general all complaints lodged with the magistrate, not capable of amicable arrangement between the parties, and in which the public interest required that the party complained of should receive a correction proportionate to the misdemeanor."

Sentences exceeding a fine of £5 or one month's imprisonment were appealable.

The sessions were daily (Sundays excepted) from ten to four o'clock. Persons charged were, after due preliminary investigation, either to be committed for trial, discharged on bail, or otherwise disposed of. All prisoners were to be brought before the Commissioner within twenty-four hours, and the duties of a justice of the peace were also to be performed.

And thus daily occupied, I continued as permanent sitting Commissioner until January, 1828.

Meanwhile I learned that by a despatch from the Secretary of State, marked separate, dated in June, 1827, I had been appointed Judge of Police and Commissioner of the Court of Request. In the latter, my colleague was to be the Master of the Supreme Court.

By His Majesty's Charter of Justice, 24th August, 1827, and a proclamation of the Lieutenant-Governor, 10th December following, it appeared that the Supreme Court of this Colony should be opened on the 1st of January, 1828, and that the other Courts of Justice would be abolished; and on the 5th of January, 1828, I was appointed Judge of Police in Cape Town and Cape district, for continuing the powers heretofore committed to the permanent sitting Commissioner in Cape Town, and for extending the jurisdiction to Cape district (then containing the present Wynberg, Simon's Town,

Malmesbury, and Piketberg districts), and for continuing a Matrimonial Court therein, and to hold all inquests, together with the Superintendent of Police or his Deputy, in the same manner and form as the inquests were heretofore held before the members of the Court of Justice.

Previous to that appointment, I had received on the 1st December, 1827, commissions as Justice of the Peace for Cape Town and the district thereof, and Cape District; and on the 31st of the same month these commissions were further confirmed by a Government letter, under the great seal of the colony, to have taken effect from 1st January, 1828.

It not having been deemed expedient to establish a Court of Request, but to concentrate the duties of such court into those of a magistracy, I received on the 1st March, 1828, the appointment of Judge of Police and Resident Magistrate for Cape Town and district thereof, and Cape district, including the districts above mentioned, without further increase of salary, so that the duties of the Court of Landdrost and Heemraden and their Commissions, then abolished, were to be performed by me, and for some time I have been obliged to hold monthly courts as magistrate at Simon's Town.

Under a new system of administration of justice I found it not a very easy task to perform all the magisterial duties, especially of the distant magistracies above alluded to.

However, the confidence placed in me by the Lieut.-Governor (there was a doubt whether the whole could be performed by one person), the handsome salary of £800 attached to the situation, and the marked distinc-



tion I enjoyed, induced me to exert myself to the utmost, and, thanks to Providence, I was spared and supported to fulfil my task, until I obtained the situation of Civil Commissioner. The magistracy over these different districts continued for nearly ten years, when distinct magistrates were appointed. Meanwhile, under a commission dated 6th September, 1832, Sir Lowry Cole appointed me also Commissioner of the Court of Request for Slaves, under an order of His Majesty the King in Council of 2nd November, 1831, to improve the condition of slaves also in this colony.

As the appointments above mentioned closed my services under the former administration of justice, I will finish this section, to commence the next with my further proceedings under the new Charter of Justice.

## SECTION XII.

I continued as judge of police and resident magistrate, undisturbed until 16th May, 1834, when under the administration of the Governor, Sir Benjamin D'Urban, I was informed that, according to instructions received from His Majesty's Government conveyed in a despatch dated 31st December, 1833, the following arrangement was to take effect in the Cape district from the 1st of July, 1834.

The duties of the offices of civil commissioner and resident magistrate of the district were to be united, and invested in me, and the salary reduced to £500, with house-rent and travelling expenses. Fees to be carried to public account; and the duties of judge of police were separated from those of magistrate and added to the superintendent of police.

I thus became the chief civil officer in the Cape division, and as such collector of taxes, land-rent, fees and other public branches of revenue, inspector of lands and woods; I had to provide for public transport such as for circuit judges and other public officers; and superintendent of roads, public accountant of revenue and expenditure, contractor on behalf of Government, for tolls, mails, supplies for gaols and police establishments; I had to frame annually statistical returns, expedite commandos if required, — such as was the case in 1846 and 1852. In fact, to be all that Government thought necessary and could reasonably expect from an officer in charge of a division attached to the Capital, extending about one hundred and ninety miles in length, and divided into twenty-four

wards or field-corneteies. I had to make an annual circuit for collecting taxes and to obtain a general knowledge and information of the people, their proceedings, and other duties which could not be performed in office (and the revenue was in arrear some thousands of pounds), and upwards of one hundred and forty memorials for land had to be reported upon after local inspection, which in some instances extended to the very boundaries of my division. And with such duties added to those of this very extensive magistracy, the salary was reduced from £800 to £500, which I had in 1826 as permanent sitting commissioner exercising only a criminal jurisdiction, as described in the preceding section. Instead, therefore, of promotion I retrograded materially in position as a public servant; but this did not dishearten me.

When the kind Sir Benjamin D'Urban communicated this alteration to me, he did so most feelingly, and offered a retirement at a pension, which then would have amounted to about £460, or to take the appointment; but at that time of life and having thus far been occupied only in the Service, to which I had sacrificed every other pursuit, I preferred continuing, in hopes that a representation of my case would induce or enable my superiors at home to reconsider and decide upon it, according to its peculiar merits. And though afterwards the house-rent was allowed at £100 per annum, yet the reduction bore upon me so severely that even at the present moment I feel the effects of it.

With the salary of £800 I had undertaken the professional education of two sons, which I could not

withdraw without ruining their prospects, and I was led to incur other expenses, which, in expectation of such a measure, might have been avoided. And as father of a numerous family of children, requiring to be maintained and educated according to my station in life, I felt much disappointed; for Sir Richard Bourke, when fixing the salary at £800, considered it as secure as any of the judges appointed from home. In fact, a reference to my memorials and the despatches to the Secretary of State will sufficiently detail the effects it produced.

I was induced faintly to hope, from the answers received, that the moment the finances of the Colony were considered to be extricated from the difficulty which gave rise to the reduction, my case would meet with favourable consideration.

In a letter from the Colonial Office of 6th April, 1835, it was stated that the Earl of Aberdeen had perused my representation with the greatest attention, *and must admit most fully that the arrangements* (alluding to the reduction) *had pressed severely upon me*; yet as the necessity which led His Majesty's Government to curtail as much as possible the expense of the civil establishment in this Colony still existed, His Lordship apprehended that he could not, without injustice to many other meritorious public servants, entertain my claims, or hold out any hope of an increase to my salary, *until the state of the colonial finances should be such as to enable him to mark the disposition of Government to afford relief in every case in which hardship may be shown to have been inflicted on individuals.*

This was in reply to a despatch of Sir Benjamin D'Urban, of 16th September, 1834, in which His Excellency stated :

“ I earnestly beg your favourable attention to the enclosed statement of Mr. Borchers, civil commissioner and resident magistrate of the Cape district, because his long and past services, his value as a commissioner, judge, and magistrate, which it is impossible to overrate, and the great addition recently made to his labours and responsibility, while his emoluments have been suddenly and greatly reduced by the arrangement of the dispatch of December last, all constitute such powerful claims in his behalf, that it becomes an act of indispensable justice on my part to solicit your notice to the great loss which he sustained by a diminution of three eighths of his income at, as it were, a moment's warning.

“ Aware as I am of the financial difficulties of the present period, yet I cannot do otherwise than bring this particularly strong case before you.”

Feeling my difficulties increasing, I presented a second memorial; and in a despatch of 21st November, 1836, in reply, the Secretary of State stated :

*“ I have not perused Mr. Borchers' memorial without being deeply impressed with the hardship of his case, and entertain the strongest wish to afford him relief. I regret that I can only repeat the answer which I have been compelled to return to similar applications from you in favour of other public officers, namely, that it is impossible to consider any case of this kind as raising an isolated question to be decided separately upon its own merits, but that they must all be determined upon*

some general principle, in the adoption of which His Majesty's Government will be able to calculate on having at their disposal sufficient resources to obviate the danger of a new retraction."

This was in reply to a despatch of Sir Benjamin D'Urban of July, 1836, in which, with reference to his former despatch and my representation as having been one of the greatest sufferers by the arrangement regarding the reduction of salaries, he states :

"And now I cannot in justice to this gentleman, who is at once one of the oldest and most valuable of the public servants of the Colonial Government, decline to forward this his renewed memorial.

"All the statements of it are correct, and it is unnecessary to say that a sudden and unexpected loss of nearly one half or three eighths of his salary has pressed hard upon him ; in truth, it has deeply distressed him; and if some relief be not afforded, it must end in his comparative ruin at an advanced period of life, and with his large family, when his long and laborious services would rather have called—if any change had been made—for an increase than a diminution of his emoluments.

"It is impossible for me to speak too highly of Mr. Borchers' ability, zeal, and efficiency in the extensive and arduous duties which he has to perform, and I earnestly recommend him to your Lordship's favourable recommendation."

In 1838, when my pecuniary cares were increasing and also my duties, I again memorialised ; and Sir Benjamin D'Urban, in forwarding it to the Secretary of State, earnestly recommended it again to favourable

consideration. And, referring to his former despatches of 1834 and 1836, His Excellency stated :

“ I have so fully expressed my opinion at once of Mr. Borchers’ merits and of the extreme hardship of his case, that repeating that opinion now, I have only to add to it that the unexpected and sudden reduction of three eighths of his official income has in no respect diminished his zeal and able exertions in the public service, which have continued unabated and indefatigable. The arguments in his present memorial are, I conceive, strong and unanswerable.” And he drew attention to the revenue of the district under my administration having increased £7,342, and also, upon that ground, recommended the restoring of my salary to its former amount, and again urged earnestly the justice of my prayer.

But a despatch was received in reply from the Secretary of State (Lord Glenelg) stating, that having repeatedly expressed his inability to hold out any expectation of an early fulfilment of my wishes, he was now, however reluctantly, compelled to observe that the state of the financial affairs and prospects of the Colony placed it wholly out of his power to return a more favourable answer to my renewed application.

This blasted my hopes. I saw that the authorities at home, though feeling inclined, could not consistently (with the represented state of the finances of the Colony and the claims of other meritorious servants) entertain my case as an isolated one ; notwithstanding the Governor of the Colony recommended favourable consideration in the strongest terms, knowing how the measure

pressed upon me, under great increase of duties and responsibility. The position of myself and family became painful, for under the rules of service any act of insolvency might have deprived me of my situation. Fortunately, several kind friends supported me with their assistance; and by strict economy and denial of many comforts and necessities belonging to my station, and by leading a retired life, I gradually but slowly recovered myself.

My only hope was now promotion, and I sought redress by applying in a memorial to the Secretary of State, Lord Stanley. The Governor, Sir George Napier, forwarded it with his favourable opinion of my services, and I received an answer that it had pleased His Lordship to note my application.

Finding in 1844 that this also was of no avail, I applied that only the half, namely £100, should be restored of the £200, which I had lost in 1834, and Sir George had the kindness to state, that although he felt considerable delicacy in pressing upon the Secretary of State the favourable consideration of my claim,—especially as in some other instances he had declined to recommend applications from officers who suffered under the reduction of 1834, unless it were made a general measure—but that the length of my services and merits as a public servant seemed to him sufficient grounds for making an exception in my favour; requesting His Lordship to give the subject his most favourable consideration, and grant me during the period I retained my present office £100 per annum of increase to my salary.



Sir George's successor, Sir Peregrine Maitland, however, was requested to give further explanations and fuller report, and there the matter ended.

I made other attempts by verbal communications to the local authorities, but was told that the answers received by other high officials in similar applications left little or no hope of success.

Meanwhile, I saw the finances of the Colony considerably improved, and extricated out of their former difficulties,—expenses incurred of a nature different from the estimates prior to the reduction,—new appointments created, and the obstacle to which the Secretary of State alluded gradually removed,—and my hopes revived; but my case was not noticed and was left undecided, and I remained on the same salary received in 1826, and under considerable increase of duties and responsibility as before stated, and without additional emolument.

In fact, my account with Government since 1834, stood thus :

- (a) By the reduction *I* lost and Government gained £200 per annum,—thus, exclusive of interest, in 20 years, £4,000.
- (b) By accepting office, I saved Government £200 per annum since 1828, being the amount of pension which I could have drawn as a retired member of the Court of Justice, and thus in twenty-six years the amount of £5,200.
- (c) £462 per annum since 1834, being a pension offered, when I was about to be appointed civil commissioner, and thus a gain in twenty years (I calculated this in 1854) of about £9,000.

- (d) Full £1,200 by continuing in the service beyond the superannuation (sixty-fifth year of age) as fixed by the regulations on superannuated allowance for civil servants. I was then sixty-seven when thus calculating.

Thus the Treasury gained considerably by my continued services whilst as an individual my loss was great. The *results* and *effects* were to me :

- (a) No progress or advance, either in salary or promotion, since 1834.
- (b) No provision for widow or family in case of death.
- (c) Constant pecuniary care since 1834, in addition to the numerous and responsible public duties, —a matter which I did not conceal from my superiors, as appears by Sir Benjamin D'Urban's and Sir George Napier's despatches.
- (d) Dependence on assistance which the retention of my former salary would have spared to my feelings ; for to secure my independence as sole judge in a court in jurisdiction next to the supreme court of the Colony, the salary was originally fixed at £800.

Lastly, I applied to His Honour the Lieutenant-Governor, C. H. Darling, Esq., in 1852, to know what my pension would be in January, 1853, after a service of fifty-one years and two months. His Honour referred the question to the Honourable the Auditor-General, who calculated that it would amount to £456 per annum ; —considering, however, after fifty years' service, since 1806, I would be entitled to full pension, His Honour communicated the matter at my request to the Secretary of State, when a reference was made to the Lords of the

Treasury, who, however, found a difficulty in fixing the amount before the period had actually expired. Thus stood my case on the 31st March, 1854.

I omitted that an allowance of £27 annually for keeping a horse for public service was granted in 1834, but also withdrawn in 1848.

In making this statement, however, I cannot help expressing a feeling of gratitude to that benevolent Power who only knew the extent of my painful position, and who mercifully spared and preserved me in health of mind and body, to perform to the best of my ability my duty to society and family,—to the Government for constant employment,—and to my fellow-colonists for their indulgence and consideration during the long period of my service.

The recapitulation of these matters has been unavoidable, because it shows how justly Parliament (being acquainted with these facts) granted me a gratuity in compensation (partly) of my loss, and for services performed; and because it stands so closely connected with the sequel of my biography, and with the happy relief so generously introduced by our present Governor Sir George Grey. I will not conceal it, for it saved me from ruin.

When I have gone through the further details of my proceedings and public life, I hope to have an opportunity of expressing myself more fully as to my feelings on that subject. Could I be otherwise than highly sensible of the relief?

But let me defer this for the present and proceed to commence the next section of my memoirs.

## SECTION XIII.

IN April, 1854, I represented my case again by memorial to the Lieutenant-Governor, Mr. C. Darling, applying for consideration in consequence of my long services, the pecuniary losses caused by the reduction of my salary, and other disappointments experienced by me. This was forwarded to the Right Honourable the Secretary of State in June following, with this remark :

“ I believe that the details of Mr. Borchers’ statement will be found to be fully supported by the documents which accompanied it. The opinion expressed by former Governors of the Colony of high reputation will no doubt sufficiently recommend it to your Grace’s attention ; but I should be wanting in justice to the services of a most respectable, faithful, and zealous servant of the Crown,—who has carried on his duties under my immediate observation and direction during the last two years, and who cheerfully undertook at my request the uncompensated but important office of chairman of the Central Road Board at a moment when much difficulty was felt in adequately filling that office, if I did not add my own testimony, however valueless in comparison with that which Mr. Borchers has adduced from other sources, of the conscientiousness and efficiency with which he discharges all his duties, and of the respect and esteem entertained for him by the inhabitants of the Colony at large.”

And an answer was received as communicated to me by a Government letter of the 24th October, 1854, stating :

“ That if it was my object, as it would seem, to obtain compensation for those losses and disappointments, my

proper course would be to bring my case under the consideration of the Colonial Parliament."

Meanwhile, my case had attracted the notice of Parliament, for on the 19th September, 1854, Mr. John Fairbairn proposed in the House of Assembly, to move without notice, seconded by Mr. Hercules Crosse Jarvis :

"That in the opinion of this House, the salary of £500 per annum with £100 allowance for house-rent, drawn by P. B. Borchers, Esq., formerly member of the court of justice, and for many years past civil commissioner and magistrate of the Cape Division, is not equal to the reasonable claims of that valuable public servant, and that His Honour the Lieutenant-Governor's attention be requested to this case, in consideration of the long-continued, faithful, and meritorious services of this officer."

Mr. Speaker (C. J. Brand) put to the House whether this motion should be entertained without notice.

House assented.

Question put, and passed.

Mr. Fairbairn moved, seconded by Doctor Abercrombie : "That this resolution be conveyed to His Honour the Lieutenant-Governor by respectful address."

Question put and passed.

And this resolution was consequently conveyed to His Honour the Lieutenant-Governor by respectful address.

His Honour returned a message, stating : "That he will have much pleasure in communicating to Her Majesty's Government the resolution of the Honourable the House upon the subject of the long and faithful

services rendered to the British Crown by Mr. P. B. Borchers, the civil commissioner of the Cape Division, and takes the opportunity of informing the Honourable House, that having lately had occasion to bring those services under the notice of the Secretary of State, the Lieutenant-Governor felt it his duty to bear testimony to the conscientiousness and efficiency with which Mr. Borchers discharges his duties, and to the respect and esteem entertained for him by the inhabitants of the Colony at large."

On the 20th September, 1854, the Legislative Council also presented to His Honour the Lieutenant-Governor, by address, a resolution (the draft was brought up by Sir Andries Stockenstrom) unanimously adopted, stating :

"We, the president and members of the Legislative Council in Parliament assembled, having taken into consideration the long and valuable services rendered to this colony for upwards of fifty years by P. B. Borchers, Esq., civil commissioner of the Cape district, fifty-one years whereof have been devoted to the service of the British crown, respectfully request that your Honour may be pleased to bring the said services to the particular notice of Her Majesty's Government, with a view that Her Majesty may be graciously pleased to bestow on Mr. Borchers such mark of approbation as in her wisdom she shall see fit."

And His Honour replied by message : "That he would have much pleasure in communicating to Her Majesty's Government this resolution, in terms of the message returned to the House of Assembly, as above stated."

And these addresses were forwarded on the 19th October following to the Secretary of State. However, no reply was received.

On the 4th of May, 1855, His Excellency the Governor, Sir George Grey, forwarded a message to the House of Assembly, stating: "In reference to the address of the House of Assembly presented to the Lieutenant-Governor on the 19th September last, the Governor now transmits to the House of Assembly the accompanying papers connected with the claims of Mr. Borchers. Among these will be found copies of two despatches addressed by the Lieutenant-Governor to the Secretary of State upon this subject.

"In his despatch of the 19th of October, the Lieutenant-Governor states: 'That he has no doubt that Parliament will concur in the grant to Mr. Borchers of any sum of money or additional allowance which Her Majesty's Government may deem fitting and just under the circumstances of his case.'

"The Governor thinks it right to call the attention of the Assembly to this subject, because there appears little probability of his receiving an answer from the Secretary of State to the Lieutenant-Governor's despatch regarding Mr. Borchers' claims before this session terminates.

"The Governor also considers it most probable that Her Majesty's Government will be unwilling to come to any conclusion upon the nature and amount of any special grant that should be made to Mr. Borchers, because the case is an unusual one, not provided for in the colonial regulations; and it will most likely appear to them fitting that the same body from which the

recommendation in Mr. Borchers' favour has emanated should decide in what manner and to what extent his claims should be met.

"The Governor assures the Assembly that he will be happy to concur with Parliament in doing that which may be thought just and right in the case."

On a motion of Mr. Advocate Watermeyer (at present a judge of the Supreme Court), the House resolved itself into a committee on the Governor's message above mentioned,—Mr. John Barry in the chair.

Mr. Watermeyer spoke—as reported in the *Commercial Advertiser* of 5th May, 1855—in high terms of the meritorious and unremitting labours of Mr. Borchers since the year 1800, when he entered the public service, and moved, "That in consideration of the importance of Mr. Borchers' services in the colony during a period of fifty-five years, a gratuity be granted to him of £1,000, and that an addition be made to his salary of £100 per annum."

He was seconded by Mr. Maynard.

Mr. Arderne thought £1,000 not sufficient and would support a vote of a larger sum.

The Auditor-General, the Hon. Wm. Hope, expressed his high sense of the long and faithful services of Mr. Borchers, who, notwithstanding his advanced age, was always ready to take any amount of work that could be put upon him. He considered, however, that an addition of salary would not answer the generous intentions of the House, considering the age of Mr. Borchers, and he would suggest that a larger gratuity, without an increase of salary, would better meet the circumstances of the case.



Mr. Paterson, Mr. Fairbairn, Dr. Abercrombie, and several other speakers expressed their approval of this suggestion, and on a motion by Mr. Paterson, it was *unanimously* resolved that the gratuity be £2,000, without an increase of salary.

On a motion by Mr. Ziervogel, seconded by Mr. Jarvis, it was resolved that the resolution now adopted be transmitted to His Excellency the Governor by address.

In the Legislative Council, Mr. Rutherford moved that the item on the estimates, "Grant to the Civil Commissioner, P. B. Borchers, £2,000," do stand.

Mr. Wood proposed as an amendment that it should only be £1,000.

Sir Andries Stockenstrom said: "If it were not for the principle that the Council cannot add a single iota to the sums laid down in the estimates, he would have wished to have considerably increased this item. He could not believe that even his honourable and learned friend (Mr. de Wet) would oppose this grant. He could show that if they would be truly economical, they must have such men as Mr. Borchers in their service. Mr. Borchers was entitled to a pension of £200 per annum in 1828, and if he had taken that and resorted to some other mode of livelihood, he might now have been a rich man. His £200 per annum has been saved since 1828, for you would have had to pay another magistrate, had he not filled that office. In 1834, £200 was deducted from his salary; it was a cruel thing to him to have to step down from the bench to take an inferior situation. He might have become a farmer, or a merchant, and pocketed his £200 per annum. He might have

retired afterwards on a pension of £460, when his salary was reduced from £800 to £600. He might thus have pocketed £9,600; but he remained at his office without complaining of the reduction. He only said that it was unfortunate. We talked yesterday of magistrates, and the difficulty of getting them. Now, when we have such a magistrate as this, struggling through life, latterly in distress, with a family to support, after fifty-five years of toil in the public service, a man whose patriotism has saved the colony in cash upwards of £10,000, are you going to allow him to be crushed by misfortunes? What is £2,000 for such a man? When the Council asked for £2 for a man who did not deserve it, he would heartily join with his honourable friend (Mr. Wood), but now he hoped that his honourable friend would not cast a sort of reflection on that grant, which ought to have been given with all possible grace. He should be extremely sorry to see the amendment pressed.

“The President (Chief Justice Sir John Wylde) would give his most cordial support to the motion. With regard to the amount, he thought that the last speaker had proved that it was no remuneration but a sum of money that was due. The question is not whether we should give a present, but whether we should pay a debt that is fairly due. If he thought the colony could not pay it now, he would rather make it a funded debt of the colony than refuse payment.

“Mr. Godlonton rose to state that with the highest respect for the character of Mr. Borchers and a close appreciation of the many services he had rendered to the country, he had intended to support his honourable friend (Mr. Wood), but he must confess after what he

had heard from the honourable Baronet, that he was not now disposed to do so. And he hoped that his honourable friend would withdraw his amendment.

“Mr. Ebdon supported the motion. He considered that the Council would be acting contrary to every principle of honour and justice should it refuse this just claim of Mr. Borchers, who was now old and embarrassed.

“Mr. de Wet would not speak against the original motion, but he felt called upon to say that he should vote against it.

“The amendment for £1,000 was put and lost without a division, and the item (£2,000) passed.”

On the 4th May, 1855 (incidentally the forty-ninth anniversary of my wedding-day), the House of Assembly sent an address to His Excellency the Governor, Sir George Grey, stating :

“In conformity with a resolution of the House of Assembly adopted this day, I have the honour respectfully to request that, in consideration of the importance of Mr. P. B. Borchers' services to this colony during a period of fifty-five years, your Excellency may be pleased to cause to be placed on the estimates a gratuity of £2,000 to be paid to that gentleman.

(Signed) “C. J. BRAND, Speaker.”

And His Excellency returned a message, as follows :

“The Governor begs to acquaint the Honourable the House of Assembly that in compliance with the terms of their address of the 4th instant, he will direct that a sum of £2,000 shall be placed on the estimates as a gratuity to Mr. Borchers, in consideration of the

importance of the services which that gentleman has rendered to this colony during a period of fifty-five years."

And I received a letter from the Colonial Office, dated 9th June, 1855, acquainting me that the legislature of this colony had, by an act passed in the last session, granted me a sum of £2,000 in consideration of my long public services in this colony and of my claim upon the liberality of Parliament, arising out of the loss which I had experienced by the reduction made some years ago in the salary which I had enjoyed; mentioning also:

"It has afforded His Excellency much pleasure to recommend and sanction this act of the two Houses. The special acknowledgment and reward of the services of a public officer by the legislature is a mark of distinction, which cannot fail to be the more prized by the individual so honoured, as it is one of rare occurrence.

"His Excellency congratulates you upon having been the first officer to receive it from the newly constituted Parliament of this colony.

"I feel much gratification at being the channel of making this communication to you, and being able to inform you that you can receive the amount at the treasury whenever it shall be convenient for you to claim it.

"I have, &c.,

(Signed) "RAWSON W. RAWSON,

"Colonial Secretary."

My reply to the Colonial Secretary of the 11th following was thus :

“SIR,—I have the honour to acknowledge the receipt of your letter of the 9th instant, acquainting me that the legislature of this colony had, by an act passed in the late session, granted me a sum of £2,000.

“I feel highly honoured by the favourable consideration of my services. My gratitude I hope to express by rendering all further services in my power in promoting the public interests of this colony whilst it pleases Providence to spare and enable me to do so.

“To His Excellency the Governor I beg to express my heartfelt thanks for his recommendation and sanction of that act of the two Houses. The special acknowledgment and reward of my services as a public officer by the legislature is indeed a mark of distinction highly prized and honoured by me, and I consider myself eminently distinguished by being, as you observed, the first officer to receive such a reward from the newly-constituted Parliament of this colony.

“Allow me to express to you, sir, my deep sense of obligation for your kind furtherance of my case, both in Parliament and with my superiors. The amount so liberally granted will be indeed to me and mine a great relief, and remove from my mind much anxiety and care. In fact, it will contribute most materially to my comfort and ease in the days of advanced age, and approaching close of my long career.”

I commemorate this gracious act of liberality with feelings of deep gratitude to Him who thus favourably disposed the hearts of men to my relief; and to those gentlemen who so deeply felt and supported my cause.

The grant, I repeat, was the saving of myself and family.

The illness of Major Wolfe, magistrate of Wynberg and acting judge and superintendent of police in Cape Town, and his subsequent demise, and the absence on leave of the superintendent, Baron de Lorentz, in Europe, caused my being appointed, in addition to my other duties, to act for the Baron from 13th March, 1855, to 29th May, 1856, and I received, through the Colonial Secretary, His Excellency the Governor's high appreciation of the zeal and efficiency with which I had discharged these extra duties during the long protracted absence of the Baron in England.

In December, 1856, however, I was attacked with serious and alarming dyspepsia, attended with great exhaustion of nervous energy; and it was the opinion of my physician, Doctor Samuel Bailey, that under my advanced age of seventy years, the sedentary life and mental exertion to which I was obliged to submit (especially in my magisterial capacity in Cape Town under protracted sessions in court, together with my other duties) must lead to a similar attack,—from which in January following I had but partially recovered,—and ultimately prove fatal.

And this opinion being corroborated by Doctor Eveleigh, who had previously attended me, and the duties of office being considerably increased by an extended jurisdiction (added to the desire which I had long cherished to lead a domestic and retired life, after a long period of severe public service, and now advanced in age), I resolved to apply, by memorial of 19th January, 1857, for the superannuation allowance

fixed by the regulations mentioned by circular from the Colonial Office of 1st March, 1852, and the Act of Parliament, and also the Treasury Minute thereto attached; and I received from the Colonial Office a letter dated 27th February, 1857, stating as follows:

“SIR,—I am directed by His Excellency the Governor to convey to you his acceptance of the resignation of offices of Civil Commissioner and Resident Magistrate tendered in your letter of 19th ultimo.

“The delay in intimating this to you has arisen from the necessity of attending to certain formalities before deciding on your application. But His Excellency has consulted your wish by losing no time in making arrangements for relieving you from the duties of your offices, and your retirement will date from the 1st instant.

“His Excellency, before his departure for the frontier, directed me, when I made that communication to you, to express to you his sense of the value of your public services throughout the unusually long period during which you have been employed under Her Majesty’s Government in this colony, and of the ability and unwearied zeal with which you have executed the various offices with which you have been intrusted. His Excellency is not unmindful that some of these duties, and not the least onerous or responsible, have been discharged without any remuneration.

“It has fallen to your lot, and few have enjoyed a similar privilege, to receive from the colonial legislature an unusual recognition of the claims which you possess on the consideration and liberality of your fellow-countrymen.

“Your resignation has been the signal for all those who have been more recently connected with you in your official duties to offer you the homage of their respect and regard.

“His Excellency would deem it a serious loss to the Government and the public to be deprived of your services, if he did not feel that, after a continuous and increasing employment of more than half a century, these could be further prolonged only at risk of your health, which he hopes you may long enjoy, to enable you still to give your services in those less onerous offices in which you have expressed your readiness to continue to act.

“His Excellency will recommend to Her Majesty’s Government to grant you a retiring allowance equal to the full amount of your late salary and allowance, viz., £600 per annum, and he will allow you to draw that amount from the 1st instant.”

“I have, &c.,”

(Signed) “RAWSON W. RAWSON,

“Colonial Secretary.”

This letter was published in the *Government Gazette* of 20th March, 1857, with the following notice:

“Colonial Office, Cape of Good Hope,  
18th March, 1857.

“His Excellency the Governor having been pleased to allow Petrus Borchardus Borchards, Esq., to resign the appointment which he lately held of Civil Commissioner and Resident Magistrate of the Cape Division, after an uninterrupted employment of upwards of



fifty-six years in the public service of this colony, has considered it due to so old and meritorious a public servant to make known the high opinion entertained by His Excellency of Mr. Borchers' public conduct, and the terms in which, on retirement, his services have been acknowledged.

"His Excellency has therefore directed the publication of the annexed (abovementioned) letter, addressed to Mr. Borchers by the Colonial Secretary.

"By Command of His Excellency the Governor,  
(Signed) "RAWSON W. RAWSON,  
"Colonial Secretary."

My reply was dated 4th March following, and in acknowledging the receipt of that letter, I stated thus :

"His Excellency's kind expressions with regard to my public services have been indeed most gratifying to my feelings, and I beg to request you will have the goodness to communicate to His Excellency the high sense and estimate attached by me to the sentiments expressed in your letter.

"If my services have been productive of public good, I can with truth affirm that they have ever been rendered to the best of my ability from a sense of duty and from a sincere attachment to the Government I have so long had the honour to serve.

"I could not expect greater reward, or anything more pleasing to my feelings, than your mentioning that my resignation has been the signal for all those who had been more recently connected with me in my official duties, to offer me the homage of their respect and regard.

“To the good opinion of my superiors and fellow-servants I have always attached great value, and their recent testimonials after my long period of service have produced in my mind sentiments of the most sincere thankfulness and gratitude.

“Allow me to assure His Excellency of my continued readiness to render my services when and wherever they may be deemed acceptable to promote the public good ; and be pleased personally to receive my thanks for your own kind and courteous consideration.”

Having been offered by the Colonial Secretary to continue as chairman of the Central Road Board, I considered that my successor, Capt. Hill, might from his daily attendance in town be more ready and at hand to perform the duties required, and declared myself willing to continue as an unofficial member in the room of Mr. Reitz, who had resigned, and I was consequently appointed by proclamation of 28th February, 1857 ; so that at present I still hold that situation, and that of justice of the peace in Cape Town and district, member of the committee under Ordinance 97 for registry of certain lands, road magistrate, and government member of the council of the South African College.

The last, and not least gratifying to my feelings, was the subscription list opened in May, 1857, for a piece of plate, to be presented to me as late Civil Commissioner and Resident Magistrate, as a token of the high regard and esteem in which I was held by the inhabitants of Cape Town and district.

It was headed by Mr. Robert Granger, a merchant in Cape Town, and signed by upwards of one hundred and

sixty subscribers, amongst whom were His Excellency the Governor, the Colonial Secretary, the Treasurer-General, the Attorney-General, the Auditor-General, the Astronomer Royal, a Judge of the Supreme Court, the Civil Engineer, and others of distinction, and many of the respectable merchants and kind friends in town and country, and amounted to upwards of £140.

On the 6th of June following a meeting was held in the committee-room of the Public Library. E. Landsberg, Esq., a merchant and member of the Central Road Board, was in the chair, and the undermentioned gentlemen were appointed to form a committee for carrying out the arrangements for the testimonial, viz. :

The Honourable W. Porter, the Honourable W. Hope, Messrs. J. D. Thomson, E. Landsberg, and John Reid, and Mr. John Honey as treasurer and secretary.

It being understood that it was my wish that the plate to be presented should be in nine pieces, so that I might bequeath one of them as a heirloom to each of my children, the committee resolved to act accordingly.

Consequently, my friend Mr. Alexander Macdonald, of the house of Macdonald, Busk, & Co., being in England, was requested to order the plate and manage the executing and forwarding the same to this colony. (We were, incidentally, born in the same house.)

It arrived safe in January, 1858, and consists of a silver cup, inscribed as follows : " Tribute to impartial administration of justice with mercy," and the names of the committee above mentioned ;

Two candelabras ;

A soup tureen ;

Six dishes of electro-plate, silver mounted,

each bearing the following inscription : “ Testimonial to Petrus Borchardus Borchers, Esq., Civil Commissioner and Resident Magistrate for Cape Town, presented on his retirement, 1st February, 1857, after a service of fifty-six years in the Colony of the Cape of Good Hope, by his friends, as a token of esteem and regard ;” and the family coat of arms ; to which was added the motto I adopted, “ Solo Deus salus,” “ Salvation in God alone,” in Dutch, “ Heil alleen van God.”

On Saturday, the 6th February, 1858, a large number of the principal inhabitants of Cape Town assembled in the Commercial Exchange for the purpose of presenting to my friend, Mr. Robert Granger, and myself, the public testimonials which had recently arrived from England. Mr. Granger’s was from his fellow-citizens, as a mark of their admiration of the noble and humane act which he performed just a year before, when he was the means under Providence of saving nine lives from a wreck at Green Point.

On the motion of Captain J. M. Hill (my successor), the Honourable Mr. Justice Bell (acting Chief Justice) took the chair, and stated the object of the meeting, which was to do honour to a magistrate who had discharged magisterial and other public functions in this colony for fifty-six years. His (the learned judge’s) own personal experience did not warrant him in saying anything except this, that during the time he had been in the colony—the Attorney-General would correct him if he was wrong—only one appeal had been made from Mr. Borchers’ judgments. If, therefore, he did not know more of him it was perhaps his own fault. If his

decisions had been less satisfactory to the public, he would no doubt have known more about them.

The Attorney-General (the Honourable W. Porter) said :

“ Mr. Borchers, I have been requested by the subscribers to the testimonial now upon the table to present it to you in their name and on their behalf. The duty of doing so is to myself personally a very grateful one. But grateful as it is, I should have declined it, had it been one that would have demanded from me a laboured or lengthened address, or more than a few simple and sincere words expressive of the feelings of regard and esteem which are embodied in this testimonial. Were I to dwell upon, or even shortly to recount, the various steps of your long career in this colony (a career which began before men who are now advanced in life were born), I should be led into great and wholly unnecessary detail. The public know your history already and do not need that it should be repeated. From the day when as a stripling you first entered the service of the public, under the then Government of this colony, to the day when after completing the six and fifty years of public service, just referred to by the learned judge who fills the chair, you retired from official life, your integrity, your diligence, and your prudence were such as to obtain at once the warm approval of your superiors in office, and of your fellow-citizens of every class, and creed, and colour (cheers).

“ The latest and chiefest of your labours were connected with the administration of justice. You gave satisfaction to the suitors in your court, so that of your decisions scarcely any were appealed from, and almost

none reversed (the learned judge has spoken of but one appeal, and even *that* I think not ending in reversal): these are things of record. But the degree in which for eighteen years I was conversant with your proceedings as a magistrate, and occasionally consulted upon them, enables me more than most men to bear testimony to the love of justice by which you were animated, and to the sense of responsibility under which you made it a matter of duty to weigh and consider the case of the humblest individual in the community, just as much as the case of the personage of the highest social station (cheers). And you have had your reward. In saying this, I do not refer to written testimonials from governors and high functionaries, of which you possess very many; nor do I refer to the great and unprecedented honour which was done to you by the Parliament of this colony, by a vote of which the pecuniary value to a man far from wealthy was but the smallest portion of its worth. I refer to a reward higher and more to be prized than testimonials of governors and votes of parliament, the cordial and universal regard, and esteem of your fellow-colonists, for, except as a token of regard and esteem, the plate now before you could be of small value. But such as it is, the subscribers present it to you, in the hope that you will accept it in the kind and good feeling in which it is given,—that you may long live to use it,—and that when in God's good time, full of years and usefulness, you shall rest from your labours, it may serve to remind your children that they are the descendants of a man who, during a long life, preserved in public and private an unspotted reputation, and left to them an inheritance more precious than silver and

gold,—that of an upright character and honourable name (cheers). Sir! with these remarks, I now, on behalf of the subscribers, present to you their testimonial.”

My reply was as follows :

“GENTLEMEN,—To receive at the close of my public career of upwards of half a century a testimonial of regard and esteem by those who had an opportunity of observing my proceedings as a public functionary, is a position imposing obligations and a debt of gratitude which I never can adequately discharge. It raises feelings and sentiments which I may attempt to impart, but my feeble language cannot perfectly convey. To His Excellency the Governor, to the several civil servants, to many of our respectable merchants, and to those of my fellow-citizens who have done me the honour to subscribe to the testimonial now presented, and especially to my, on this day, distinguished friend, Mr. Robert Granger, who opened the list as a subscriber, I feel indeed much obliged. To the gentlemen of the committee who so kindly undertook to manage and order the plate, and to the honorary secretary, Mr. John Honey, who took an active share in the arrangements, I beg to offer my sincere acknowledgments. To my friend, Mr. Alexander Macdonald, who being in England had the kindness, as I am informed, to forward the object of the subscribers, I feel also much indebted for the trouble taken and interest shown in this instance. I intend, gentlemen, to leave and divide this plate amongst my children, so that they and their descendants may commemorate with gratitude the distinction shown to their ancestor on this to them and myself memorable

day. I hope also that this munificent reward may prompt those attached to the public service to exert themselves for the public benefit and welfare of our community at large, being now convinced that among the South Africans there are those who will not overlook merit. Alluding to the 'administration of justice tempered with mercy,' as expressed in the inscription, I can only state that often feeling how temptation and opportunity (if not preserved) could have placed me in the position of those who were to suffer under the pains and penalties of the law, I could not refrain from leaning to mercy. I felt but too strongly how imperfect we are, under execution of the most solemn duties, notwithstanding the best resolutions and intentions. With these sentiments I will now accept the handsome testimonial presented, and retire to my quiet retreat, under the hope and prayer that I may in the bosom of my family as yet be spared to rejoice in this and many other blessings which a benevolent Father has in His mercy bestowed on me, and to remember my friends, who have so evidently shown their good-will towards me. And now, worthy Attorney-General, allow me to remark how much I feel for the honour of your presenting the testimonial on behalf of the subscribers, and the mode of expressing your sentiments. I am afraid that your kind feeling overrated my deserts. Receive, on this occasion, my special thanks for the legal advice you have given me whenever requested, and the candid and courteous manner in which you responded to my official appeals. You have in that and other respects been to me a warm friend; never did I apply in vain. And lastly, gentlemen, I take leave with feelings of real



gratitude; and as it may probably be my last appearance on the stage of public life, let me once more assure you that I attach great value to the good opinion entertained by so many friends. Receive my best wishes for your welfare and success in life, and remember with indulgence and kindness your now aged—but still to your public cause—devoted countryman and friend (cheers)."

What my feelings were on the occasion I can hardly describe. Under the display of such a substantial proof of esteem and regard, so publicly and handsomely shown, I was overpowered, and happy to find a moment of retreat and relief to give vent to the effects it had produced.

Thus closed a career of public life in this colony, I believe unprecedented for length, connected with important and interesting circumstances.

My chief object in publishing this plain narrative is :

1. To express to my superiors in the most public and lasting manner, in my power, my gratitude for protection, and the graceful mode in which my retirement was granted.
2. To acknowledge to the Parliament of my country my relief, by their grant of a gratuity and the just and equitable decision in my case.
3. To thank my fellow-servants, citizens, and friends for the noble manner in which they testified their esteem and regard, by presenting a handsome tribute, intended to be kept in remembrance by myself and my descendants.
4. To leave to my young countrymen and offspring engaged in the public service of my native land, an example, and advice, to persevere in

the course of their respective duties, even under painful and gloomy prospects.

5. To show that in the service of this country there is honour as well as a pecuniary reward, on properly reaching the termination of a public course.
6. To have an opportunity of confessing that after careful review of my life, I have to regret that "much has been left undone which ought to have been done, and much has been done which ought not to have been done," and that I am conscious that many *imperfections* and *shortcomings* mark the traces of my public and private life ; and under such conviction, and feelings I hope the indulgent reader will not censure *that* which appears as if mentioned to my own praise, for I could not state the truth without relating facts as they occurred.
7. To close with my expression of humble thanks to the great Disposer of my fate for His infinite goodness and mercy shown up to this my advanced day of life ; so that I may say, " Bless the Lord, O my soul, and forget not all His benefits."

And now I will continue my narrative by adding some sections connected with more of my proceedings in public and private life, collected since writing the above, at Bellevue, Wynberg, and closed 24th April, 1858. These, I believe, will be read not without some interest, especially by my colonial friends.

## SECTION XIV.

In November, 1851, after the second reading of an ordinance for preventing the practice of settling or squatting on Government land in the Legislative Council, it appeared that reports were in circulation in some districts in the west of the Colony which had excited and continued to excite very great and general alarm. The reports were to the effect that the coloured classes in those districts meditated a simultaneous attack upon the white population for the purpose of destroying them, and of then assuming the ownership of the country; and that the approaching 1st of December (being the anniversary day of the emancipation of slavery in this colony) had been fixed upon for the execution of this murderous design; and Government deemed it necessary to appoint Messrs. F. B. Pinney, resident magistrate of Simon's Town, and C. Piers, of Tulbagh, and myself as commissioners to inquire without delay into the origin and foundation of the reports in question.

We received special instructions dated 20th November, 1851, stating the views of Government. The appointment of the commission was not to be taken as evidence that the Government gave credit to these reports; but the inquiry had been decided upon in the confidence that the effect of it would be to dispel the alarm under which the inhabitants of Koeberg, Tygerberg, and a few other places had for some time laboured, by showing that it rested upon no adequate foundation.

We were authorized to cause the arrest and commitment of any person who should be proved to have said or done anything manifesting :

1. That there is a conspiracy in existence to effect some unlawful end, in which conspiracy the person in question is a participator; or
2. That the person in question has, by some advised speaking, solicited others to form such a conspiracy. No person against whom such charges shall have been substantiated could be permitted at large without adding to the existing alarm; but the commissioners will at the same time bear in mind that nothing could more powerfully contribute to obtain belief for the worst reports in circulation than arrests and committals; and that if they be satisfied that no deliberate plot or plan has been concocted, it is not at every random word uttered at the time when the coloured classes see themselves suspected, that should be held to justify such grave and serious proceedings.

A portion of the inquiry was further to ascertain :

1. Whether the restlessness, if any, of the coloured classes has arisen from, or is in any way connected with, the Squatters Bill before Council?
2. Whether, in the opinion of the farmers and others of the districts which the commissioners are about to visit, such a law as that then before the Council was needed?
3. Whether the measure is considered by those favourable to its principle to be one which should be enacted at the present time, and if not, why not?

With such instructions the tone in our intercourse with the inhabitants with whom we were to mix was mainly to depend upon the results of our inquiry ; and if we were happily satisfied that there was no real ground of alarm, it was considered important and beneficial to explain misconceptions, so as to reduce alarming rumours to their true magnitude, and we were by every means within our reach to endeavour to restore public confidence.

Being chairman of the Commissioners, I was considered, as resident magistrate of the Cape district, to possess all necessary powers for carrying out the intended inquiry ; and we were, besides, furnished with commissions constituting us justices of the peace of Malmesbury and Worcester.

In consequence of these instructions we proceeded to the country, and after fifteen days' absence reported :

That we had slightly deviated from the route laid down in our instructions by visiting, in addition to D'Urban, Malmesbury, and Worcester, the following places, viz., Groenekloof, Tulbagh, Wellington, Paarl, and Stellenbosch ; and as the same alarm was not every where equally manifest, we took each place separately and reviewed,

1. The actual state of feeling subsisting at our arrival.
2. The ground of alarm as elicited from evidence obtained on the spot.
3. The nature and value of the evidence tendered to us.
4. The apparent effect of our proceedings.

And we could report confidently :

“That we had not discovered the trace of any conspiracy on the part of the coloured population, and that we firmly believed no such intention did exist in their minds.”

We were satisfied that a panic of no ordinary description had existed, and still existed, though far less on the part of the farmers, particularly of Koeberg and Malmesbury.

At D’Urban we examined twenty-two witnesses, and were met by a large concourse of farmers in the utmost consternation. Reports of the most alarming and exaggerated description were rife ; and altogether the sensation evinced far exceeded in degree that painful condition for which we had been prepared by the documents which had been laid before Council.

The houses in the villages were deserted, numbers of the families had congregated in one dwelling towards evening, where they remained till the next morning—the inhabitants had armed themselves and were patrolling in small bodies. During our stay the alarm continued, notwithstanding the opportunity we took (which a numerous assemblage at church on an intervening Sabbath gave us) to quiet as much as lay in our power the fears that were aroused.

We were frequently shocked by the unscrupulous assertions of some and the mischievous proceedings of others of the witnesses, such conduct having an evident tendency to debase a class whose welfare and social improvement has ever been, and still was, an object of much solicitude with the British Government.

We found that an influential inhabitant had not only studiously made a collection of all the idle rumours afloat (as to the reported rise of the blacks at this end of the Colony,) but had taken the utmost pains to circulate the same. In his notice he represented the imminent danger to be apprehended from the coloured classes on a particular day, entering minutely into the details of the plan to be carried out by them, &c., and prescribing the course to be pursued by the farmers, when that day should arrive. The course by him adopted was one of peculiar mischief, well calculated to inspire alarm, and produce the consequent panic which we so unhappily witnessed.

Under examination his replies were extremely vague and contradictory, and so pitiable indeed was his position under cross-examination, that could we have banished design from our thoughts, and be certain that he was the only source of mischief, we would willingly have attributed *his* part to a mixture of self-importance and imbecility.

The inquiry closed with our conviction that the reports spread were unfounded, and we had the satisfaction to find on our quitting D'Urban that the alarm had in a great measure subsided.

We further proceeded to the missionary station at Groenekloof, and calling at the houses of various influential farmers, communicated the result of our inquiry. A charge had been made against two Hottentots of that institution, which, on being sifted, proved of the usual slender description.

We had every assistance from the missionaries, and left the place under the firm conviction that suspicions of

disquietude at Groenekloof at any rate must be unfounded; and our previously formed opinion received strength from the fact that the whole of the population, (saving only a few of the old people) were, according to custom, at the season of the year out harvesting.

Proceeding to Malmesbury next, we found on our arrival the magistrate's office literally crowded by the farmers of the district; rumours of the most exciting character prevailed, and apparently a general stagnation in the business of the harvest. We had a long examination of witnesses, but could not extract any one particular to warrant even the supposition of a deliberate conspiracy among the coloured classes. The evidence was principally hearsay, founded on conjecture and signifying nothing. But one man had been heard to make use of language (although it was supposed only in jest) which was construed as conveying hostile intent towards the farmers.

Reports, however, from a distance of a most false and malignant character kept pouring in during our stay at Malmesbury. The magistrate, Mr. W. Bergh, proceeded to Berg River and St. Helena Bay, from whence these unfounded rumours had come.

A report having reached us that a number of farmers of the district and their families had assembled at the place of Field-commandant Lochner, about eight or ten miles from the village, there to meet the dreaded outbreak by the coloured people, we repaired thither *en route* to Tulbagh. Reports had not exaggerated the picture of grief and distress at that farm. On entering the house we beheld a large number of women and children in a pitiable state of alarm, reading their



bibles and hymns and other religious books. Their fathers and husbands (about seventy-five in number) were all provided with arms. We endeavoured to impress upon these panic-stricken people the groundlessness of their fears, but with little effect, and we left the place an hour afterwards, urging in the most earnest manner upon the field commandant the necessity for using his influence to the same end.

We understood that, literally, some of the farms had been left in charge of the coloured people, who proceeded quietly with harvesting as usual, conscious, I dare say, that the alarm was unfounded and of their own innocence.

Having proceeded to Tulbagh we found no inquiry necessary, for it was evident that perfect tranquillity prevailed. On our way to Worcester we communicated to the most influential farmers the result of our inquiries and found also that place in the same state. On touching at Wellington, the justice of the peace and field-cornet reported that there had been a good deal of alarm, but that all was now quiet. We found the field-cornet a very intelligent man, and he assured us of his perfect confidence in the coloured classes within his field-cornetcy, who had all to a man volunteered their services in case of need. Both at the Paarl and Stellenbosch further investigation was unnecessary on our part, and we left these towns perfectly tranquil and were assured of the absence of all local alarm.

From these proceedings, of which the above is but an outline, we were unanimous in coming to the following conclusions, namely :

1. That reports have been in circulation, and up to our visit at each place were in circulation,

calculated, if literally understood, to excite very great and very general alarm.

2. That such reports are in no one particular founded on fact, no simultaneous attack on the whites ever having been meditated by the coloured population at this end of the Colony, nor has any settled or organized plan of conspiracy in the slightest degree existed ; and
3. That we think it just possible that the random expressions of some of the returned volunteers may have added to an excitement already in motion, but we have no evidence whatever to connect this business in the remotest degree with the rebellion on the frontier.

And with regard to the Squatters Bill, we found that in the districts of Cape and Malmesbury, where a large proportion of the coloured people are located and the greatest number employed, none of them could be affected by that bill ; and that in the districts of Tulbagh and Worcester, where a number of coloured persons are in occupation of waste lands belonging to Government, particularly in Cold Bokkeveld, these parties might be affected by the enactment of a Squatters Bill. But no disaffection among these had appeared.

And though such a bill appears necessary, yet there were many opinions, and we agreed with them, that the passing of such a law at the present moment might be viewed by the coloured class as an act of oppression, and a triumph by another class over their feelings and interests, and lead to a permanent estrangement of good feeling between both employers and employed.

We were, however, decidedly of opinion that measures should be taken to prevent any addition to the numbers of occupiers of waste lands, and eventually to their complete ejectment, except in particular cases, which should be dealt with according to their individual merits.

After submitting certain points for consideration, we closed the report by remarking that, in the then existing circumstances of the colony, nothing could be more unfortunate or ill-timed than this state of things; and we were persuaded that the feelings of antagonism which it had unfortunately revived were not likely to pass away so rapidly as the panic under which the farmers have been labouring.

In their case the coloured people had unhappily discovered that the apprehensions which have been awakened in their minds, of sentiments and feelings opposed to them, were not generally like the hostile feelings which have been so unjustly imputed to them.

The result of this inquiry, however, was, that the alarm gradually subsided, leaving no inimical feeling apparently between the parties, peace and tranquillity was restored, and the Squatters Bill was dropped in Council.

The commissioners had the satisfaction of receiving the thanks of the Council, in a letter addressed to me, of the following tenor, viz. :

“ Council Office, December 22, 1851.

“ SIR,—I have the honour to inform you that the following resolution was proposed by the Attorney-General and seconded by Mr. Godlonton, and carried

unanimously in the Legislative Council on Friday last, the 19th. Resolved :

“ ‘ 1. That the thanks of the Council are severally due, and are hereby given, to P. B. Borchers, Esq., do., do., to F. B. Pinney, Esq., and do., do., to C. Piers, Esq., for their services in conducting with so much care and marked ability their laborious inquiry into the subject of the alarming reports in circulation in the Cape, Malmesbury, Worcester and Stellenbosch Divisions, regarding an alleged conspiracy amongst the coloured classes to attack the white population.

“ ‘ 2. That the Clerk of the Council do transmit to each of the three gentlemen above mentioned, a copy of the foregoing resolution.’

“ I am, sir, &c.,

“ CHARLES T. BOYLE,

“ Clerk of Council.

“ P. B. Borchers, Esq.”

On the 2nd of August, 1852, a circular was addressed by the Lieutenant-Governor C. H. Darling, Esq., to the Civil Commissioners, containing instructions to take steps, by the convening of a public meeting, by communication through the field-cornets, and by any other mode best calculated, to raise by subscriptions a *Kafir War Fund*, intended to assist those Burgher volunteers who went to the frontier in defence of the Colony, and supplying them with means of equipment and support in respect to their horses, arms, and sustenance; His Honour considering that the

amount would be most opportune for encouraging and “cheering on” the Eastern colonists in their exertions, and for proving to the enemy without and the rebels within, that as, in this matter at least, there was but one heart and one will amongst the loyal subjects of Her Majesty throughout the land, so that those who could not render effective aid in person were determined to offer its equivalent in property.

The intention was, that the fund which might be thus created should be placed at the disposal of His Excellency the Governor and Commander-in-Chief, to be by him allotted in due proportions to the committees for equipping and maintaining the Volunteers in the Eastern Districts, or be appointed under his orders to that object, in whatever way His Excellency might deem the most effective.

I consequently called a public meeting to assemble in the hall of the Supreme Court on the 13th following.

His Honour had previously explained, in another circular, that he trusted that any diminution of the fund which might be occasioned by the impression that the steps which he had taken in this matter—(for affording the inhabitants of the Western Districts some recognized channel through which their patriotism and sympathy might be voluntarily evinced)—were entirely upon his own responsibility and without previous communication with the Governor, and were indirectly an attempt to establish a precedent for raising forced loans, benevolences, or contributions only “apparently” voluntary, would thus effectually be averted; and His Honour requested it to be urged upon the meeting that whatever plan might be agreed upon for the disbursement of the

fund, such plan may not involve any pecuniary accountability on the part of the Governor and Commander-in-Chief.

On the day when the meeting was called, the large Court-room was completely filled by eleven o'clock; and having read the notice calling the meeting and the circulars addressed to me by the Lieutenant-Governor on the subject, I left the assembly to choose their own chairman, and to proceed as they thought proper. By an unanimous call I was immediately requested to take the chair, which I did, and having remarked that doubly fortified by the sanction of Government and the wishes of the meeting, I accepted this duty, and would do the best in my power to promote the object they all had in view, I addressed the assembly thus:

“GENTLEMEN,—Having called your attention to these documents (above mentioned), allow me to observe that the more strictly we confine ourselves to the object of this meeting (namely, to collect contributions for the equipment and maintenance of those volunteers who have so nobly come forward in the Eastern Division, or who may hereafter join the standard of the Commander-in-Chief), the nearer shall we, I conceive, comply with the spirit of the circular of His Honour the Lieutenant-Governor; and the more general the contributions are made (however small) the greater will be the proof on the part of the colonists, that there is but one heart and one will among Her Majesty’s loyal subjects here, as regards the defence of the colony against the common enemy. On this point there should be union to strengthen our cause, and the enemy should be taught that there is no hope of gaining advantage by divisions on our part.

Gentlemen, let then, I pray, the proceedings of this meeting be governed by order and good feeling, and let these contributions mark the sentiments by which you are governed in the common cause. You have already received the report of a meeting held for the purpose at Swellendam, with the best effects. There we find that a sum of £600 had been at once subscribed, and I trust that the result of this day's proceedings will show that we are no less sensible of our duty, or less ready to perform it, than our fellow-colonists of Swellendam" (cheers).

And having during the proceedings received a letter of His Honour the Lieutenant-Governor transmitting £25, as his subscription to the Volunteer Assistance Fund, I read the contents, as also a letter of the Dean of Cape Town (the Reverend W. A. Newman), expressive of the reason of his non-attendance, and his ready concurrence in whatever might evince hearty loyalty to his Sovereign, and ready co-operation with his Governor, and his warm interest in the peace and prosperity of the colony ; and twenty-four gentlemen were nominated, to whom I was added, to form a committee for the general management of the Volunteer Fund.

Sir Andries Stockenstrom being voted to the chair, the thanks of the meeting were most cordially awarded to me, for my kindness in presiding on the occasion ; and subscriptions were immediately opened : and in the afternoon it already amounted to £1,330, and the committee found the greatest willingness amongst all classes of the community to contribute each according to his means. Although this aid was afterwards not

deemed necessary, yet it proved the readiness of the inhabitants to support Government in the defence of the country.

Sir Andries Stockenstrom in his speech said, addressing me as the chairman :

“The first question before us seems to me, whether the awful state of affairs which now prevails on the frontier shall be allowed to last ; and, secondly, what steps the people of this colony can justly be called upon to take, in order to put a stop to that state of affairs, or rather in your own words ‘to prove that there is but one heart and one will amongst the loyal subjects of Her Majesty here, as regards the defence of the Colony against the common enemy.’

“Before entering upon these questions allow me to diverge for a moment in order to congratulate the country on the altered tone of feeling existing between the rulers and subjects of South Africa, as exhibited by the circulars which you have read, and by the respectable congregation which has already been drawn together to respond to a liberal call of the people, to exercise one of its most important political rights on the granting of supplies to government.

“I feel this approachment of Government to the people as one of the happiest events in the history of the colony ; and certainly not the least agreeable feature of the present scene is, the cordial unanimity with which a high official of this community was called upon to preside over a political meeting of the people. For in spite of your introductory admonition, allow me to observe that this cannot be otherwise considered than as a political meeting, and the exclusion of politics is



impossible. Your election here to-day confirms the position which I have invariably maintained, that no impassable gulf exists between the people and those officials, high or low, as a body ; and to me it is particularly gratifying to see you in the first popular chair of such a nature, when, grey as I am, I recollect that I was still playing at marbles in the gutters of Cape Town when you were already a high official ; and that you have for half a century since then, with dignity and honour, preserved the respect and esteem of your country, both private and public, as an exemplary head of a family, a staunch patron of morality and religion, and a just preserver of law and order (loud cheers). Your position does honour to our society as well as to yourself ; it shows that an honest man is in the long run appreciated amongst us, whether in an official or unofficial garb" (cheers).

To come to the question, I could not help feeling on the occasion the expressions so voluntarily offered by the honourable Baronet,—they were uttered unexpectedly ; and I deem them well worthy of being recorded in this my memoir, as to me a valuable opinion.

On communicating the resolution of the committee to the Lieutenant-Governor, I received the following letter :

" Government House, 19th August, 1852.

" SIR,—I have the honour to acknowledge the receipt of your letter of this date, enclosing a resolution of the ' Committee of the Kafir War Voluntary Contribution Fund,' by which the funds collected through the committee was placed at the unreserved disposal of His Excellency the Governor, for the equipment and

maintenance of volunteers of the Eastern districts during the Kafir war, and acquainting me that the subscriptions up to this date in Cape Town and its vicinity amount to about £2,500 ; £1,600 of which has already been collected by the committee.

“ I shall have great satisfaction in communicating by this day’s post to His Excellency the Governor this highly gratifying result of the public meeting held in Cape Town on the 13th instant, gratifying, not more for the substantial aid which it will afford to our fellow-colonists in the field than for the proof which it exhibits of the admirable spirit evoked by the occasion on the part of the inhabitants of this city and its neighbourhood.

“ In conveying to you these sentiments, I avail myself of expressing my entire approval of the course you have pursued in the execution of your instructions, and of congratulating you on the marks of respect and confidence so signally conferred by your unanimous election to the chair of a meeting of your fellow-citizens ; the highly respectable and influential character of which is amply attested by the names of the gentlemen who were nominated and consented to act as members of its committee ; and of those whose attendance at the meeting enabled them to lay the foundation of the fund which that meeting with such marked unanimity resolved upon establishing.

“ I have, &c.,

“ C. H. DARLING, Lieutenant-Governor.

“ To P. B. Borchers, Esq., &c., &c.,

Chairman of the Committee of the Kafir  
War Voluntary Contribution Fund.”

The circular which I received on the return of the “Kafir War Contributions” is here inserted, namely :

“Colonial Office, Cape Town, Sept. 4, 1852.

“SIR,—Intelligence has been received by His Honour the Lieutenant-Governor from the frontier of the return from beyond the Kei of the expedition which marched into Kreli’s country on the 6th ultimo, and that his Excellency the Commander-in-Chief had dispensed with the further services of those gallant burghers who so readily responded to His Excellency’s call, as appears by the following extract from the General Order of 21st August : ‘The Commander-in-Chief thanks Lieutenant-Colonel Michel and Lieutenant-Colonel Napier, the troops, the burghers, and levies, for their exertions in the accomplishing, in one foray of nine days, the object he had in invading Kreli’s country and punishing that chief; which enables him now to permit the several contingents of burghers and volunteers to return to their respective homes, carrying with them not only his thanks for their meritorious conduct, but also the satisfaction of having as loyal subjects responded to his appeal.’

“As it thus appears that the object which His Honour had in view (when by his circulars of the 2nd, 7th, and 18th of last month he invited the co-operation of the inhabitants of the Western Province in aid of the funds raised in the Eastern Districts for the equipment of a burgher force) no longer exists,—such services not being at present required,—His Honour has directed me to instruct you to discontinue receiving further subscriptions, and to adopt immediate means for returning to the subscribers the amount of their subscriptions, in a way the most convenient to themselves.

“ In doing this, His Honour directs me to request that you will take the opportunity of expressing to the subscribers individually His Honour’s best thanks for the readiness with which one and all came forward to render that assistance which at the time was considered likely to be of the utmost value, in aiding the Eastern Districts to keep in the field a sufficient burgher contingent.

“ I have, &c.,

“ R. SOUTHEY.”

In a subsequent meeting of the committee, the treasurer (the Honourable Auditor-General, Major Hope) presented a report of the sums collected and paid to him, which was unanimously adopted, and the treasurer was authorized to refund the subscriptions received.

I have mentioned the above in detail also to show how ready the inhabitants were to contribute with Government to the defence of the Colony, and the very good spirit of loyalty and unity evinced on the occasion.

In May, 1852, I was appointed chairman to act in conjunction with Mr. F. B. Pinney, Resident Magistrate of Simon’s Town, and Doctor H. Bickersteth, the Surgeon-Superintendent of Somerset Hospital, as commissioners to inquire into certain charges made against the Superintendent of the General Infirmary at Robben Island. This island is about eight miles distant from the port of Cape Town, of difficult access except in perfectly calm weather, with a landing-place extremely inconvenient at all times. The General Infirmary Establishment occupies the whole space, and can be visited only by permission. The establishment is entirely under the direction and control of Government.

A full inquiry into the charges was made, and the result was, that the Superintendent was reprimanded ; but the state of the Infirmary was found to require improvement, and we suggested the following :

“The lunatic asylum is altogether defective in its construction and arrangements. Having been formerly a prison in which convicts under sentence of transportation were confined, it is at once obvious that without considerable alteration—if not entire remodelling—the building would never be made subservient for the satisfactory treatment of the insane, for in the present state the requisite classification of the unfortunate patients is quite impossible.

“The convalescents and those who are tranquil, are indiscriminately mingled with the violent and incurable, and exposed to their ceaseless noise by day and night, often to personal injury and abuse. The cleanly and orderly are congregated with those of obscene and filthy habits ; and what is worse, the separation of the sexes is only effected by a rude palisading dividing the yard in which they rove during the day, sufficiently open to admit of everything that passes in one compartment being seen by the occupants of the other, and to render their constant communication unavoidable.

“The rooms and cells are sadly defective in their ventilation, but appeared clean, and are in as good order as circumstances would allow. The yard is paved with stones, which is objectionable, as affording facility to the mischievous and violent, to arm themselves at any moment—whilst under the influence of sudden freak or passion—with most dangerous missiles.

“The attendance upon these poor creatures is decidedly inadequate. There are at present eighty-seven lunatics in the asylum, fifty-two of whom are males, thirty-three females, and two idiotic children.

“From the return of officers and servants employed in the establishment, it will be seen that one man under the designation of gatekeeper performs the duty of superintending the males, his wife officiating as lunatic matron, both being unassisted, except by the patients themselves, such aid being always precarious, and, except in some cases, far from desirable.

“The cells in the asylum seem to be occasionally used as places of punishment for lepers, and other patients suffering from chronic disease, whose habits may chance to be dirty or offensive, or conduct refractory,—a proceeding which should be most certainly avoided, as likely to give an erroneous impression regarding the real purpose of the asylum, by making no distinction between the punishment due to misdemeanour and crime, and the requisite restraint which for their own safety and that of others it is necessary to impose upon those who are unhappily, through the visitation of Providence, bereft of their reason.

“Two buildings, respectively designated upper and lower hospitals, are appropriated for the reception of patients suffering under chronic disease. One of these buildings was formerly the residence of the commandant, the other the quarters of the officer commanding the detachment of troops which formed the convict guard.

“Although neither of these houses possess the requisite qualifications for a hospital, they are nevertheless

sufficiently comfortable for the accommodation of the class of patients they contain, and certainly present none of the formidable objections regarding their arrangement which, with reference to that occupied by the lunatics must irresistably force themselves upon the conviction of the most superficial observer. In these two buildings there are at present one hundred and fifteen patients, ninety-eight males and seventeen females.

“From the nature of the establishment it appears that for the attendance upon the sick in these hospitals two male overseers are appointed; but of these one only performs the duty of supervision, the other being employed as a mechanic in repairing buildings, boats, and other matters of that kind.

“No person is especially appointed for attending upon the sick females in these hospitals, and the regulations do not contain any definition of the overseer’s duty or instruction for his guidance. The consequence has been, and still is, that the sick in that department are most uncertainly provided with attendance, and have mainly to depend upon the irregular and oftentimes unwilling assistance offered by the other patients.

“The lower hospital is unprovided with suitable privies, the only substitute for these being two or three tubs placed under a wall about twenty or thirty yards from the hospital, without any provision for their concealment, or covering to shelter those who may have to visit them from exposure to the inclemency of the weather.

“The kitchen is too small and requires enlarging, upwards of two hundred rations being now cooked, and served out in a very confined space.

“There is no suitable apartment adapted for the reception of the bodies of those who die, either in the hospital or lunatic asylum. The consequence is, that either the interments take place with indecent haste, or the corpse remains for hours in the ward amongst the living.

“The lepers appear tolerably comfortable, and no particular remarks seem to be called for respecting this branch of the institution. They are a peculiar class of people, wedded to their own habits, and it is perhaps better to let them continue to enjoy themselves in their own way, rather than impose regulations which might irritate and annoy them.

“It might, however, be desirable that the duties of the overseer of lepers were confined entirely to the charge of this department, and not associated as at present with those of managing the surf-boat and landing stores, which must of necessity interfere with the proper and effective performance of that duty for which he is especially appointed.

“The regulations do not instruct the Surgeon-Superintendent to keep any diary or medical registry detailing important cases, nor is there any order enforcing the institution of *post mortem* examinations in all instances where death has occurred from acute disease, in consequence of violence, and under questionable circumstances.”

Thus were three hundred human beings situated, poor, sick, and deprived of reason, and when on their deathbed, cut off by an intervening sea from relatives, friends, sympathizing strangers, or acquaintances; surrounded with scenes of woe, living together in their misery on



this isolated receptacle of sorrow, defectively lodged and served. The sight of these unfortunates made so deep an impression on my mind, that I could not refrain from mentioning it in these my memoirs; and even whilst writing, some of the subjects are distinctly within my recollection.

Since our report, several defects were remedied and improvements made, as far as the locality would admit; but I had a sanguine hope that means would have been devised and measures adopted to have established a new infirmary on the main land near Cape Town, and the one at Robben Island abandoned, so that the sufferers might have been more easily accessible, and relieved by medical aid and compassion, and better lodged.

In my opinion, the asylums for lunatics and lepers should be quite distinct and apart from the hospital.

The subject, however, I am happy to say, has since attracted the attention of Parliament and been discussed. Humanity certainly claims notice.

Our mission closed with the receipt of the following Government letter :

“Colonial Office, June 30, 1852.

“SIR,—I am directed by the Lieutenant-Governor to acknowledge the receipt of the report, dated 5th May, of the commission appointed to inquire into certain charges brought against Dr. Birtwhistle, the Surgeon-Superintendent of the General Infirmary at Robben Island, of which commission you acted as chairman.

“His Honour has desired me to convey to you, and through you to Dr. Bickersteth and Mr. F. B.

Pinney, the other members of the commission, his thanks for the pains you have bestowed upon this investigation, and for the very able report which has been furnished.

“ I have, &c., ”

“ R. SOUTHEY.

“ P. B. BORCHERDS, Esq.,

Chairman of Commission of Inquiry.”

## SECTION XV.

ONE of the most important extra duties with which I have been charged was that of *Chairman to the Central Road Board*, in the room of the Honourable H. Rivers. My appointment was dated April 19, 1853. Dr. Innes, the Superintendent-General of Education, was appointed as an official, and Messrs. D. G. van Breda and E. Landsberg as unofficial members, to whom afterwards was added Mr. F. W. Rietz, of Swellendam.

I was now appointed to the chair once occupied by that distinguished public servant, our Colonial Secretary, the late Honourable John Montagu, of whom the Rev. W. A. Newman, Dean of Cape Town, noted in his biographical memoirs: "To open a communication with all parts of the colony was one of Mr. Montagu's first designs, and with unsurpassed talent and energy he brought the resources of his mind and enterprise to this work, and in a very few years was instrumental in setting on foot and hastening the accomplishment; 'undertakings' which, to use the commendation of Sir H. Smith, 'would do honour to a great nation,' so that in the last few years, the physical difficulties against the improvement of the Cape colony have been removed; mountain passes have been rent open; hard roads made through deserts and driving sands; rivers bridged over and made passable, even in the heights of winter torrents, and a regular post line of communication carried through from Cape Town to Graham's Town, the capitals of the Western and Eastern divisions, distant by an interval of more than six hundred miles, over which the mail is now carried thrice in the week, with regular dispatch,

completing its whole distance in a space of about seventy hours.

“For the execution of his projects of opening the mountain passes and carrying the roads through the country, Mr. Montagu happily devised, and subsequently successfully introduced, a new and most advantageous system of convict labour; a system which, in its usefulness and reformatory effects, has already worked and will be yet more instrumental in working, the most important physical and moral changes over the face and in the heart of the whole colony.”

I confess feeling diffident and doubtful, whether I could do justice to the office, under performance of attendant duties, when the offer was made by the then Acting Secretary to Government, the Honourable Wm. Hope; but on consulting with my friends (especially the Honourable Wm. Porter), my scruples were relieved, and I accepted, because the ground-work was so well laid, and the machinery in active motion modelled, and I had the assistance of an experienced and able secretary, Mr. Wm. de Smidt, and also the advice and professional aid of the Civil Engineer, coupled with the opinion of members well acquainted with the country and connected with the inhabitants of the interior, and an efficient and well-trained staff of officers; and thus supported, I cherished the hope that I might be instrumental (by following the steps of my predecessor) in adding to the welfare of my native country, by contributing to the grand object,—the improvement of roads in this colony. I knew the nature of many of these roads by my travelling formerly as Judge of the Circuit through the interior, and had some experience

(as Civil Commissioner and Chairman of the Divisional Road Board, and also as former Secretary of Stellenbosch) of the system of road-making.

And on April 22, 1853, the new members severally took the oath and their seats, and I addressed the board thus :

“GENTLEMEN,—It has pleased his Excellency the Governor to appoint me a member and chairman of our board, under proclamation of 19th inst. I have accepted the appointment with no other view than the promotion of the public good. I have always considered the improvement of roads as the greatest benefit that could be effected, to facilitate agriculture and traffic, and as such closely connected with the welfare of the colony. I hope and trust, gentlemen, that in attempting to attain that beneficial object to our fellow-colonists you will grant me your cordial co-operation and support. Any plan or suggestion made to that effect will meet my most serious consideration, and in submitting to this board I trust that its merits will be discussed freely, openly, and candidly, and with that courtesy which we owe to our station, and the trust and confidence reposed in us by Government and the public. This meeting I have convened chiefly to take our seats, to have the minutes read of the board's last proceedings, and to dispose of such matters as require immediate provision; and, as we hope to meet again on Friday next, at 11 o'clock, I will in the mean time, with the assistance of the secretary, endeavour to gain that information which will place the board in a position to commence with the current duties steadily and with regularity. The prominent point of inquiry will be as to the means at

command and in prospect, in order to regulate our expenditure, with the view, not only gradually to discharge our debts and liabilities, but at the same time to proceed with the works in hand for public benefit. I trust, gentlemen, that by thus acting and candidly opening our views (when convened in this board, in unity and with honest purpose), we shall in time gain the confidence of the community; and that whatever be the board's ultimate destination or fate, we shall either hold or quit our seats with the satisfaction of having done our duty to the best of our ability and skill. We start, accordingly, under the arrival of that constitution which promises liberal institutions; let our proceedings be marked with liberality, and conducted in that spirit which the public in general, and our rate-payers especially, have a right to expect, keeping in view the due exercise of economy, and I feel confident that we shall not be disappointed in support. With these remarks, gentlemen, I open the proceedings of this first meeting of the newly-constituted board, relying on your ready assistance and good will. I have fixed Friday in every week as the ordinary day of meeting of the board, at 11 o'clock, when I solicit your regular attendance."

It was then moved by Captain Pilkington (the Civil Engineer): "That the address be recorded, and that the views expressed therein be approved by the board." This was heartily responded to by every member, and it was recorded accordingly.

And the board then proceeded with the current business, and numerous communications from the country districts were read and discussed. The whole

of the proceedings lasted about four hours, being conducted in the most amicable and satisfactory manner.

Thus commenced my duties as chairman, and continued to February, 1857 (three years and ten months), when I retired and preferred to continue as an unofficial member.

The most interesting events in that position were, to me, the opening of the Bain's Kloof or Pass, Wellington Bridge, over the Berg, and Darling Bridge, over the Breede Rivers, in September, 1853.

I will here insert the account published by an eyewitness, which I consider correct :

This event, so long looked forward to with a degree of more than ordinary interest, has at length taken place, and Bain's Kloof one of the finest mountain passes to be met with perhaps in the world, is now thrown open to the public. The conflicting opinions, entertained while the works were in progress, of their utility (forming as they often did a matter of discussion in official circles as well as out of doors, together with the magnitude of the undertaking), claim for the ceremonies connected with the opening something more than a mere passing notice.

The day had for some time back been regarded by the inhabitants of the surrounding districts, as well as by many in Cape Town, as one of pleasure and merry making, and it received an additional interest from the promised countenance of His Honour the Lieutenant-Governor, who had announced his intention of opening the pass in person. Unhappily, however, his sudden indisposition, after all the arrangements were complete,

rendered that impossible, and the honour of doing so was confided to

P. B. BORCHERDS, ESQ.,

the respected chairman of the Central Road Board, than whom, perhaps, a more fitting substitute could hardly have been found.

On Monday, the 12th of September, Mr. Borchers, accompanied by Captain Pilkington, Messrs. D. G. van Breda and E. Landsberg, present members of the board, Messrs. J. B. Ebdon and J. M. Wentzel, two of the retired members, Mr. Wm. de Smidt, the secretary, and several ladies, left Cape Town for the Paarl. At the entrance of that beautiful village a triumphal arch had been erected, and several arrangements, including an illumination, made in anticipation of the Lieutenant-Governor's arrival, but which the rumour of his inability to be there put a stop to. However, a number of gentlemen on horseback and others in vehicles rode out to meet them, and shortly after five o'clock the party drove up, amid a salute fired from some small cannon placed in the adjoining square, to Gird's Hotel, where they alighted.

It was now only that the Lieutenant-Governor's absence was positively ascertained, and a feeling of general disappointment was expressed by the numbers who had gathered around the hotel. Mr. Borchers addressed a few words to them, explaining the cause of His Honour's absence, the regret it caused him as well as themselves, and an assurance of the gratification he knew His Honour would have felt at witnessing the reception that awaited him. Shortly afterwards Doctor



Zeederberg, the chairman of the municipality, at the head of a deputation, waited on Mr. Borchers and handed to him an address which the inhabitants had prepared to present to the Lieutenant-Governor, and which at their request he promised should be forwarded to him.

In the evening the board invited the civil commissioner and several other officials to dinner. The next morning being the day on which the bridge over the Berg River was to be opened, found the Paarl all in motion. At an early hour, vehicles of every description, from the serviceable and more generally used Cape wagon and its span of six or eight horses, to the light buggy and its thoroughbred, were seen driving along the new line of road, which the Lieutenant-Governor on his last visit there ordered to be made as a branch road from the Paarl to Wellington, which is not only considerably shortened, and avoids the undulations of the old one over the hill, but also accommodates those from Zwartland coming to the Paarl.

In less than an hour, a turn of the road brought the bridge full in view; and here the scene to a stranger's eye was exceedingly novel and interesting. At some distance ahead it was seen stretching its immense length across the several branches of the Berg River, forming with the roads from Zwartland and Wellington (by which it was joined on either side) a long straight line, and meeting the one from the Paarl at right angles. These were crowded with vehicles all hurrying to the same point of attraction; the contrast of the pure white tents, of the long string of wagons and carts, as well as of those which were already outspanned

on the banks of the river, with the dark green of the surrounding fields was most picturesque; and it was pleasing to see the numerous, well-dressed, and orderly groups of coloured people coming from various directions on foot to join in the festivities of a day, the pleasures of which were to be shared by all alike, without any invidious distinction of class or colour. As the board was not expected until noon, ample time was afforded to those present to cross over and inspect the bridge, which crowds were not slow to avail themselves of. The first approach to it is by a causeway one thousand feet in length, at the end of which a handsome triumphal arch was erected, consisting of a centre and two smaller ones. Over the first was the following poetical effusion,

“The mighty Berg River we’ve conquered at last,  
So the days of frail *punts* and detentions are past.”

and on one or two side ones the words “Agriculture” and “Commerce” appeared through the flowers and evergreens of which the arch was formed, the whole being surmounted with flags. Then commenced the bridge, a wooden pile, one of great strength, about three hundred feet long, at the end of which was an arch of evergreens and flags bearing the inscription “*Concordia crescemus.*” Passing on was another causeway of three hundred feet long and twenty-eight feet broad, over a strip of land which in the dry season divides the river into two streams, but is in winter completely under water. Where it terminates was a very pretty arch erected with the inscription “God save the Queen,” with two guidons of the Lieutenant-Governor suspended over

the sides ; and over head two banners bearing the Montagu and Mitchell arms, passing through the bridge where the second stream commences. It is of a similar construction to the first, but smaller, being only two hundred feet in length ; the stream here, however, being more rapid, it is even of greater strength, the piles used being driven no less than twenty-four feet deep into the river. At the end of it was the principal triumphal arch. No trouble had evidently been spared in making it worthy the occasion, while to the evergreens and flowers were added branches of the orange tree covered with its luscious fruit. Over the central arch passing eastward was inscribed the motto, *Possunt qui posse viderunt* ; the other side was emblazoned with the Governor's coat of arms, and the whole surmounted by flags and banners, together with the guidons of the Governor and Lieutenant-Governor. Over the two smaller arches were inscribed the mottos : " Peace and plenty " and " Liberty and progress." The *tout ensemble* was so tasteful and complete as to elicit general admiration. On the one side a kind of pavilion was erected with a board in front, on which the letters " V.R." were prettily worked with the flowers of the red heath, with a large crown above, and the English, French, and Dutch ensigns suspended from the middle and sides. Opposite was a flagstaff with the royal standard. The scene at this time, looking back through the arches along the line of the bridge, was beautiful beyond description. No less than four hundred wagons and carts were outspanned on the banks of the river, which ran sluggishly on, as if the heat of the day (for there was not a breath of air stirring) had communicated its influence to it,

while the moving masses of the people are not over estimated at four thousand.

The approach of the board was now announced; and Mr. Bain, accompanied by several ladies and gentlemen, crossed over the bridge, which was cleared to receive them. Mr. Borchers and his party having alighted, he was conducted by Mr. Bain across the bridge to the pavilion, around which the convicts belonging to the Berg River station were drawn up in the form of a square. A strict silence being observed, Mr. Borchers addressed the spectators as follows :

“LADIES AND GENTLEMEN,—I have been requested by His Honour the Lieutenant-Governor (who intended to be present as the representative of Her Majesty's Government) to express to you his deep regret that serious indisposition prevents him from joining you in opening this bridge for public use. His Honour considers it a work of great importance, as facilitating the transport of produce to the chief markets, not only from Wellington but the more distant parts. He congratulates the inhabitants on the completion of such an undertaking, and trusts that it will be productive of much public good, not only to the present but future generations. He had hoped to have expressed personally his thanks to the former and present members of the Central Road Board, under whose arrangement and direction this bridge was commenced and completed, but requested me to do so in his name, and on behalf of Government; and also to Mr. Bain, the inspector, under whose design, and by whose ability the work has originated and been finished; also to the superintendent, Mr. Short, for his able and judicious

assistance; and to the superintendent of works, Mr. Manning, under whose guidance the work has been thus far carried on and completed. And as chairman of the Central Board, I beg to add the thanks of the board for the zeal and assiduity displayed by those officers in their respective situations. In that official capacity I also feel it my duty (and it is one which I perform with delight) to draw the attention of the public to the solicitude of Government to promote works of public utility, and to meet the true interests of the inhabitants; and I have no doubt they will reciprocally and cheerfully supply the further means required, and co-operate with the Central and Divisional Road Boards to do their duty, confident that the approaching Parliament will liberally respond to every claim connected with that so all-important work to agriculture and trade,—namely, the improvement of roads in this colony. The Central Board now returns thanks to all who aided and contributed to the erection of this bridge, which was commenced in December last, and I am authorized to declare that it is now open to the public, and is named the

“‘WELLINGTON BRIDGE.’”

The conclusion of the address was greeted by loud cheers, which were taken up by those who, from the number present, were unable to hear a word that was said. For the information of those persons who did not understand English, Mr. Borchers said that he would translate what he had just said into Dutch, which he then did, to the gratification of the principal part of his hearers. This being over, he proceeded to

address the convicts, whose clean and orderly appearance reflected great credit on their superintendent. He told them that although there would be no mitigation of sentences this day, as was usual on such occasions, he desired to assure them that they had not been forgotten. The names of the most deserving had been sent in to the Lieutenant-Governor, who, believing that he had not the power, did not feel himself justified in granting such mitigation, but had forwarded them to the Governor, whose answer had not been received but was expected by the next post, when the result would be communicated to them. He was anxious that they should understand that they had not been forgotten. This having been translated to them in Dutch, and by one of the convicts into the Kafir language, they returned to the station. The celebrated Andries Botha, who was amongst them, excited a good deal of attention ; he appeared in good health and spirits, and bears an excellent character from the overseers.

The ceremony of christening the bridge took place next. Mrs. Borchers, who performed it, having been conducted there, took the bottle of wine, and breaking it against the railing named it the "Wellington Bridge," amid loud cheers that broke from all sides. Three hearty ones having been given for the Queen, the work of the day was concluded. By a strange coincidence it happened to be the anniversary of that on which the great warrior of the age breathed his last. A long line of vehicles now crossed the bridge for the first time, headed by the omnibuses engaged by the board, gaily decked out with guidons, into which Mr. Borchers and his party having entered, they drove off to Wellington,

accompanied by a goodly cavalcade. The greater number, however, broke up into picnic parties along the banks of the river; thus closing the enjoyments of a day that will long be remembered by those who had the good fortune to witness it. Nothing occurred to mar the proceedings. The weather was most propitious, and in addition to those whose pleasure was derived from the contemplation of the great works which give rise to the scenes of this kind, were many who came there determined to be pleased, not knowing why or caring wherefore.

Wellington being but a quarter of an hour's distance, the *cortège* were soon driving down Bain-street, drawing up before Mr. Bain's residence to give three cheers, and then proceeding to the end of the street, where a substantial bridge has been erected over a rather rapid stream, being on the high road to the kloof.

A pretty arch had been thrown across it, on which the word "Welcome" was inscribed. Mr. Borchers then, after a few complimentary remarks, named it "Bain's Bridge," and the party proceeded to the house of Mr. Blignault, which he had given up for the use of the Lieutenant-Governor. When they alighted, a tiffin followed, and in the evening the board invited the officials of the Paarl and Wellington and several other gentlemen to a sumptuous dinner, which took place in the Government school-room. It was prepared by Mr. W. T. Grogan, and the arrangements were excellent; loyal toasts and complimentary speeches being the order of the evening. The pretty town of Wellington—for that is what it has now become—was a scene of festivity and rejoicing the whole of that afternoon and evening.

There were a great many gentlemen from Cape Town, and amongst them several candidates for the new Parliament. Some of them, either personally or through their friends, were evidently combining a little business with pleasure, and seeing what could be done in the electioneering way,—with what success remains to be seen. A large dinner party also sat down at the next hotel of Miss Langeveldt, which, at the request of those present, was christened “Darling Hotel.” The worthy hostess—who is quite a character in her way—returned her thanks in an excellent speech for the honour they had conferred on her. A ball in the evening closed the enjoyments of the day.

Early next morning every one was on the move, and at eight o'clock the board, accompanied by a numerous train of vehicles, started for the great event of the day, the opening of the kloof. The beautiful Wagonmaker's Valley, with its groves of orange trees in full bearing, was soon passed, and the road swept round the spurs of the mountains with an ascent so gradual as to be almost imperceptible. It is only on looking back that the traveller can actually see the height to which he has ascended. Passing the much-talked-of tunnel,—now unserviceable from the western entrance having fallen in—the greater sweep round one of the mountain slopes which the tunnel was intended to avoid has to be made, and the road though still planted on one side with thriving young oaks, takes shorter turns, the sweeps become precipitate, and it altogether assumes more the character of the mountain into which it shortly enters. The point is now attained from whence the road is clearly discernible from the plains below, stretching in



a straight line across the fall of the last mountain but one of the Drakenstein range, until where, turning off at an obtuse angle, it enters the gap and is lost to view. The scenery along this part of the road, until it reaches the gap where the first convict station is placed, is perhaps more magnificent than any in the kloof itself. Here you may rattle on at a pace not slower than that of ordinary travelling, along a road quite as good, if not much better and apparently as level, as any Cape Town street, and this at an elevation of upwards of eighteen hundred feet above the level of the sea. Down immediately before you is the Wagonmaker's Valley and its fertile farms. Further on is Wellington, whose regularly-built streets make no inconsiderable show in the plain beneath, through which the Berg River winds, until it is lost behind the Groenberg, a remarkable mountain, whose green, velvet appearance and numerous slopes, unbroken by a single rock, present a striking contrast to its rugged neighbours. The long straggling but picturesque village of the Paarl, with its range of hills, is seen to the left; and more to the right those of Paardenberg, while between the Groenberg and the last of the Drakenstein range is a beautiful valley; and beyond it in the distance the smooth waters of Vogel Valley are partly visible. The bird's eye view from this height is perhaps unequalled here; and no description, especially the present feeble attempt, can do it justice. Turning to the right, the gap is now entered, and the road passes through the first convict station, which has been abandoned. The buildings are to be sold, and it is said that they are likely to be purchased for a house of accommodation.

The *descent* here is now as gradual as the *ascent* was on the other side ; with this difference, that the world is completely shut out, and you travel along a road cut out of one side of two rugged mountains, with a narrow and deep ravine between. On looking at the opposite side, it must strike a spectator with wonder that it could ever have entered the mind of man to cut a carriage-drive out of the side of a mountain whose prevailing features were huge rocks, fearful precipices, and deep ravines. With little change, except when the ear is suddenly saluted by the soft dashing of one of the small but numerous cascades, which seen for a moment are lost beneath the road, it reaches a remarkable group, called

“THE MONTAGU ROCKS,”

where it passes through a cutting made in the solid rock twenty-five yards long, and twenty feet deep, over which a pretty arch was thrown, surmounted by the Montagu arms and the motto : “*Palmas qui meruit ferat.*” Here, in some places, the retaining walls are between forty and fifty feet high ; and along the whole length of road the parapet is formed by immense pieces of detached rocks, placed on their ends and the interstices filled up with smaller stones. Somewhat further on is a curious natural arch, through the rock on an overhanging precipice, outside the rock called

“THE BISHOP’S ARCH,”

from some little circumstance connected with the Bishop of Cape Town’s visit there when on his last visitation tour. The arch was covered with flowers and surmounted by a huge mitre. Still gradually

descending, you come to a very deep cutting through the krantz (the local name for a precipice). It is of a similar character to the one through the Montagu Rock, but much deeper and jutting more into and over the precipice. This is called

“THE BELL ROCK,”

after the Surveyor-General. Over it a tasteful arch was thrown, made of heath, with the motto: “*Patientia vincet*,” and suspended from it hung a bell ornamented with flowers.

Immediately after this is a remarkable place called

“BAYLEY’S KRANTZ,”

one of the highest precipices in the kloof, the rock rising abruptly two hundred feet above the road. After passing the krantz, a salute was fired from the opposite side of the ravine, by blasting a number of rocks, giving an increased wildness to the scenery. Next came a bridge over a very deep chasm, the mason-work of dry stone being no less than sixty-five feet high, to which the name of

“PILKINGTON BRIDGE”

was given. Crossing it, the road ran through another deep cutting in the solid rock, over which was an arch with the motto: “Be firm in difficulties.” A turn of the road brought the *cortège* up to the middle convict station, where the commissioners alighted, and after remaining a short time inspecting the station, proceeded on. Some distance beyond, there is an extraordinary overhanging rock between this and the head station, which stretches right across the road, and is just high enough to allow those on the top of the

omnibus to pass. It bears a strong resemblance to the sounding board of a pulpit, and is named

“DACRE’S PULPIT,”

after the reverend gentleman of that name, who was with one of the first parties who explored the kloof. A few minutes more and they had arrived at Wolvenkloof, the main Breede River station, under the superintendence of Mr. Thomas Bain, where the board alighted and remained some time.

This is one of the most interesting parts of the pass. The station is large, and stretching beyond it is a fine kloof, into which cattle from the outspanning wagons might be turned. The buildings having been inspected, Mr. Borchers addressed the convicts to a similar effect as those of Berg River, “regretting that the Governor’s reply about the mitigation of some of their sentences had not been received in time, but that they might rest assured that they were not forgotten,” which was translated to them in both Dutch and Kafir. The men did not appear at all satisfied with this announcement.

The whole party then proceeded to christen a handsome bridge, the most elegant structure of the kind in the whole pass, crossing a deep chasm, the water running down which joined those in the larger ravines below. At the end of this was a triumphal arch, in the shape of a castle with its gateway and two towers, on each of which was the red cross gleaming through the evergreens. A crown surmounted the arch, and beneath it was the motto: “*Fama semper viret*,” beautifully painted in relief; the whole arch being decorated with banners and guidons, &c.

Miss Bain, by whom the ceremony was to be performed, then advanced, and in a firm tone of voice said, "The inscription on the arch above tells us that a good name will shine for ever, and we cannot therefore do better, in giving the bridge one, than in naming it after the worthy chairman of the Central Road Board,

‘BORCHERDS’ BRIDGE.’”

Miss Bain, as she repeated the name, gracefully broke the bottle of wine against the bridge, and was loudly cheered.

Mr. Borchers, in acknowledging the honour that had been paid to him, assured those present that whatever he had done, had been from a strict sense of duty, which he was glad to find had been appreciated, and that he should always endeavour to continue to do so. Whatever might be in his power to promote the improvement of the roads, and thereby tend to increase the agricultural and commercial prosperity of the colony, he should consider it a sacred duty to perform, and begged of them to believe that the pleasure this day had given him he seldom experienced.

The scene at this time was strikingly grand and exciting. The eye at one glance could take in the buildings beyond the bridge, the winding road far above it studded with vehicles, and below it the fearful chasm dividing the two ridges (and along which the waters of the Witte River were dashing with all the fury of a mountain torrent), together with the motley groups of all classes and shades, who had gathered to witness the ceremony. To add to the wildness of the scene, a salute was fired from three of the

adjoining villages, by blasting the rocks. The detached pieces fell, crumbled below ; the reports reverberating long and loud. The cavalcade was once more in motion, and the easy descent continued. The long valley from which the pass emerges was in full view, with the high range of the Mosterd Hoek mountains, their tops still partially covered with snow, stretching across the plain far beyond it. Continuing along the base of the mountain, every few moments laid open some beautiful kloof, with its cascade, which flowing into the valley, added to the body of water adjoining the Breede River at Darling Bridge, now visible. The scene that here presented itself was something similar to the one at Berg River on the previous day, though not quite on so large a scale. Along the banks numerous carts were outspanned, while a long concourse of people had gathered round the bridge to receive the party. The last convict station was now passed, a salute was fired, the Bain's Kloof terminated, and a mountain pass of eighteen miles was traversed (ten of which were blasted through solid rock), with all the ease and facility attending a drive to Constantia. The board then alighted, and were received by the Civil Commissioner of Worcester and Tulbagh, who conducted them across the bridge, over which two arches were erected with appropriate mottoes, and they all proceeded to a large marquee, rendered conspicuous among other tents by a shield of the Governor's arms, and within which a cold collation had been prepared by order of the board. After the good things, —which were supplied by Mr. Grogan, of Wellington— had been fully discussed, and the one side of the

marquee let down to enable the number of farmers who had gathered around (and who appeared to take a great interest in the events of the day) to hear all that took place, Mr. Borchers rose and said,

“LADIES AND GENTLEMEN,—We have now arrived at the terminus of the pass, and it is my pleasing task, as chairman of the Central Board, to thank you for the interest you have shown in thus countenancing the proceedings of the board. Your presence is a convincing proof that you estimate the value of public works connected with the improvement of roads, and the internal intercourse with the different and some very distant parts of the colony. Agriculture and Commerce are deeply interested; and by promoting the object, we couple this, and unite that, which to every one feeling for the welfare of this country of our birth or adoption seems to be all important. We have no navigable rivers,—mountains and rocks separated us in former days, and in the opening of this Pass we have been taught that intrepidity and perseverance will surmount great and startling difficulties (loud cheers). Let us look upon those who planned and fostered this stupendous work as true benefactors, and keep them in memory, so as to hand down to posterity the value of their example in this undertaking. This pass, gentlemen (the length of which from Wellington to Darling Bridge is eighteen and a half miles, of which ten are blasted through the solid rock, with a retaining wall of the same length from three to fifty feet high), was commenced on the 16th February, 1849, when the Central Board consisted of the Honourable John Montagu, Secretary to Government, chairman; the Honourable Harry Rivers, Treasurer—

General; Charles Bell, Esq., Surveyor-General; J. C. Gie, M. son, E. J. Jerram, and J. M. Wentzel, Esqrs., commissioners; and Willem de Smidt, Esq., secretary. You have passed it, and seen the great labour and work bestowed thereon; and if ever I had a happy day and a satisfactory work to perform, it was on the opening of it to the public (cheers). Need I repeat the regret we must experience in common that the representative of Her Majesty's Government has been prevented by serious illness from attending and personally doing the duties which he has deputed me to perform? It is to be hoped that his health may be soon restored, so that by a personal visit he may view the extensive work in its finished state. He considers this pass as of the utmost consequence to those connected with the interior, and to travellers; and as a lasting monument of the skill bestowed on the formation and finishing of this grand undertaking (cheers). Were he present, I feel convinced that he would join the Central Board in expressing his gratification and acknowledgment to the inspector, Mr. Andrew Geddes Bain (loud cheers), and the superintendents, overseers, and others, for their useful services rendered to the community at large; and particularly also to the superintendent, Mr. Thomas Bain, of the Breede River station, for his skill, zeal, and activity. We also feel that thanks are due to the chaplains, the Reverend Messrs. Fleischer and Meeser (cheers), who have performed with christian zeal the arduous and responsible duties attached to the religious instruction and administration of holy comfort to those who were under the sentence of the law and intrusted to their care; and the attention they have paid to the improvement of



their minds and spiritual welfare, and their moral improvement, so as to return them to society, if possible, useful, orderly, honest, and religious members (cheers). I truly hope and trust that their labours may be crowned with success, and that they may hereafter experience the satisfaction due to those who have been, under the guidance of Providence, instrumental in reforming and saving the souls of our erring and misguided fellow-creatures, and turning their ways, so that they may ultimately live happy here and happy hereafter. I should fall short were I not to thank those professional gentlemen who from time to time have been charged with the preservation of the health of those who were attached or confined to the different convict stations (cheers),—who have soothed and relieved pain and suffering; and inasmuch as they have faithfully performed their duty, fully, and with professional skill, I trust that they will enjoy that inward reward which always attends those who have been a succour and help to the afflicted. To the gentlemen who, as visiting magistrates, have administered the law, and contributed to the order and regular conduct of those confined to the public works, the Government, the board, and the public are also deeply indebted. The responsibility attached to their situation is one which cannot be regarded but as a serious task, imposed and undertaken for upholding the law and wholesome discipline at the different penal establishments (cheers). And now, gentlemen, I feel it my duty to state that the labours of the members of the present Central Board only commenced in April last. It would seem presumptuous and uncomely were we to claim any merit

beyond acting in the last stage of finishing this Pass. No; the difficulties of starting and gradually proceeding in this great work, with all its attendant cares and responsibilities, were borne by our predecessors in office, the former chairman and members of the board, and I am happy to see some of them amongst us. They deserve our acknowledgments, and we ought to pay them this tribute of our thanks, and I do so most cordially (cheers). It would be more than time would allow to describe the various lines with which this Pass stands in connection with the interior of this colony. The public are already informed on this subject by former reports, and latterly by one framed by the present board after an inspection as far the Karoo Poort. Suffice it to say that the general utility and public convenience are now established, and will more and more be proved as the Pass stands open for public use. Let me assure the community in general that the board is disposed and determined to do their duty (loud cheers). They hope and trust to the co-operation of all parties; they feel confident that the Parliament when once established will not withhold their vote to means absolutely necessary for the prosperity of the colony at large, and its industrious and well-disposed inhabitants (continued cheers). Allow me to close with one remark, that however disposed the board feels to meet every just demand and expectation in the different sections of the settlement, they can only proceed with the works in succession. The rules of discipline require establishments which cannot well be separated or divided without destroying the main object of punishment,—namely, the reformation of the man. But let the inhabitants be assured that the

interests of all will be in turn considered and attended to, as much as means and power will allow.

“And ladies and gentlemen (amongst whom I observe road boards, municipalities, functionaries, respectable inhabitants, and individuals of various classes), receive once more my hearty congratulations, and please to share with me in the delight and satisfaction I feel in opening this Pass, which I am authorized, in honour of our worthy inspector and visiting magistrate, Mr. Andrew Geddes Bain (loud cheers), with whom the plan originated and who conducted the works throughout, to name it

‘THE BAIN’S PASS.’”

The announcement of the name was received by a burst of enthusiastic cheers, which were reiterated by the crowds round the tent, so that it was some minutes before silence could be restored, and Mr. Borchers continued :

“The Pass terminates at this bridge, bearing the name of His Honour the Lieutenant-Governor,

“‘DARLING BRIDGE’”

(loud cheers). The following is a list of bridges and other remarkable spots in Bain’s Pass : Southey’s Bridge, Hope’s Bridge, Landsberg’s Bridge, Innes’ Bridge, Reitz’s Viaduct, Montagu’s Rocks, Rivers’ Krantz, Maclear’s Bridge, Bishop’s Arch, Bell Rock, Bayley’s Krantz, Breda’s Bridge, Pilkington’s Bridge, Short’s Bridge, Gie’s Bridge, Samson’s Ribs, Stewart Rocks, Borchers’ Bridge, Steenbok’s Kloof, Bastiaan’s Kloof, and Darling Bridge. These follow in succession from the commencement at Wagonmakers’ Valley.

Mr. Bain will now, I believe, favour us with some history of the origin and progress of the pass."

The worthy chairman then sat down amid loud cheers, which continued as Mr. Bain rose. When they had subsided, Mr. Bain said :

"In the year 1846, the Secretary to Government, the Honourable Mr. Montagu, paid me a visit while I was engaged in making Mitchel's Pass, and while there, requested me to accompany Mr. Bell and himself to Houwhoek. I did so, and in passing the farm of Mr. Albert Winn, I pointed out to Mr. Montagu a gap in the mountains lying in the direction of Wellington ; he drew up his horse and looking backwards and forwards, turned to me and said, ' Bain, that is just the line ;' and at his request, I promised to take an early opportunity of exploring the place. The field-cornet, my friend, Mr. du Plessis, who has just now entered the tent, was with us at the time, and he promised to procure a Hottentot who knew some part of that country to accompany me through the kloof ; but all the information I gathered about it, both then and afterwards (for I made several inquiries of various parties), was, that with the exception of going into some parts of the kloof in looking after runaway slaves, no one had ever been through it, for, said they, it was ' zomaar een spelonk, geen mensch kan daar door,'—'for it is but a cave inaccessible, no human being can pass it' (loud cheers). We rode on to Houwhoek, whence they returned to Cape Town, and I came round by Sir Lowry's Pass to the Paarl. While there, I saw from Mr. Gird's stoep the mountains at Mosterd's Hoek under which I resided, and I then resolved that I would return home through

that gap, instead of going round by the New Kloof. On reaching Wellington, Field-cornet Rossouw kindly procured some persons who had been some distance through the gap to accompany me. The names of these gentlemen are Messrs. Stephanus du Toit, Jacobus and David Malan (Jacobus' sons), and Johannes Retief. We started from Wagonmakers' Valley at four o'clock in the morning, having previously sent round our horses by Bastiaan's Kloof to meet us at Breede River on the other side. It took us the entire day, but we succeeded in accomplishing our object (loud cheers). It was the hardest day's work I ever had (cheers), and I could not do it again. I had, however, determined to go through, and I did it (cheers). The following day I wrote to Mr. Montagu, accompanying the letter with a rough sketch of the kloof, and said I had discovered the north-west passage (loud cheers and laughter), and that I could make a road through it, but it would be very expensive. I received a very flattering letter in reply, dated 25th November, 1846, in which he says, 'Your letter quite delighted me; Bain's Poort will be our next job; so get Mosterd's Hoek out of hand as soon as you please, and we may get to work on the other. Bell is as pleased as I am, and it is quite refreshing to work with a man of your zeal and energy in the public service. You have certainly not been idle since we separated' (loud cheering). Do not think it vanity on my part in producing this note (no, no), but I look upon it as a little historical record, connected with the first discovery of Bain's Kloof, that might be preserved (cheers). Shortly after this, Mr. Bell was sent out to visit it in his official capacity as Acting Civil Engineer. I proceeded with

him, and we were accompanied by the Reverend Mr. Dacres and Mr. Josias Rivers. We went from where we now are, slept at night in the Bastiaan's Kloof, and the following morning we started, and succeeded in getting through the kloof, reaching Wellington the same evening. Mr. Bell said that though it would be a very expensive line of road, yet there would be no doubt it would be a very useful one, and he reported to the Central Board accordingly. This is all I have to tell about the early history of the pass. You have seen it to-day, and can judge for yourselves."

Mr. Bain's account was listened to with the greatest attention, and at its conclusion he was loudly cheered.

This historical account was followed up by the professional opinion of the Civil Engineer, Captain Pilkington.

"I, sir (addressing the chairman), have been forty years in the practice of my profession, and am confident in saying that to trace a line through such a difficult, precipitous country could only be made in the manner Mr. Bain has just described, by one well practised in tracing roads (cheers). It is not frequently in the profession that men are found who have an eye that can at once discover what an instrument can only effect. Mr. Bain, however, has done so, and has shown that he has a theodolyte eye (laughter). In this work he was well supported by Mr. Montagu, and the colony is indebted to these gentlemen for the discovery and formation of a road which brings a fertile and flourishing country thirty-six miles nearer to Cape Town (cheers). I have, as a professional man, visited the works from time to time, but I never gave an opinion on their details

whilst in progress, and my reason for this was, that I might have made suggestions connected with those details which might entirely alter the projector's ideas, or which may already have been on his mind, and thus deprive him of the credit of having been their original author; this is my conduct on all occasions (cheers). But, sir, I have now viewed the work as finished, and in reference to it as it now appears before us, I can say that it has been completed in such a manner, that it will not require any repairs for a considerable time to come, whilst on every part thereof I see the mark of a master's hand (loud cheers). I came here with a determination not to speak, lest I should betray feelings that might destroy the harmony that should prevail on an occasion like the present; but, sir, I find it impossible to refrain from speaking, when I see the individuals to whom so much credit is due, must lose a considerable portion thereof, if I withheld my professional knowledge on this subject (cheers). When the procession had reached the bridge which has been called by my name, I did not then say what I now take occasion to communicate. Mr. Bain may recollect the circumstances. I had projected a wooden bridge to span the deep ravine by a single arch, but Mr. Montagu differed with me under the impression that such a project would not be in keeping with the rude cliffs and rugged appearance of the rocks around, and I consider that, however excellent the project and complete the construction of my proposal might have been, Mr. Montagu was right (cheers); and I do therefore willingly give him all the credit (loud cheers), disdaining portions as due to myself, for which the

bridge should have been called by my name. Let him that wins the fame bear the palm (loud cheers). I lay aside all private feelings, when I see a great work such as this a subject of discussion, and requiring my opinion, which I give uninfluenced by any private or personal feelings (cheers). Although I came here resolved on silence, I hope I shall be excused for occupying your time so long" (loud cheers).

The Honourable Mr. J. B. Ebden said: "As the chairman has been pleased to allude to the acts of the former members of the board in terms which could not be otherwise than gratifying to them, he could not refrain from offering his hearty congratulations on the completion of that gigantic work, which he need hardly say had excited the wonder and admiration of every one who had that day beheld it (loud cheers), giving all credit to its projector as well as to the talented engineer whose name it bears, on whom devolved the laborious and difficult task of executing so important a work." Mr. Ebden spoke here as an original member of the Central Road Board.

Mr. Advocate Ebden spoke also in praise of the works and Superintendent Bain in eulogizing terms, and gave the health of Mr. Bain, "and let a grateful public never forget what he had done for them,"—which was drunk with great applause.

Captain Pilkington proposed that a medal be presented to Mr. Bain, and he would willingly head the subscription by giving £5 towards it, and this was received with loud applause.

Mr. Bain, in returning thanks, said he would rather make another Bain's Kloof than make a speech (cheers



and laughter); he was nothing but a common highway-man, and only accustomed to blazing and blasting (renewed laughter), and could not therefore be expected to speak. "All," he added, "I can say is, that I thank you from my heart. God bless you all" (loud cheers).

Mr. Borchers then gave the health of the Queen, and also to him most dear to her, Prince Albert, and the Royal family, which were drank with three hearty cheers, and *one more*. After which the health of His Excellency the Governor, and may his efforts to re-establish peace and tranquillity be crowned with success. Then the health of His Honour the Lieutenant-Governor, who, he assured them, had the welfare of the colony at heart, and with a hope that he would soon be restored to perfect health; both of which toasts were drank with due honours.

Dr. Gird, an old colonist, comparing the former roads and danger of passes with the present improvement, spoke in high praise of Mr. Bain and his works, and value thereof to the country; and with regard to Mr. Montagu, he said, "I am glad to observe the spirit in which the merits of Mr. Montagu have been alluded to by the gentlemen who have already addressed the meeting, particularly the candid acknowledgments of Captain Pilkington, which, circumstances considered, are doubly valuable coming from that quarter; but something more is required of us. We must not forget, gentlemen, to whom we are indebted as the founder of this and other great public works and roads throughout this colony. But for Mr. Montagu, we might this day have been ploughing our weary way knee deep in sand across

the Cape Flats, without a hard road, or indeed any of the fine roads we now possess. But for the energy and perseverance of Mr. Montagu, we should not have obtained a road ordinance. To the genius of that master-mind are we indebted for the organization of the Central Board of Public Roads in this Colony, and through the able assistance of his colleagues—the commissioners of the old board—has already so much been effected. Without a Central Road Board, we should not have had the pleasure of meeting this day to celebrate the opening of Bain's Pass. With permission of the chairman and gentlemen present, waiving every consideration but gratitude to the great benefactor of the colony, to whom we are so much indebted, I beg to propose "the health of the Honourable John Montagu, the founder of public roads in this colony."

The toast was received with great warmth and cordiality amidst loud and continued cheering, which was joined by the crowd outside the tent.

Mr. Ryneveld, the Civil Commissioner of Stellenbosch, then proposed the health of the chairman and members of the Central Road Board, to which Mr. Borchers returned thanks.

The number of toasts being apparently exhausted and the afternoon far advanced, the company now rose and proceeded back to the bridge to witness the last ceremony connected with this most interesting occasion, the naming of Darling Bridge, to which the consent of the Lieutenant-Governor had long previously been obtained. Miss le Sueur, daughter of the Civil Commissioner, conducted by Mr. Borchers, christened the bridge with the usual forms.

Tired out by the exciting events of the day, this did not last long, for before one half had reached the spot, a loud cheer announced that the only thing remaining to complete the well-ordered arrangements had closed. The board shortly after re-entered their omnibuses, and drove off along the new line of road to Worcester. The wagons on the road leading to other places were soon in motion, and all was over. Thus terminated one of the most interesting days the Cape has witnessed, a day on which private interests had evidently been set aside, each and all striving to do honour to the noblest work of art in South Africa, and closed one of the most remarkable in the history of the colony.

Another account added and closed thus: "With a strong wind carrying out its streamers, the procession entered Worcester towards evening, and at eight o'clock the board, with the magistrate and others to whom invitations had been issued, sat down to a princely dinner at Watson's hotel, prolonged to a late hour; other festivities being carried on in the village, among which the *light fantastic toe* was not forgotten.

"The high winds and torrents of rain which held undisputed sway during the whole of the 15th, and which were secretly anathematized as the *plague of waters*, prevented any unusual manifestations of respect on the part of the inhabitants, or the carrying out by the board of any project of visiting the neighbouring places of note; but a dinner given by the worthy magistrate in the evening to the board, and a numerous and select party, reflected in its arrangements great credit on that gentleman.

“The following morning the board, accompanied by Mr. le Sueur and a few inhabitants (who were desirous of bestowing this parting token of respect), left Worcester; and when its noble drostdy-house, churches, and houses environed by sight-refreshing green had disappeared from the eye, the parties separated with many a friendly shake and hearty cheer. No untoward incident served to relieve the monotony of the extensive flat before mentioned; as the excellent condition of the road precluded any chance of accident even to the most reckless excitement seeker.

“The first halt (if one for the rural task of culling flowers be excepted) took place at the broad-bosomed Breede River, which in its wide-spread expanse of waters, swelled by the late rains, bore ample testimony to the appropriateness of its name, and the unappreciable value of the structure which enabled the traveller to gaze over firm rails into the turbulent current below, and exultingly to compare the feelings which the prospect of crossing it after rains had formerly excited to his present sense of security and ease. But it was *cold comfort* drawing comparisons, in endeavouring to cultivate the sublime under so inauspicious a sky; and again submitting to a *crush* (not a whit less delightful than an opera one), the party proceeded to enter the kloof, which, but for the mantle of fresher green the fertilizing showers had lent it, would have presented a gloomy appearance. Yet, spite of the frowning heavens and lowering clouds, bedewing with silent drops, as though heavily weeping over the mournful scene, there was not one but *whose bosom lord sat lightly on its*

*throne*, as the merry laugh and jest could testify; and softer strains too floated up those verdant slopes, catching doubtless in their fairy course the startled ear of many a wild denizen of the tangled krantzies.

“The party halted at the Wolvenkraal station to partake of somewhat more substantial fare than *music-moody food*; bearing ample testimony to the superiority of mountain breezes to create an appetite, more than all the *Kitchener's Zests* or *Reading Sauces* ever invented. Amongst the merry toasts which followed, the health of Mr. Thomas Bain must not be forgotten (accompanied as it was with the well-merited eulogiums from every gentleman present who had it in his power to contribute his testimony to his sterling worth and professional standing); nor yet that of the Misses Bain, who have secured the admiration and warmest esteem of all who have been privileged to enjoy their hospitality and friendship. A passing tribute, too, must be paid to the ready tact and humour of Captain Pilkington, who (like Falstaff not only witty himself but the cause of wit in others) drew forth, with a success which astonished both him and them, the latent oratorical powers of some embryo senators present, eliciting from the Rev. Mr. Meeser and others, sentiments which visibly deepened certain *roseate tints*. It was with evident regret that this little reunion broke up, but the scene which opened on the party as they penetrated further into the kloof must soon have effaced every minor impression. The misty mountain tops were enveloped in fleecy clouds of driving rain, through which the declining sun now and then threw a sickly beam, momentarily dwelling on some flowery shrub, loaded with dew drops, which

glittered in the faint and rosy light like a shower of priceless gems; or giving to some distant shape of moss the transient and deceptive glare of new fallen snow, then waning and dying away like the 'blush upon a maiden's cheek.'

"In the deep valley below fretted and foamed the White River, now swelled into a broad and rippling torrent, bowing the heads of the tall shrubs and trees like bulrushes, and carrying all obstacles before it, save when the babbling current and broken foam indicated some mighty mass of rock, which the strong hand of the blaster had dislodged from its proud seat of centuries, and sent on crushing ruin into its pebbly bed. The Baboon River from an opposite kloof descended like a cord of silver to meet the turbid waters, throwing up at the junction a cloud of dewy spray, over which in the uncertain sunlight faintly hovered a delicately tinted arch, and from the precipitous kloofs which flanked the roads, every stream (which seemed in passing so insignificant, compared with the majestic structure erected to withstand its fury) now came down in tumbling cascades, leaping and foaming through the rocks, and sending off innumerable gushing rills, until the large body of waters were hurried with great violence into the chasm below the bridge, almost turning the unaccustomed brain of him who could stand dry-shod upon it, and cast his eye to that headlong plunge, and watch it running its course in gurgling music into the river beneath. Ever and anon, too, a fitful blast of wind would come sweeping mournfully down the valley, ruthlessly scattering the *orient pearls*, which clustered on the slenderest twig, and leaving as

it passed each rushing torrent a halo of waterdrops to mark its course. It needed but a peal or two of *Heaven's artillery* among those echoing crags, and a forked flash to lend its ghastly light to the dark depths in the distance, to complete the grandeur of the scene. With the sound of these magnificent cascades still lingering in their ears—like a far-off strain of melody—the party rounded the neck, and leaving the kloof, closing a gloom behind them, commenced the descent of the mountain in a deluge of rain that would have quenched the enthusiasm of the most resolute naturalist and landscape painter, but which failed to damp the fire of wit kept up even by those exposed most to its merciless peltings, and which ended not, until a hospitable mansion received them. And now this ‘tedious brief tale’ is drawing to an end. The following morning the faces of the party were directed townwards, stopping only to admire Berg River rushing (as if in impotent rage) through the arches of Wellington Bridge; and a second time for the more agreeable purpose of refreshment. At 7 p.m. they ended their eventful trip almost as abruptly as this imperfect description of it.”

My inspection did not confine itself to the tour above mentioned during the first year of my chairmanship; for on the 11th May, 1853, previous, I proceeded with the board from Cape Town to Wellington, through Bain's and Mitchel's Passes by Ceres, and the Warm Bokkeveld to the Karoo Poort and back country; and I gained much local information by this excursion, so that we could safely recommend the construction of a bridge at the station near Mitchel's Pass, where Brecke River is but just twenty feet broad, and where a junction

of the branches can be easily effected, so as to complete the line from Bain's Kloof to Mitchel's Pass. Also another bridge at Ceres over the river there, so as to secure that no obstruction by water can take place between Cape Town and the Karoo.

Both these bridges were commenced and finished whilst I held the chair. I opened the one at Ceres and named it Breda's Bridge, in honour of our member, and the other was opened by Captain Pilkington (I could not attend, being charged with the police department in Cape Town), and it was named Grey's Bridge after our respected Governor.

On the 17th October, 1853, I made with the board another important inspection of the line from Cape Town to Malmesbury and Clanwilliam by Piketberg, so as to facilitate carriage from the back country,—such as the vicinity of Clanwilliam, Olifant's River, Sandveld, Onder Olifant's River, Hardeveld, Kamiesberg, Namaqualand, Voor en Achter Hantam, Onder Roggeveld, Onder Bokkeveld, Biedouw, Cederbergen, Karoo, and the whole of what is called the Trekvelde. The different persons interested were heard, and plans examined, and the board recommended the Pikenier's Kloof as a main line. This pass was commenced and has since been finished before the board's termination.

The advantages to the inhabitants of Clanwilliam and adjacent country will be extensive, when to them by the proposed lines will be opened not only the chief market to Cape Town, but also those of Wellington, Paarl, Malmesbury, and D'Urban.

And a bridge over the Berg River near Piketberg was also planned, and the site inspected and recommended.



My memoranda on these subjects are published in detail in the annual report of the Central Road Board for the year 1853, annexures D, No. 2 and 4.

My memorandum showing the position of the board in 1855 was printed and presented to both Houses of Parliament by command of His Excellency the Governor in April, 1855.

It would far exceed the limits of this memoir were I to detail the proceedings of the board whilst I had the honour to be the chairman. Suffice it to say, that by a letter from the Colonial Office of 15th June, 1858, to the Commissioners of the late Central Road Board it was stated: "As the Act passed in the last session (1858) of Parliament to provide for the management of the public roads of the colony enacts that after the passing of said Act the Central Board of Commissioners of Public Roads shall cease to exist, and that the Governor shall appoint three commissioners for carrying on the duties of the board until the last day of December next, I am directed by His Excellency the Governor to notify to you, that the board stands dissolved. *His Excellency desires me at the same time to record and convey to you the expression of his thanks for the important services which the board has rendered to the colony by the gratuitous administration, during many years, of one of the most responsible and troublesome branches of the public service.*

*"It is unnecessary for His Excellency to enumerate the many important works, which, in spite of difficulties and not unfrequently of opposition and obloquy, the board has executed.*

*"The influence which the operations have had upon the productions and prosperity of the colony becomes*

*daily more obvious, and His Excellency feels that much is due to the gentlemen who have given their time and services ungrudgingly to the public as commissioners of that board."*

The secretary and officers were continued, and Capt. Hill, Capt. Pilkington, and myself, were appointed by proclamation to be the commissioners above mentioned.

This closed my connection with that important and useful board with regard to the improvement of roads in this colony.

On concluding my operations with the road commission, I took my leave on the 31st December, 1859.

(Extract from the *Cape Argus* of 1st January, 1859.)

"The road commission—consisting of Captain J. M. Hill the Civil Commissioner, the acting Civil Engineer Mr. M. Robinson (absent), and Mr. Borchers—held their last meeting yesterday morning, and disposed of a variety of formal business. Mr. Borchers at the conclusion of the meeting made the following remarks :

" "As we are on the eve of being relieved, under the Act of Parliament, of our duties as commissioners of the public roads, I cannot allow this our last meeting to pass without expressing to the chairman (my successor) the pleasure I felt in co-operating with him and my brother commissioners during the brief period of our existence, and to forward that all-important work—the improvement of the roads in this colony—in the last stage of its original institution.

" "I have witnessed the earnest desire to promote the object in view by the Government, Parliament, and the public, whenever opportunity offered, and have only to

regret that the impracticability of performing personal inspections prevented commissioners gaining that more extensive information which they required, however well furnished with representations, reports, and plans by the officers in the board's employ.

“‘It will always be to me matter of gratification to recollect the cordial co-operation of the members of the board when I had the honour of holding the chair, and their readiness to adopt that which appeared most beneficial and desirable in furtherance of the great plan to improve our roads and bridges. Much personal sacrifice and anxiety have I witnessed under gratuitous performance of a service subject to public remark and censure, and, however well intended, not meeting the expectations of all parties concerned. A mere glance over the reports lately furnished by the divisional councils and our own, on the various lines requiring making, improving, and keeping in constant repair, will convince that means and machinery were not adequate to complete the works on so extensive a scale as the extent of the country required.

“‘When in retirement from the service in the commencement of 1857, the Colonial Secretary had the kind consideration of offering me to continue in the chair, I requested that the present chairman might do so, and accepted a membership of the board; partly because my health failed, and partly because my domicile in the country would cause frequent absence from town, whilst our chairman could daily attend and have the opportunity of more readily forwarding the current intermediate duties and arrangements required in conjunction with the society; and I am

satisfied by taking that course, for setting aside personal desire, I have consulted the public interest.

“‘And now, Mr. Chairman, allow me to express my thanks for the courtesy with which you conducted the duties of the chair, and your patience and readiness to listen to any suggestion offered to promote the object of our charge.

“‘And Mr. Secretary, with whom I have now had the pleasure of serving nearly six years, permit me to tender you my acknowledgment of the valuable services you rendered to me, both as chairman and member of this road department. Your experience, ready information, and valuable reference (and I may add, particularly fitted talent in the management of matters as the board’s minister), have often attracted my attention, and been to myself and brother commissioners of great service and guidance in the performance of our respective duties.

“‘With these observations I shall now close, Mr. Chairman and Secretary, wishing you success in the various duties you may still have to perform in the public service of this colony ; hoping and trusting that they may jointly and separately tend to promote the public welfare of my fellow-colonists. Whilst thus closing the fifty-eighth year of my employment as a public servant, I will in retirement, if further spared, under God’s blessing, keep in pleasing recollection the good fellowship experienced also in the last stage of public life.’

“Capt. Hill rejoined that he had always experienced the greatest pleasure in serving with Mr. Borchers there and at other places, and he felt much gratified at

the complimentary manner in which Mr. Borchers had spoken of him ; and though he might have doubts as to his own deserts, he was sure that the secretary deserved all that was said of him. Mr. de Smidt also returned thanks to Mr. Borchers, but waived all claims to credit of service rendered, as he considered that the board had been mainly indebted to the *employés* for the efficient manner in which the services had been conducted, more particularly the accountant. Both Captain Hill and Mr. Borchers coincided with Mr. de Smidt in his allusion to the abilities of that gentleman, and agreed that his services ought to be brought specially to the notice of Government. Captain Hill and Mr. Borchers then rose, and formally took leave of each other and the secretary in their capacity as road commissioners."

## SECTION XVI.

In 1853, a case was brought before me as Resident Magistrate, namely : A shareholder in a joint-stock company claimed to be registered as a voter on the ground of his being a joint occupier of the building in which the company carried on its business; an objection was lodged, parties were heard on the 8th, and I postponed, and gave my decision on the 11th of October; and in the leading article of the *South African Commercial Advertiser and Cape Town Mail* I found the following remark :

“ In noticing the postponement of the decision in a case which seems so clear, we cannot help observing that of all men who ever did honour to the bench, none have evinced more caution, more prudence, more conscientiousness, or a sounder judgment than Mr. Borchers. He was the first resident magistrate of Cape Town, and however trivial the cases brought before him might be in themselves, he seems to have considered that in every case he was elucidating a principle, settling a practice, and establishing a precedent. It was objected to Lord Eldon that he was prone to doubt. It was for some time objected to Mr. Borchers that postponement was his foible; time has relieved the character of both from any shade of blame on this head, and shown that respect and confidence both of the profession and of the public are most surely gained by the judge who gives time to first impressions to become solid, distinct, and immovable. Mr. Borchers has been now more than twenty-five years resident magistrate of Cape Town and civil commissioner

of the Cape district, and in both capacities the same reputation has quietly gathered around him by the unanimous consent of the whole community. Good temper which nothing can disturb, good sense—the most precious of gifts, unquestioned and unquestionable uprightness, learning, and experience, have made this gentleman an honour and a blessing to his country.

“Are there many such?—we mean of native-born colonists : time will show. Judge of nothing before the time. Colonial talent and colonial virtue are about to be called into public action more extensively than in former days. The few specimens which opportunity and chance have afforded give the best auguries for what is to come.”

I insert this with a view of stating that I feel the author of this paragraph has far overrated my deserts, both in the comparison with the eminent judge and the good qualities ascribed to me ; and further, to explain that my motive for postponing judgments rested upon experience, which taught me that the “knock-off” practice was dangerous in principle and effect. I exercised occasionally the prerogative of a judge, to deliberate and consider before finally disposing of a case, with a view to promote the good and pure administration of justice, and to prevent my committing acts injurious to those who had claims upon my prudence, patience, and fair distribution of justice. I was sole judge, and my responsibility personal,—and the many cases of the poor required tender care. I never regretted that practice, because I cannot trace any injury thereby done to parties ; but I have cause to regret that, in some instances, I judged from first impressions, and on reflecting, found that if time had been taken for

consideration, my judgments would have been more correct. Perhaps this note may be of some service to my inexperienced brother magistrates ; they will at the close of their career not repent having copied my example. I hope they will take the hint as well meant.

In May, 1854, that memorable event, namely, *the first election of members for the House of Assembly for the electoral division of Cape Town*, occurred, and as magistrate I was, *ex officio*, the returning officer.

Within a few minutes of the doors being opened, the large hall of the Supreme Court, where the meeting took place, was densely crowded in every part, and the several candidates, as they made their appearance, were received with cordial cheers by their various friends and supporters.

Having opened the proceedings by reading the section of the Order in Council alluding to the elections, and the public notice which I had issued calling the meeting,—at the close I declared the result of the poll, and announced the names of the successful candidates, namely, Hercules Crosse Jarvis, James Abercrombie, M.D., Saul Solomon, and F. L. C. Biccard, M.D., which was received with great cheering ; and having stated that if any of the candidates wished to say anything they would be heard, Mr. Jarvis (though indisposed) expressed his thanks. Dr. Abercrombie and Mr. Saul Solomon addressed the meeting at great length, opening their views and sentiments. Dr. Biccard was absent, being indisposed ; and I closed this interesting meeting with the following address :

“Gentlemen,—Previous to my closing the proceedings of this day, allow me to congratulate you on being



returned as duly elected members of the Assembly, by the voters in this City of Cape Town, including Green Point Municipality.

“Gentlemen,—I feel confident that you will appreciate the trust reposed, and do your duty with zeal and fidelity to the public cause; with justice to all parties, and satisfaction to your constituents, and with credit and honour to yourselves; and that you will take an active part in all measures promoting public good.

“I have observed, and am always happy to learn from the polling officers and information in general, that though the election has been conducted with spirit, yet that order and tranquillity, and no disturbance of peace, have marked the proceedings (cheers). This does great credit to our community, and the peaceful inhabitants of this town, the capital of the colony. Gentlemen, I feel a deep interest in the welfare of this my native country, and trust that the constitution, so liberally granted by our beloved Sovereign, will prove a blessing to the community at large. The voters have shown discretion and their fitness to elect, and the elected will, I trust, respond warmly and truly to the sacred call of their election (cheers). An unbroken period of service of more than half a century (having been the magistrate in this electoral division for upwards of forty years) has endeared the interest and welfare of this town particularly to my heart; and will plead I hope in behalf of the feelings I entertain for its inhabitants. This is the land which bore my cradle, and will I hope embosom my remains, where the parent dropped in rest and the offspring will witness the result of our present political change, and be

able to judge whether the constitution carried with it the blessing intended by our gracious Sovereign and expected by its supporters, and whether our elected have done their duty as true patriots and fellow-citizens (loud cheers). Gentlemen, may the Almighty Ruler of the Universe bless your measures, guide your deliberations and resolutions, to increase prosperity and happiness in the breadth and length of South Africa. And in closing, let us once more thank our beloved Queen and Her Majesty's advisers, by three cheers for *the Queen!*"

This call was instantly responded to as with one voice by the whole assembly, followed by "Three cheers for Lieutenant-Governor Darling," and cheers without number "For the representatives of the city, the members of Cape Town."

And, says the reporter: "Thanks were awarded with equal cordiality to the venerable chairman, for his able and impartial conduct in the chair," and the meeting separated.

I will now state the results by adding that His Excellency the Governor Sir George Grey in closing the last session on June 5, 1858, at which I was present, made the following remarks in his speech to Parliament:

"I cannot permit this last session of the first Parliament of the Cape of Good Hope to close, without expressing my thanks to the members for the zealous and efficient exertions which they have throughout its whole continuance made to advance the interest of this country, for the sacrifices they have made for the public good, for their remarkable freedom from faction and party spirit, and for the support and aid which they

have so often afforded me under circumstances of great difficulty and perplexity. These will all leave an impression of gratitude and friendly feeling upon my mind, which nothing can efface. And these sentiments are heightened by the conviction I feel, that the wisdom and moderation evinced by the Members of this Parliament have conclusively shown, that the people of the colony were in every way fitted to use well and wisely the liberal constitution which Her Majesty in her gracious care for the welfare and advancements of themselves and their descendants was pleased to bestow upon them. Thinking that, I cannot but confidently indulge the belief that this, the first Parliament of the Cape of Good Hope, will be admitted to have established lasting claims upon the gratitude of their country."

This declaration was so pleasing and satisfactory that I could not help recording it in my memoirs as a memorable event witnessed by me.

In order that my case may be perfectly understood, and the grounds upon which Parliament granted me a gratuity, I will here insert a memorandum of the Hon. Mr. Justice E. B. Watermeyer, made at the time he was practising as an advocate, and when I had placed my documents in his hands, with the view of drawing up my case and obtaining his opinion,—this was in March, 1855.

Memorandum drawn by Mr. Advocate E. B. Watermeyer, now a Puisne Judge of the Supreme Court at the Cape of Good Hope, of Mr. P. B. Borchers' services.

"The public services of Mr. Borchers have been of a nature unparalleled in this colony; from boyhood to old age, in the discharge of functions the most varied;

from his youth placed in positions of responsibility, he has for the space of fifty-five years enjoyed the confidence of the government which he faithfully served, and the respect of the community for whose benefit he assiduously labored.

“Testimonials ranging from the days of the Batavian Government under General Janssens to the present date, from the highest dignitaries of the land, with uniform expressions of esteem and gratitude for services rendered, speak his worth.

“The most respected among the Cape Governors, (those most acquainted with the duties performed by him from time to time), Lord Caledon, Sir Richard Bourke, Sir Benjamin D’Urban, Sir George Napier, Sir Harry Smith, have recorded their testimony of him as one of the most valuable public officers whose services the colony had been privileged to enjoy. Sir Andries Stockenström, himself in the public service from an early age, has been warm in his praise, and brought his claims to the notice of the Legislative Council. The Judges of the Supreme Court and the highest legal functionaries, during upwards of half a century, have borne honorable witness to the laboriousness of Mr. Borchers’ duties as the magistrate of the most populous division of the colony, and have recorded their opinions of the learning, efficiency, and honesty of purpose, with which these laborious duties have been discharged.

“In fine, it is admitted by every one in the government service capable of forming a judgment, as it is known to every one of the public observant of the mode in which the obligations of office are discharged, that Mr. Borchers is, for length and value of service

unequalled in the colony ; and for integrity, efficiency, and ability, unsurpassed by any. And what have been the advantages resulting to this gentleman ? What is his pecuniary position in regard to the public after the long series of years devoted to their service ?

“ At the present moment Mr. Borchers, though of an age at which many would seek relaxation from work, for which he would himself, according to the rules of office, be entitled to a retiring allowance nearly equalling his salary, enjoys faculties matured by experience and unimpaired by years, and unwilling to be a burden, while he can yet give the advantage of his knowledge and ability to his country, prefers labour to the idleness which official regulations (but not the conscientious regard for the public welfare which he has ever displayed) would permit him to enjoy. He is yet willing to devote his energies to his official duties as Civil Commissioner and Magistrate of the Cape Division ; and in the many unpaid offices to which the confidence of the Colonial Government has appointed him.

“ The case of a gentleman so devoted to his duties is an exceptional one, and worthy of the highest consideration. But when it is asked, what has been the reward of this honourable career, of a life spent solely and with invaluable benefit to the welfare of his country and its government ? a sense of shame cannot but be felt at the mere mention of such inadequately requited labours and merits.

“ Having lived entirely for the public service with a devotedness to duty rarely witnessed, his reward has been unqualified approbation from all governments, a character for probity and zeal in the discharge of his

various offices (which sheds lustre on himself, and are an honour to the country),—but in a pecuniary sense considerable loss, serious disappointment, and severe struggling in the honourable rearing and education of a large family.

“When on the introduction of the Supreme Court into this colony in 1827, and abolition of the Court of Justice (then the highest tribunal in civil and criminal matters), the members of this court were entitled to retire on a pension of £200 each. Mr. Borchers already twenty-seven years in the service sought no rest, but expressed his anxiety to render the efficient aid he was so well qualified to give, in some other capacity to the public.

“His value was well known, and the proffer gladly accepted by Government. In consequence of this resolution of Mr. Borchers, the annual sum of £200 for twenty-eight years has been saved on the pension list, and the colony has thus benefited to the extent of £5,600, while services such as few could render as efficiently have been secured.

“At this time, under the new judicial arrangements, it was requisite to appoint men of the highest qualifications to the more important magisterial posts. Mr. Borchers was selected for the office of Judge of Police, the duties of which he had, in fact, while a Commissioner of the Court of Justice, discharged under the old system. In addition, he undertook the important functions of Resident Magistrate for Cape Town and Cape division, then including Wynberg, Simon's Bay, and Malmesbury,\* at a salary of £800 per annum.

\* And a maritime jurisdiction in the two principal ports of the colony.

“Mr. Borchers’ appointment of Judge of Police, to which immediately the magisterial duties of the division were superadded, was gazetted at the same time as the appointment of the late Clerke Burton, Esq., as Master of the Supreme Court, and the two appointments bore the same salary.

“In 1834, additional important functions having in the meantime been added to the office of Magistrate for the Cape division, the Home Government resolved to separate the office of Resident Magistrate from that of Judge of Police; Mr. Borchers was in consequence relieved of the duties of Judge of Police; but another most important office was confided to him, and he was gazetted as Civil Commissioner of the Cape division.

“The labours of this office need not be recapitulated. The head of the civil administration of the most populous and important division of the colony performs functions the mere detail of which would be inconsistent with the brevity of this sketch, and which are understood by all who have attended to the governmental system of the colony.

“About this period the financial difficulties of the colony were considered to be of a very serious nature. In consequence of this a reduction of salaries took place. And after thirty-four years of service, at the very time when his resources were most severely taxed for the education of his family (some of his sons being engaged in preparations for professional pursuits), the salary of Mr. Borchers was reduced to £500,\*—the same salary which he had had in 1826 while permanent

(\*To this was afterwards added house-rent and temporary allowance for a horse on service.)

Commissioner of the Court of Justice. At this time without any new duties added, the office of the Master of the Supreme Court, gazetted on the same day with the appointment of Mr. Borchers in 1828, was retained at £800 per annum. The Superintendent of Police, who relieved Mr. Borchers of part only of his duties, namely, those of the Judge of Police (for which, however, those of the civil commissionership were substituted), received £600 per annum besides allowances.

“However disappointed in his expectations, and suffering serious loss and inconvenience from the unforeseen reduction, Mr. Borchers never wavered in the energetic and upright discharge of his civil and magisterial functions. At this very period of financial difficulty (in 1834) he could have claimed retirement, and was offered a pension of £462 per annum (nearly the full salary he was in future to receive for arduous work), but conscientiously declining to be a burden when he could be of benefit, he refused to accept of this. Thus, at manifest inconvenience and loss to himself, he has saved the public by his continuance in office to this date the additional sum of £9,000, at least.

“A further saving has been effected of at least £1,500 by his continuing to discharge his duties after the time at which he would have been entitled to the usual superannuation allowance.

“Mr. Borchers, whilst thus acting for the benefit of the country, felt that to his family he also owed a duty, and most respectfully brought to the notice of the Home Government the position in which he was placed. Sir Benjamin D’Urban and Sir George



Napier, after the reduction which has been mentioned, both strongly urged his case as one of great hardship, and meriting the particular consideration of the Home Government. Replies acknowledging the high claims were received, and promises of attention as the financial position of the colony would admit, were given. But at the present moment in 1855, Mr. Borchers has only £500 per annum with his allowance for house-rent, after fifty-five years of service of the highest character, while the civil commissioner and resident magistrate of Albany, where the civil and criminal business is but one fourth of that of Cape Town, who has been in the service for not more than two years, draws exactly the same remuneration.

“The subject of Mr. Borchers’ claims and inadequate recompense was brought to the notice of Parliament during last session. Both in the Legislative Council and the House of Assembly, the expression of respect, esteem, and approbation of his services was unanimous.

“It was moved and unanimously carried in both Houses that an address be presented to the Government, conveying the high sense of both Houses of the Legislature of Mr. Borchers’ valuable services, and desiring that they should be favourably considered. It was remarked that this was an unprecedented course with regard to the services of an individual officer; but as was also remarked and acquiesced in by both the Council and Assembly, the honour was peculiarly appropriate to the services which had been rendered.

“In the meanwhile, the Lieutenant-Governor had transmitted for the favourable consideration of the Secretary for the Colonies a memorial of Mr. Borchers,

and the reply of the Secretary of State, dated 24th October, 1854, states that the question of compensation to Mr. Borchers is peculiarly matter for the consideration of the Colonial Parliament. Within some short time, probably a few weeks from this date, the acknowledgment of the expression of opinion of the Colonial Parliament will have been received from England, and it is believed that by this the Colonial Government will be authorized by the Home Government to place on the estimates such amount as a gratuity as may be deemed adequate as an acknowledgment of the long services of Mr. Borchers, on a salary far below the value of those services; and further as compensation for the disappointment incurred, and loss sustained by him in his devotion to his public duties; and secondly, that an additional annual amount be added to the salary now drawn by Mr. Borchers, during such period as he may still hold office.

“If the Government should not feel called upon to take the initiative, after whatever answer may have been received from England, an address embodying the above views might with propriety be voted in both Houses to the Governor, praying him to make such provision.

“That the expression of opinion of the Houses of the Legislature will be unanimous none can doubt.”

Another powerful appeal on my behalf, was Sir Andries Stockenstrom's previous speech and proceedings, in the Legislative Council.

Sir Andries Stockenstrom (the honourable member of Council) said: “I have more than once in this place had occasion to allude to the respectable functionary

about whom I must beg leave to occupy a brief portion of the time of this House, and when, a couple of evenings since, I found how much my view of his services was participated by other honourable members, I thought that I had been guilty of some dereliction of duty in not having sooner brought his case prominently forward, considering that few if any public men now living can have so long and so closely witnessed his official career. I therefore lost no more time in consulting some honourable friends in this as well as in another place, and I am glad to say that I met with every encouragement which such a cause could entitle me to expect. It is nothing more than due to Mr. Borchers that I should premise that I am acting altogether on my own responsibility, without either his solicitation or consent, and that only this morning I obtained from him this book, containing a compilation of documents, serving as a memoir of his public history, which I knew to be in his possession, and which I must make the text for my comments which I have to submit for the consideration of the House. That I look upon the subject of these comments as a friend I cannot deny, and I am proud of the admission; but there has not been as much intercourse or intimacy between him and me as there has been between many other officials and myself, so that I may safely declare that I am actuated altogether by a sense of public duty to the service, which I wish to see intrusted to men of honour, integrity, and ability, who can best be obtained for that service by proving to the community, that such qualifications are appreciated, not only by the representatives of that community, but by its gracious and just

Sovereign, to whose special notice it is my anxious hope that this very uncommon case will be brought. For this object I trust that I may obtain the unanimous co-operation of this House, such as it has already, to my utmost satisfaction, met with in another place. The honourable Secretary seems not to be aware of this fact. I have great pleasure in telling him that a resolution was there passed by acclamation since I gave notice of this motion here ; and it is with the view of producing the same result in this place that I must beg leave to detain you with a summary of the official career of the present Civil Commissioner of the Cape District. He entered the civil service as a clerk in 1800, and continued gradually rising in that capacity through several departments for about ten years, but not without (in that youthful period) having so much earned the confidence of Government as to be appointed assistant secretary of a political mission sent beyond the Orange River in 1801, nor without obtaining the strongest testimonials from the authorities under whom he acted, including the much-respected and gratefully remembered Governor Janssens. The merited result of this was, that on 1st January, 1810, Mr. Borchers was, though so young, appointed Secretary to the district of Stellenbosch, an office the importance of which can only be duly appreciated by those who have been conversant with a system which is now much desired to re-establish, that of Landdrost and Heemraden. This appointment was made by a governor whom so many of us still think of, as the warm friend of this colony and its people, and from whom the gentleman for whom I am pleading has one of the strongest

recommendations to show. I need not say that I allude to the late Earl of Caledon. Mr. Borchers' conduct in that capacity of secretary gained for him from an equally esteemed ruler (Sir John T. Cradock), in 1813, promotion to the post of Deputy Fiscal. How arduous the duties of that office were might be well explained by my venerable friend Mr. Denyssen, who was the Chief Fiscal, and may easily be understood by the honourable and learned Attorney-General, and the other members of his profession; and how they were performed by the then Deputy Fiscal may be seen by a strong testimonial communicated by the Colonial Secretary upon an order from the supreme Government dated 5th May, 1817, and by a most important additional charge intrusted to him on the 16th June, 1819, viz., as one of the commissioners for framing a compendium of colonial laws. In 1823, Mr. Borchers became a member of the then Supreme Court of the colony, and held his seat on the bench until the abolition of that court at the close of 1827. It was one of his duties to go the circuit through the colony in his turn. I was then Landdrost of Graaff-Reinet, one of whose manifold duties was, that of acting Attorney-General or Crown Prosecutor, besides being in some other respects subject to the supervision of the judges. The official as well as personal contact which was rendered unavoidable between us, gave me an opportunity of becoming intimately acquainted with, and duly appreciating the zeal, ability, and character of the functionary and the man. His legal decisions were above my judgment, but I know that they gave satisfaction to his superiors and the public. His equity and impartiality I can pronounce

unexceptionable ; but in a country like this, it is the personal example, the urbane dignity, the benign sympathy with the feelings and social as well as religious habits of the community, by which an official in high station, clothed with authority, can in traversing the land and coming in close contact with the masses, inspire love and respect for himself and confidence in and loyalty towards the Government that sends him ; and in this respect, especially, do I feel myself personally (and as head of one of the largest districts) and my native country generally, under peculiar obligations to Mr. Borchers and others of his colleagues for the moral tone and influence by which they supported and strengthened the local executive. For upwards of twenty-eight years then, Mr. Borchers had gone through the various stages of the public service, but always receiving a very limited salary. Beginning with four pounds ten shillings per annum (my honourable friends may smile, but it is a fact) and ending with five hundred. On 1st January, 1828, the Supreme Court under a new system was ushered in, and Mr. Borchers having to vacate the judgeship in consequence, had an opportunity of exhibiting the exalted principle which actuated him. I had what may be called the weakness of false pride to declare that I would rather live by the spade than become civil commissioner after having been landdrost ; but Mr. Borchers' sense of duty to his Country and Sovereign raised him above such secondary considerations. He saw that he could be as useful as ever, and without hesitation accepted of a complication of charges by which his existence was rendered, and has since been, one of incessant toil, mental exertion,

and overwhelming responsibility, judicial as well as administrative, equal in respectability but surpassing in labour any one in the colony. His then past services and conduct, and then present zeal and patriotism, were not lost sight of; and as one part of the demonstration, his salary was raised to eight hundred pounds sterling per annum. This happened under the administration of my excellent and in this colony most esteemed friend, the then acting Governor Sir Richard Bourke, whose testimony in favour of Mr. Borchers is couched in the strongest possible language. With this salary Mr. Borchers may be supposed to have been able to breathe a little more freely; but alas! when he had added six more years to the period of his services, when he had served in the manner already detailed for four and thirty years, when his duties had increased as fast as his years, when he had a large family to educate and provide for, a reduction of certain high salaries became unavoidable, and no exception was made in favour of this faithful, useful veteran, who was brought down to five hundred pounds with an allowance of one hundred pounds for house-rent. This ruined his purse, but broke not his public spirit, nor diminished his solicitude for the public good, as you may find by the testimonies of which I might here read to you—in addition to those already quoted—from such men as Sir Benjamin D'Urban, Sir George Napier, Sir John Truter, Attorney-Generals Denyssen and Porter, and Lieutenant-Governor Darling, as well as from the Supreme Court and the Executive Council, to which, sir (the president, Sir John Wylde), I am glad to find I may add your own. I now may wind up this imperfect sketch, by stating

that Mr. Borchers, on the verge of seventy, holds and does ample justice to the following situations, namely :

- (a) Civil Commissioner of the Cape Division since 1834.
- (b) Resident Magistrate of Cape Town and Cape District since 1828.
- (c) Justice of the Peace for Cape Town and Cape District since 1827.
- (d) Member of the Committee of Land Registry under Ordinance 97 since 1842.
- (e) Road Magistrate for Cape Town and District since 1846.
- (f) One of the Commissioners to examine Protocols of Notaries since 1847.
- (g) Chairman of Road Board of Cape Division since 1843.
- (h) Chairman of Central Road Board since April, 1853.
- (i) One of the Government Nominees in the Council of Directors of the South African College since December, 1850.

Now, sir, you have before you a colonist born and bred, who has never been out of his native land, except once visiting barbarians, when he went in the service of Government. He consequently owes his extensive acquirements (when we except the miserable instruction which was here to be procured in the days of his youth) exclusively to his own application, industry, and talents. For fifty-four out of sixty-eight years of his life, he has served this country, and for fifty-one out of these fifty-four, he toiled for the benefit and honour of



the British Crown. Early he came into important offices for the greatest portion of his official life ; he held some of the most responsible, confidential situations, as I have already detailed, and for the last six and twenty years at least has performed the complicated duties (some of them gratuitously) of several offices concentrated upon his shoulders, which have rendered his functions beyond comparison the most arduous and laborious in the colony. And how have these duties been performed ? In one word, most unexceptionably. As judge, he has, I believe, the unqualified respect and approbation of the Supreme Court and the leading men of the bar. In his political or administrative functions, he has ever been looked upon as especially a Government man, without, however, losing sight of the interests and rights of the people ; so that both the ruling and the popular parties are equally indebted to him. I have already shown that at the very time when his labours became more overwhelming than ever, when his years had reached beyond the prime of life, when his physical strength began to decrease, and his domestic obligations and liabilities had accumulated around him, that then his official resources were paralyzed by a considerable reduction in his salary. I do not quarrel with this reduction as a general measure, because the state of the finances may have rendered it imperative, but I do maintain it ought not to have been allowed to fall upon a man who had served four and thirty years (and served as he had done), and who had just descended from the bench of the Supreme Court into an inferior, but much more laborious position, from purely patriotic motives. I speak of his official

resources because he has no other; and this memoir can prove to you that the reduction literally ruined him financially. It must appear impertinent in me, thus diving into the private circumstances of a high-minded, high-principled gentleman, who has not authorized me to meddle with his case; but I am quite ready to apologize for publicly saying that the treatment which Mr. Borchers has met with has made him very poor in the winter of his days: and I may add that any man may be proud of poverty who can trace it to the same sources. I have also occasionally been classed, justly or not, among the so-called patriots of South Africa. I also sometimes flatter myself that I have tried to serve my Sovereign and Country. I also have had to struggle with low salaries, but it was my fate to be in a position to create for myself a sort of rallying point to retreat upon, whenever official resources failed. I did obtain a grant of land, and had my flocks to help me, but my client (if I may so call a friend who has not even consulted me) has devoted all the days and most of the nights of his life (except those of the cradle and of childhood) to the toils of office, and had not a moment to look after any flock but the Government and the public; so that when he makes his final exit he leaves his widow and other dependents penniless. I may be asked why, if this case be so strong, it has been so long neglected? It has not been neglected by the party chiefly concerned, who knew his duty to his family as well as that to his country; nor has the Government refused to admit and consider his case; but the humble unpretending mode in which he has gradually increased his claim, without

ostentation or obtrusion, has prevented the public ear from being dinned with the grievance until now. When I think that one of the blessings to be derived from the Constitution will be the removal by Parliament of the difficulties which the Executive may see in the way of redress in such cases, I need say no more. I am thankful for the attention with which I have been listened to. We may safely, I trust, leave the pecuniary part of the question to the consideration of another place ; but I think it desirable that beyond the mere matter of pounds, shillings, and pence, the expression of Her Majesty's approbation would be a valuable boon to her venerable, faithful, and meritorious servant. I therefore move : 'That an address be presented to His Honour the Lieutenant-Governor, praying that he may be pleased to bring to the particular notice of Her Majesty's Government the long and valuable services rendered to this colony for upwards of fifty-four years by P. B. Borchers, Esq., Civil Commissioner of the Cape division, forty-eight years whereof have been devoted to the service of the British Crown.'

"Mr. Ebden seconded the motion, stating the warm respect he had been led to entertain for Mr. Borchers, during the long course of his knowledge of that gentleman's official and private life.

"Mr. Vigne could hardly claim the honour of the acquaintance of the gentleman whose name and merits were brought forward in the motion ; but he had ever heard him spoken of in a manner amply justifying the eulogies which the honourable baronet had pronounced.

“Mr. Rutherford could bear testimony to the irreproachable character which Mr. Borchers had always sustained in this colony. The reduction of his salary at the time and under the circumstances stated by the honourable baronet was a reproach to the Government and the colony.

“Mr. Godlonton said that it was refreshing amidst the turmoil of different political views, that the members of Council could have the opportunity of uniting to do honour where it was so justly due. Even all the distance in which he himself lived from the scene of Mr. Borchers’ ordinary avocations, that officer’s reputation was well known. It was gratifying that his claims had been taken up so warmly by one who had long served the public himself, and was so well able to judge personally of the character of the work done for the Government and the public by the gentleman who had been so honourably named.

“The Colonial Secretary wished to bring to the notice of the House, without attempting to disparage for one moment the merits or services of Mr. Borchers, the unprecedented step that was proposed. It was not usual in the Imperial Parliament thus to bring the services of an individual officer to the notice of the Crown; yet perhaps the unprecedented honour may be considered as peculiarly appropriate to the case of such services as those that had been alluded to. To himself, in his own position, it was a matter of much gratification to feel that a public officer could by a long course of beneficial service to the country earn such acknowledgments from its legislature. He thought it right

to offer these few remarks; but would say nothing in opposition to the motion."

Sir A. Stockenstrom in reply said,—“I feel truly grateful for the cordiality and sympathy with which my sentiments have been responded to, and I trust that even if contrary to all expectation ample justice should not be done to Mr. Borchers by the Queen's Government, at least the public men, and especially the young beginners in the colonial service, will be convinced that the Parliament and the country it represents will not be found indifferent about or ungrateful for zeal, ability, and honesty, evinced in the cause of their fellow-subjects. I trust that this example, as well as that of other eminent men, who are only second to Mr. Borchers in length of service, will be extensively followed; and I cannot omit to express my sincere thanks to the honourable Secretary, who, whilst he considers our proceedings unprecedented and unusual, shows that he also looks upon the case before us as uncommon, and warmly enters into the feeling of the House by backing its testimony as far as he has had time to experience how well it is merited. I am glad that I was not aware that I was steering an unprecedented course, for although that knowledge would not have altered my feelings, it might have made me more particular as to form. At all events, I believe that the House may rely on the co-operation and justice of His Honour the Lieutenant-Governor.”

The motion was carried unanimously, and Sir Andries Stockenstrom, Mr. Rutherford, and Mr. Blaine were appointed a committee to draw up an appropriate address to the Lieutenant-Governor on the subject.

Documents to which Sir Andries Stockenstrom alluded in his speech in the Legislative Council.

[ No. 1. ]

I, the undersigned, Johannes Wege, Secretary of the Drostdy Stellenbosch, do hereby certify that Mr. Petrus Borchardus Borchers, after having served some months at the Secretary's office at Stellenbosch in the year 1800, has been appointed at the recommendation of Landdrost and Heemraden as clerk in said office; that in September of the following year he proceeded on a journey to the interior of the colony and returned in 1802, and served again for a certain period in said office; and further that during the whole time of his serving in said situation, under superintendence of the undersigned, he performed his duty with all diligence, to the particular satisfaction of the undersigned, and has given proof to be a person of very good conduct.

Therefore this is granted to said Borchers at his request as a person meriting recommendation, to be used in such manner as may be thought proper.

This certified at the Secretary's office at Stellenbosch, this 27th day of September, 1809, and verified by my usual signature.

J. WEGE.

[ No. 2. ]

I, the undersigned, P. J. Truter, senior, Member of the Court of Justice at the Cape of Good Hope, do certify by these presents that Mr. Petrus Borchardus Borchers, at present clerk in the Court of Justice

office, has been employed from the 1st October, 1801, until the 1st October, 1802, with the sanction and approbation of His Excellency the then Governor, Francis Dundas, as Assistant Secretary to the Government expedition in the interior parts of this Colony, and especially to the Beriquas and Boshuanahs, in which I had the honour to be first commissioner.

That the conduct, behaviour, and zeal of said Borchers in that situation has proved fully satisfactory to the Commissioner William Somerville, Esq., the Secretary Mr. S. Daniell, and myself; that whenever in this expedition—which was attended with many dangers and fatigues—during the day and night his services were required, I found him always willing and attentive, at all times endeavouring to collect such information and regard such instruction as tended to improve his knowledge of the country and promote other beneficial purposes.

I therefore do not hesitate to give said Borchers, at his request, this certificate, that he might make use of the same in such manner as he shall judge proper.

P. J. TRUTER, sen.

Cape of Good Hope, 15th Sept., 1809.

---

[ No. 3. ]

South Africa, Cape of Good Hope,  
28th February, 1806.

SIR,—I have the honour to return you my thanks for the attention and zeal which you have manifested in

assisting to finish and arrange my papers. Your behaviour in this instance affords me the agreeable prospect that you will by perseverance always render yourself deserving of approbation from your superiors, by which you will ensure to yourself that degree of happiness which all virtuous and industrious young men are entitled to.

I have, &c.,

J. W. JANSSENS.

To Mr. P. B. Borchersds.

[General Janssens had been Governor of the Colony under the Batavian Government.]

---

[ No. 4. ]

Government House, 18th January, 1810.

SIR,—I could not feel otherwise than highly gratified by those expressions of obligation and regard which were contained in your letter addressed to me upon the 27th December ultimo.

It has been my study in the selections which I have made for office that the individual should not only be eligible from his public capacity, but also from his private worth, and it must be an additional source of pleasure for you to know that had not your son appeared eligible in each point of view, I should not have selected him for promotion.

His own merit brought him into my notice, and my respect for your character confirmed me in the inclination to serve him.

I beg you, sir, to accept my sincere wishes for a long continuance of the domestic happiness you at present



enjoy, and trust that you will consider me, with perfect esteem, your very faithful friend and most obedient servant,

CALEDON.

The Rev. M. Borchersds, V.D.M.

[His Lordship was then Governor of the Colony.]

[ No. 5. ]

Colonial Office, 5th May, 1817.

SIR,—I am directed by His Excellency the Governor to inform you that he has received the sanction of His Majesty's Government in England, to an increase of salary being made to the Deputy Fiscal Mr. Borchersds, in consideration of his useful and meritorious services. Mr. Borchersds will therefore draw salary at the rate of Rds. 4,500 per annum, so long as he shall fill the situation of Deputy Fiscal; but upon his vacating that office, the salary of the Deputy Fiscal will revert to its former standard of Rds. 3,000 per annum, the increased allowance to commence from 1st July last.

I have, &c.,

C. BIRD.

To D. Denyssen, Esq., H.M. Fiscal.

[ No. 6. ]

The undersigned, J. A. Truter, Knt., late Chief Justice at the Cape of Good Hope, and since 1789 employed in chief offices in this colony, and thus enabled to observe closely the conduct and official duties performed by Mr. P. B. Borchersds, now Civil

Commissioner and Resident Magistrate of Cape Town and Cape District, doth hereby certify that he, Mr. Borchers, after serving a considerable period as clerk and afterwards secretary of the district of Stellenbosch, was promoted in 1813 as Deputy Fiscal in Cape Town whilst I was Chief Justice, and continued as such till 1823, when he was appointed as Member of the Court of Justice, and in 1825 as permanent Sitting Commissioner (a situation corresponding nearly with the present magistracy), and as such also employed in extra committees, and especially to frame a general placard (in conjunction with me) for the colony; and the undersigned declares that he never observed in the conduct of Mr. Borchers the least neglect, inattention, or inactivity, but, on the contrary, that unwearied application and attentiveness marked his whole conduct, and that he signalized himself in particular by talent, sound judgment, and propriety in every situation, so much so, indeed, that the undersigned doth not in the least hesitate conscientiously to pronounce that he considered Mr. Borchers always, and still doth consider him at present, as one of the most meritorious functionaries in the Government of this colony.

Given under my hand, this 6th day of July, in the year of our Lord 1836.

J. A. TRUTER.

---

[ No. 7. ]

Clifton, Bristol, 11th March, 1851.

I have much pleasure in expressing the high opinion I entertain of the services rendered by Mr. Borchers,

whilst employed during my administration at the Cape of Good Hope, in the years 1826, 1827, and 1828. I found Mr. Borchers on my arrival in the colony, at the commencement of 1826, on the bench of the chief Colonial Court, and having noticed with what industry and intelligence he discharged those duties, I appointed him to other offices of a more active and important character in the administration of justice and police in Cape Town, and had the satisfaction of being assured that I had greatly benefited the colony in the selection and appointment of Mr. Borchers.

The very considerable offices he has since held and still holds, proves this early preference to have been well founded, and at the same time have established the claim of Mr. Borchers on the public consideration, whenever his advanced age (his whole life having been devoted to the colony) shall render his retirement advisable.

RICHARD BOURKE, Lieut.-General.

---

[ No. 8. ]

The Civil Commissioner and Resident Magistrate of the Cape district, Petrus Borchardus Borchers, Esq., having referred to us for our opinion as to the manner in which from the establishment of the Supreme Court in this Colony, on the 1st January, 1828, he has appeared to us to have conducted the very laborious duties attached to those appointments,—we most readily take advantage of such opportunity to express the very high and perfect satisfaction with which we have found him to have performed the duties of the resident magistracy, and to afford him hereby the

strongest testimony in our power to convey, as to the fidelity, industry, and efficiency with which he has been enabled to execute the manifold and oppressive duties, with no less credit to himself than advantage to the public.

JOHN WYLDE, Chief Justice.

W. MENZIES.

G. KEKEWICH.

Supreme Court Chambers, Cape of Good Hope,  
2nd July, 1836.

---

[ No. 9. ]

Sir George Napier, the Governor, on leaving the colony wrote the following letter :

Cape of Good Hope, Camp Ground,  
31st March, 1844.

MY DEAR MR. BORCHERDS,—I have great pleasure in bearing testimony to your high character as one of the oldest Government servants in the colony, and one who has invariably received the approbation and confidence of every Governor since you first became a public functionary. I have spoken to Sir Peregrine Maitland in high terms of you, and I shall also to Lord Stanley, and most happy shall I be if what I report may be of service; and in wishing you every success and prosperity, and assuring you of my approbation of your conduct during the six years I have been Governor, believe me,

My dear Mr. Borchers,

Yours faithfully,

GEO. NAPIER.

[ No. 10. ]

On my application that the allowance of house-rent should be drawn as salary, Sir Harry Smith gave in reply the following minute :

Government House, Cape Town,  
3rd May, 1848.

It appears to me that the present is not the occasion to further Mr. Borchers' views, but when this valuable and faithful officer desires to retire after his length of services, then should application be made for his retiring allowance upon the principle he proposes, and Mr. Borchers is to be assured my strongest recommendation shall accompany such application to the Secretary of State, for no public servant ever more zealously served his Government in a greater variety of offices or with greater zeal and ability.

This minute, &c.

H. G. SMITH, Governor.

[ No. 11. ]

In the Supreme Court,  
Cape of Good Hope.

In respect of my office, since I entered upon the same in November, 1827, it has been part of my judicial duty to have in cognizance the proceedings of the Resident Magistrate's Court in Cape Town.

From the period thence up to the present date, that court has been presided over, and remained in the sole administration (except for some short intervals on leave of absence) of Mr. P. B. Borchers, as and still the

Resident Magistrate of Cape district, who has also as long continued to fulfil the responsible duties of its Civil Commissioner.

No other resident magistrate's court throughout the colony can have had so much business in its jurisdiction to transact ; the civil commissioner of no other district can have been more heavily chargeable with district concerns and personal responsibility. To the due control, management, and execution of such weighty conjoint official duties, strong capacity, constant attention, sound judgment, high principle, and matured experience were absolutely requisite, and in the highly satisfactory performance of such functions by Mr. Borchers, he has evinced his full possession of those eminent qualifications and proved his title. I am impressed to the fullest concurrent testimony as to such his acquirements, of all who have been interested in or had occasion for observance upon the jurisdiction and services in his charge.

The appeals from his sentences in his weekly courts (averaging one thousand five hundred cases in each year) to the Supreme Court have been so few as to convince beyond all question of the confidence reposed in and avouched by his conscientious and well-considered decisions, while no public officer in the establishment can stand, I conceive, higher in general respect as to courtesy, attention, and fidelity in the entire department intrusted to his vigilance, discretion, and effective superintendence.

JOHN WYLDE, Chief Justice of the Colony.

Supreme Court Chambers, 8th July, 1851.

[ No. 12. ]

I, Daniel Denyssen, LL.D., do hereby certify that in or about the month of April, 1803, when I was one of the Members of the Court of Justice, and was acting for the Secretary of the said Court, who was then absent from the Colony, Mr. P. B. Borchers, at present Civil Commissioner of the Cape division and Resident Magistrate of Cape Town, has been appointed clerk at the secretary's office of the said court, and has as far as I can recollect continued in the said situation, till, on the 1st January, 1810, he was promoted to the situation of Secretary to the district of Stellenbosch; and afterwards on the 19th March, 1813, has been promoted to the situation of Deputy Fiscal, in which he has remained till 21st February, 1823, when he was promoted to a membership in the Court of Justice. That during the time Mr. Borchers has served in the department at the head of which I was placed, he has discharged the duties of his office faithfully and diligently, to my satisfaction; whilst his uninterrupted continuance in the public service of this colony sufficiently proves that his conduct as a public servant has been approved by Government.

DANIEL DENYSSEN.

Cape Town, Cape of Good Hope,  
3rd June, 1852.

---

[ No. 13. ]

Attorney-General's Office,  
Cape Town, 30th June, 1852.

Considering the number of the testimonials which Mr. Borchers has (as I am aware) received from time

to time during his more than half a century of service, I could scarcely have expected that he would wish one from me. When I came to the Cape, now fourteen years ago, Mr. Borchers was already an old public servant. Since that time we have both continued to hold our respective offices, he that of Civil Commissioner and Resident Magistrate and I that of Attorney-General, and it is this circumstance alone which can give to my opinion of his services any degree of value. No other officer in the colony can well be so conversant as the Attorney-General with the manner in which the Resident Magistrate of Cape Town discharged his magisterial duties; and I may safely say that in regard to the duties discharged by Mr. Borchers which are not of a magisterial nature I am not wholly uninformed. As a member of the Executive Council, public prosecutor, and practising advocate, I am necessarily in a position to pronounce an opinion respecting the manner in which Mr. Borchers has performed his stated as well as his occasional duties.

Under these circumstances, I can have no hesitation in saying that all these duties have been, in my opinion, performed in a most creditable manner. The criminal and civil business of Mr. Borchers' court (which is four times as large as that of Graham's Town, and which equals or exceeds that of all the remaining magistrates of the colony) has been at all times discharged in such a way as to inspire the public of all ranks and classes with the most perfect confidence in the magistrate's capacity, and still more in his love of justice. Appeals from his judgments have been singularly rare, and in such appeals as have been brought, his judgments have been so generally affirmed as sufficiently to



prove the care and consideration with which they were formed. I can undertake to say, from a pretty intimate acquaintance with the sentiments of the inhabitants of Cape Town upon the subject, that no suspicion of uprightness of the magistrate has ever crossed the mind of any suitor, and that the decisions of Mr. Borchers give general satisfaction.

In the various and important extra duties for the performance of which the Government (feeling the value of the services of a man of standing and character) has selected Mr. Borchers, his conduct has invariably justified the choice, and obtained the approbation both of the Government and the public.

Mr. Borchers is now, I think, the oldest civil servant in the colony. I am not conscious of exaggerating his claims to consideration when I say, that not one of his juniors in the service could well desire a better fortune than to enjoy at the end of as long a career as fair a reputation.

WILLIAM PORTER.

## SECTION XVII.

And reverting from my course of public life to the private and domestic concerns, I have to state :

That in 1845 it so happened that our children had all found their way in the world, and that Mrs. Borchers and myself were left without any of the members of the family, and our home comparatively became solitary. Moreover, her health began to fail, and the medical men were of opinion that living in town might be detrimental.

This led me to leave our old and comfortable mansion, No. 7, Strand-street, where I had spent so many happy days in the bosom of my family, and take our residence at Wynberg, with my son, Mr. Johannes Gysbertus Borchers, who was there Acting Clerk of the Peace; and it had the beneficial effect that her health improved and she recovered.

As it seemed now advisable to take a permanent residence in the country, I settled on a piece of ground purchased from my son, on the summit of Wynberg Hill, to which were added other small pieces since purchased.

These were uncultivated; and having ascertained by digging a well that excellent water could there be obtained, I resolved to build the little villa which I now (the beginning of 1858) occupy, and cultivate the grounds. This was accomplished in a few months, and we named it "Bellevue," from the beautiful and extensive view there, commanding in front the Hottentots' Holland, Stellenbosch, Paarl, and more distant range of mountains towards Tulbagh, besides the sight of False Bay and adjacent hills; and behind, Constantia,

Table and Windberg Mountains; and to the right also the lakes of Sand and Seacow Valley, in the vicinity of Muizenberg.

The salubrious and airy situation, contributed much to our health; the little garden adjoining succeeded beyond expectation, and we have already gathered several fruits from the trees planted; and I may say that although our course has not been entirely without sorrow and grief, yet during our residence there, many unexpected blessings have, thank God! been our share.

Retired from public life, our establishment is that of happy mediocrity, and our few wants are amply supplied in the neighbourhood. We are surrounded by a circle of dear friends, among whom the Reverend Doctor P. E. Faure and his family, who are related to us,—he being son of our brother-in-law, Mr. Jacobus Christiaan Faure, out of whose house, as before mentioned, we were married in 1806; and several of them are very kind. To these may be added two families of children residing in the neighbourhood, one the widow of my eldest son the late Meent Borchers and her four children, the other of my son Richard, his wife, and four children; and these give life to our family circle.

With regard to the village we are also conveniently situated. Our plain but neat village church is but a few minutes distant from our dwelling. Medical aid is near and at hand, our supplies are mostly brought to the door; and our position being central between Cape Town, Simon's Town, and Kalk Bay, we have opportunity for change of air and recreation within a few miles.

The vicinity and neighbourhood of the village are extremely picturesque. On my travels in the country

I saw no scenery like it ; and it is a treat to visit the beautiful estates and villas, where we invariably meet with a kind reception and hospitality. Opposite to Bellevue the extensive flats afford ample opportunity for exercise, and are adorned in season with most beautiful heaths and bulbous flowers, sometimes assuming the appearance of an immense carpet, showing at a distance several cottages and clusters of trees dotted on the surface to an extent of about six miles, when first a belt of downs and then afterwards the range of hills above mentioned, close in perspective those (with many shades) diversified fields. The sight was cheerful, and we had every reason to be thankful that at our advanced stage of life such a healthy spot had been our share.

Nowhere have I seen the sun rise with more splendour than when making his appearance from behind the opposite hills about thirty miles distant ; and to attempt to describe the golden tints on the tops of them, and the reflection of his beams on the morning clouds, would be in vain.

Towards the west the sun sets equally beautiful, and sinks behind the Table or Constantia Mountains, or in the gap of Hout Bay. Magnificently sometimes the clouds are tinted almost from east to west by the reflection of the last and departing rays.

I was more than once struck by the rising of the full moon, when she threw her soft light from the summit of those hills over the flats ; and in winter when covered with small lakes, these appeared as so many silvery specks on the shady ground and surface ; and also when this bright luminary sunk in her plenitude at the dawn of day in the west.

This sweet home was, on the anniversaries of birth and marriage-days, open to the reception of children and friends, to share in our blessing for having been thus far spared, and to join in our thanksgiving for preservation and welfare, and prayer for continuation during the remaining days of life, and the wishes were mutual.

As a retirement I valued the spot, for there, withdrawn from the noise and turmoil of town, I found in silence room for mental improvement, especially now when relieved from the duties of office. Reading and writing and spending a few hours of the day in my study became my favourite pastime, and there these fruits of my labours were collected. There I enjoyed leisure hours which I could never command before, and opportunity to take advantage of those relics of mental effusions left by so many friends of mankind, and ornaments to the human race, before they closed their earthly course and exchanged their temporal abode for the home of eternity. There I had time to scan over some of the precious fruits of their thoughts, learning, and diligence, left for instruction and guidance; whilst I felt and deplored that the time for deep study was past. There the Book of Revelation could be quietly searched and that of Nature consulted, with edification to the mind. There the chirping of the birds announced cheerfully the approach of day, and warbled that it was time to rise. There reflection had scope to trace in retrospective review the events of past years, months, days, hours, and moments, connected with duties attached to the filial, connubial, or parental state, to the membership of society, and to those of the Christian. Extensive were these reflections, and serious the result of the test.

Imperfection marked beginning, progress, and end. Deficiencies left many a blank, deeds many a blot, circumstances not to be altered or recalled, room to deplore; and the consolation entertained that a throne of grace could be approached was the great sheet-anchor of hope. There in prospect I felt that by fixed ordination the day was approaching whereon I should be called to that retreat where the eye will be closed, the mind dormant, the heart cease to beat, the feeling extinguished, and the frame reduced to insensibility of earthly enjoyments, but the spirit live; and I could only find refuge in prayer that by grace and mercy I might be spared to enjoy, after departing, that indescribable happiness to which the vision of man is yet blind, his ear deaf, his mind incapable to conceive, and his heart too narrow to embrace:—and there (dear offspring) rests the result of my anxieties, cares, and troubles, and my faint expectation and hope; confiding that my benign Creator's dispensation will ultimately pronounce His love.

I have been imperceptibly drawn from the object in view: it was to give an account of one of the most memorable days of my life, namely, reaching the fiftieth year of our marriage on Sunday, 4th May, 1856. This is termed in Dutch: “Het Gouden Bruiloffs Feest,” or translated “The Golden Wedding Day,” and it was determined that it should be celebrated according to the good ancient custom. Of the twelve sons and five daughters, only six sons and three daughters were spared and alive. The morning was bright, and the day was calm as on that of our union, when a beloved and revered parent, as minister, first joined us in his church

at Stellenbosch in the holy bonds of matrimony, and gave us his blessing in presence of the congregation, accompanied by fervent prayers and the tenderest expressions of feeling for our future welfare.

I can hardly express how I felt that his wishes had been realized, and his prayers not rejected, and that a good Providence had spared us (even perhaps more than had been anticipated) to enjoy for half a century that state which with all its cares, anxieties, and responsibilities, I still hold the most preferable and true position of man upon earth. I consider it as the original social compact, created when our first parents were in the enjoyment of perfection in Paradise, and that it is still susceptible of great happiness when entered with the determination to be bound by all its sacred ties and solemn performances, and the duties and obligations attached to that important and interesting station of life.

Well, to return to my narrative. All relatives, friends, and those about us seemed happy, and to share in our feelings. Nature clothed herself in beauty and calmness around our habitation; this contributed in no small degree to our enjoyment; and we considered the day as one of the most blessed, which our Heavenly Father had bestowed on us in our matrimonial path through life.

Being on a Sabbath day, it was kept retired and quiet in the circle only of the more immediate family connexions.

In the morning we attended public service in the Dutch Reformed Church at Wynberg, accompanied by three sons, three daughters, seven grand-children, three

great grand-children, and four relatives or children-in-law. Also by my wife's only brother, Captain Carel Gerhard Blanckenberg (who had been "best-man" or bridesman in 1806), and my sister, Anna Gesina Borchers, widow of the late Hendrik Cloete, Dirk's son, who had also been present at our wedding. She represented my eldest sister, Aletta Jacoba, widow of the late Lieutenant-Colonel Allen Cameron, who had been the bridesmaid, and is now residing in England.

How different, after fifty years' experience, were my opinions, sensations, and feelings, to those when I went to church on the marriage day.

Imagination had pictured to me a scene of uninterrupted happiness. Hope flattered with success all my plans and schemes. In prospect I fancied a family of cheerful and lovely children, always encircling and encouraging me to watch over their tender years, and make provision for their education and wants. I calculated by industrious pursuits upon such success, that if I were spared to reach a sixtieth year, I might comfortably retire. In fact, nothing appeared to me likely to disturb my prospect of being a happy husband and father; and in the heat of a feverish, youthful imagination, I left out of sight, that Life had its dark side, and that its events are as the ebb and flow, and varying as the tide of human circumstances require.

But time and experience have shown the fallacy of these calculations, and undrawn the curtain which screened the real scenery, and lifted the veil which covered such visionary and ideal expectations.



The stage of life gradually disclosed that between the scenes of pleasure and delight tragedy had a share,—that the sun of prosperity was not always bright, but that clouds even to darkness overshadowed our path,—that enjoyments were mingled with pain,—that care and anxiety were not to be avoided, and the day of sorrow and affliction to be borne with humble submission and moral courage,—that the best calculated plans failed,—that exertions were not always rewarded,—in fact, that disappointments were unavoidable, and patience and resignation the great sources of consolation and comfort. In vain was the attempt to force and change the tide of events, for a Higher Power visibly directed according to His all-wise plan; so that which at the time was considered a misfortune proved often in the sequel a blessing.

And now, after calmly considering and weighing the good and evil in the balance of our fate, I am bound solemnly to admit that blessing has far exceeded that which we considered the reverse; and that we have every reason to thank Our Heavenly Father that He has thus spared and preserved our lives, directed our course, and surrounded us still with so many undeserved tokens of His infinite goodness and mercy.

The varnish which imagination had spread over the picture of life had now disappeared, and the reality followed; and though not without blemish, yet showing a pleasing and instructive feature to the steady and fixed eye, and seeming an object of much greater importance in prospect than the events of the past.

But let me proceed and describe our presence in the church; my wife had taken her seat by my side in the

front pew on the left of the pulpit, and the children and offspring had placed themselves next to us. Our friend the minister (Dr. Faure) was indisposed, and could not lead the service, but Mr. Ruytenbeek, the missionary of the Reformed Church, acted for him. He remembered in his prayer the events of the day, supplicated for the continuance of our welfare, and offered thanks for *us* who had now been joined in wedlock for half a century, and for the blessings enjoyed in public and private stations, and recommended us further to the Lord's protection with the hopes and prospects of eternal salvation.

I must confess that my feelings were aroused and elevated when I heard this solemn address thus offered most impressively in the midst of the congregation of my Christian brethren and sisters. I have no doubt but it found a sympathetic response in the hearts of many present, with whom we had sojourned for many years, and with whom we were so well acquainted.

He took his text from Nahum, chapter 1, v. 7: "The Lord is good, a stronghold in the day of trouble, and He knoweth them that trust in Him."

Several of the passages in his sermon strikingly corresponded with my feelings, and were applicable to the peculiar circumstances, as well as the 68th Psalm, 10th verse (19th and 20th of the English version), 100th Psalm, and 12th of our Evangelical Hymns, 1st and 6th verses, sung by the congregation.

This incidental occurrence of the service left on my mind the deeper impression and recollection of the marriage day, as the solemn proceedings corresponded with those on the day of our union; so that imperceptibly

I fancied myself drawn back to that past event in the midst of my father's congregation, and I need not repeat what my sensations were.

After church we visited our minister (who was better), and his reception was most friendly. He added a word of kindness and congratulation for the great benefits we had received at the hands of our Heavenly Father, and participated cordially in the privileges bestowed upon us, expressing his sincere wish that our days might be prolonged, and for our future temporal and eternal prosperity.

Thus edified we returned to Bellevue with cheerful and grateful hearts, and there met two of our sons, one grand-daughter, and one grand-son-in-law, who had in the mean time arrived, so that the descendants present were now eight children, eight grand-children, four great-grand-children, four children and grand-children-in-law, and to these were added our sister-in-law (Mrs. Anne Catharina Blanckenberg, born Neethling) and a few other friends.

We were also visited by Mr. Suasso de Lima, LL.D., who had been many years in this colony, and he politely delivered a printed address and poem (in Dutch) entitled "Heilgroet by den Gouden Bruiloft," or translated "Salutation of blessing on the golden wedding-day."

Having alluded to the sacred bonds of matrimony and the rare occurrence of its lasting half a century, the many changes and casualties within so long a period, the number who had meanwhile departed, and those still living and born within that period, how many were suffering in health and under calamities, and how many

were enjoying the recreating beams of God Almighty's sun,—he considered this day of deep interest, and that the words of David might be suitably applied, as mentioned in the 128th Psalm, part of vs. 2 to 6, and 129th Psalm, part of v. 8, "Happy shalt thou be, and it shall be well with thee. Thy wife shall be as a fruitful vine by the sides of thine house; thy children like olive plants round about thy table. Behold that thus shall the man be blessed that feareth the Lord. The Lord shall bless thee out of Zion; and thou shalt see the good of Jerusalem all the days of thy life. Yea, thou shalt see thy children's children, &c. The blessing of the Lord, be upon you, &c."

He further alluded to the pleasure this event would give to children and descendants, and be kept in remembrance, and to my position in life, and the satisfaction I felt at having educated one son as a minister of the Gospel, another as a medical man, and a third holding the situation of magistrate; and he closed by recapitulating the several public situations I held within the period of fifty-six years and the extra duties performed; and added eight stanzas expressive of his feelings on the occasion, the time passed in our union, his wishes for future welfare, blessing, and peace. He made complimentary mention of my private and public proceedings, the insignificance of riches compared to character, the happiness to children in finding the latter sustained by the parents; and concluded by requesting our acceptance of his best wishes for our offspring and ourselves.

This was gratifying, and we expressed ourselves as such to the kind-hearted author.

It would be difficult for me to give in English verse the stanzas abovementioned, but for the perusal of my Dutch readers I will insert them in that language:

Leeren de gewijde bladen,  
 't Lot van Vorsten en Profeet,  
 Melden zij de wonderdaden  
 Van Hem, die voor 't menschdom leed !  
 Toonen zij Gods wijze wetten,  
 Tot het heil van 't menschdom aan ;  
 't Spoor dat men heeft op te letten,  
 In den gang van 's levens baan.

Schreven wijze volk-verlichters,  
 Met hun blik naar 't groote doel !  
 Is het streven niet des dichters  
 Wel te treffen het gevoel ?  
 Gaêrt men uit geschiedenissen  
 Kennis, en van volk en land,  
 Toonen zij met vergewissen  
 Helden zege, rang en stand ?

Hoort men hier een deugd bezingen,  
 Hoort men daar een' schellen toon ;  
 Toegewijd aan wisselingen  
 Zoo van shepter als van kroon.  
 Citer ! ik span uwe snaren,  
 Met een' opgeruimden geest ;  
 Mijn gevoel wil 'k openbaren,  
 Bij dit GOUDEN BRUILOFTSFEEST.

Vijftig jaren zijn vervlogen,  
 Als een schaduwe voorbij ;  
 Men bepeinst, is opgetogen—  
 Jaren, wáár, ja wáár bleeft gij ?  
 Echter wat zijn vijftig jaren  
 Bij het grenzeloos gewest,  
 Waar de Christenen naar staren,  
 Met het oog op God gevest.

Vijftig jaren zijn verloopē :

Soms met zorg, soms met smart ;  
 En met wenschen, en met hopen,  
 Maar met ombezoedeld hart.  
 Vijftig jaren zyn verdwenen,  
 Van uw' dierbren levenstijd ;  
 Na dat gij u mogt vereenen,  
 Zoo door trouw als hartelijkheid.

Vijftig jaren is 't geleden,  
 Ge in den echt getreden zijt ;  
 Op een' rustdag juist als heden,  
 Aan den Schepper toegewijd.  
 Thans, ei zie naar alle kanten—  
 Kinders, nakroost om u hēen ;—  
 Vrienden, magen, bloedverwanten,  
 Storten uwenthalv' gebēen.

Zij, zij wenschen u veel jaren,  
 En in voorspoed, heil en vrcê,  
 Dat de Almagt u blijv' sparen  
 Is hunne algemeene bcê.  
 Dat elk uwer levensdagen,  
 Eene heilbron voor u zij,  
 U Gods gunst blijv' onderschragen,  
 Is de wensch van vrienden-rei.

Wie zal niet met ons beseffen,  
 Niet gevoelen zoo als wij ?  
 Welks hart voelt zich niet treffen,  
 Wie in onze maatschappy  
 Die niet kent de hooge waarde,  
 Van u, Sieraad van u land ;  
 Die steeds regt aan oordeel paarde,  
 In zijn hoog verheven stand :

Wat zijn schatten, wat zijn troonen ?  
 IJdelheên die dra vergaan ;  
 't Schoonste erfdeel voor zonen,  
 Is 's vaders deugden na te gaan.

Ja te volgen uwe stappen,  
 En met doorzicht en beleid ;  
 Oefenaar van wetenschappen,  
 Themis tempel toegewijd.

Wil dees regelen ontvangen,  
 Zij zijn werkelijk gemeend ;  
 Dit is mijn opregt verlangen—  
 Waar 't hart zich bij vereend.  
 Zie uw huis in vrede bloeijen,  
 En in zielsgenot en min,  
 't Nakroost welig om u groeijen,  
 Heil—UZELV' en ECHTVRIENDIN.

The children and a few other friends dined with us, and we enjoyed with grateful hearts the blessings bestowed by Providence, and the cordial congratulations and best wishes of those about us.

On Tuesday, the 6th, subsequently, children, grand and great-grand-children, and those connected by marriage, together with our relatives and friends—in number one hundred and twelve—assembled at Bellevue to celebrate the golden wedding-day, and to share (whilst offering us their best wishes) in the happiness we enjoyed. I have preserved a list of those present amongst my papers. The relatives numbered eight children, twelve grand-children, four great-grand-children, six children-in-law, three sisters, one brother, one sister-in-law, thirty-seven nephews, nieces, and cousins (and there were some absent), second son and his wife and six children, and another son, James, and his wife and two children, two grand-children, three great-grand-children. In all the number of our descendants and relatives thus amounted to eighty-nine.

Before dinner our youngest and twelfth son, Charles Robinson Borchers, and his bride, Miss Elizabeth Adamina Brink, presented us with a silver gilt cup and salver, with an inscription in Dutch, of which the following is a translation: "In commemoration of the fiftieth anniversary of the marriage-day of Petrus Borchardus Borchers and Janetta Johanna Blanckenberg, celebrated at Wynberg, 4th May, 1856, Cape of Good Hope."

This was to us particularly gratifying. He was the Benjamin of the family; and we considered it a most happy occurrence, that, under the prospect of being soon united himself, we should have been spared to receive such a token of filial love and respect from his hands. We naturally wished that in copying our example he might soon feel as gratified as we did at the moment; and reciprocal feelings of love and good wishes were expressed,—for except him all our children were married.

In order that the children should possess a token so as to keep in remembrance this event (and that their descendants in time to come might know that such a day had been celebrated by their ancestors), I had silver medals made and distributed amongst them, inscribed the same as the silver cup abovementioned, and these were most thankfully accepted. I hope that, in God's mercy, they may long be spared, so that by looking at that token of our love, to keep in remembrance how gracious the Father in heaven had been to their parents.

We were highly pleased to find among our guests the Reverends Abraham Faure, senior, minister of the Dutch Reformed Church in Cape Town, and Doctor Philip Edward Faure, the respected minister of Wynberg,—



for it was in their father's home, as before stated, that our connexion was formed, and the first day of our union commenced,—so that their presence to us was very gratifying.

The table which our children had laid out was tastefully decorated; and no trouble had been spared to show how deeply they felt the occasion. There was an abundance of the animal and vegetable kingdom of every variety that the season could produce, intermixed with dainties prepared and shaped by the fanciful cook. And cakes, as they are usually ornamented for nuptial festivals, appeared in the best arrangement. In fact, were it not that Age dictated that these were rather out of place, we might have fancied ourselves a young married couple again.

Several specimens of fruit adorned the table,—some were really exquisite, considering the season,—and wedding favours were also distributed by the eldest grandchildren, who were substituted to figure as bridesmaids and “bestmen!”

Amongst the ornaments at table was the Silver Cup presented to my dear father by his congregation at Stellenbosch, in 1826. This imperceptibly drew my thoughts to him by whom we were so solemnly united, and the occurrences on the occasion at the parental home. Whilst pleasantly reflecting on these matters the recollection of the departed, however, created sorrowful feelings, and for a moment clouded the joyous sensations experienced during the events of the day. The inscription on the Cup may be seen by reference to the first section.

When our guests had concluded the repast, the Rev. Abraham Faure addressed us with the feeling which is

so peculiar to him when expounding the Scriptures to his flock. He seemed as if impressed by his relationship, both as the Christian brother and family friend. I felt deeply overpowered by his comments, so much so that in endeavouring to recollect them found that merely the outlines were retained. He congratulated us on the happy event, and reminded us how much we were indebted for having been spared so long a period in the enjoyment of health of mind and body and for many advantages and benefits in life. He brought to recollection the days and events passed during our union,—the changes of happiness and sorrow,—and the trials, the support, and relief enjoyed from a higher Power under the loss of dear children, relatives, and friends; and he hoped that the remainder of our days would be dedicated to a preparation for the approaching change from time to eternity!—and that the blessing of the Most High might attend our future course in life at our now far advanced age, under a happy prospect of eternal blessedness, to be enjoyed where separation is unknown. He recommended us with much feeling to the protection of Him who had thus far mercifully spared us in our earthly course, praying that we might be further guided by our Heavenly Father, and ultimately received by grace through the mediation of the blessed Redeemer.

This affectionate address was followed by the Rev. Dr. P. E. Faure, who, poetically and with much elegance, expressed his sentiments and wishes in Dutch. Oh! that I could do justice to them by a translation; but I confess that the Muses have not thus favoured me, and I will, therefore, only attempt to give the substance

in prose, adding afterwards a copy of the original for my Dutch friends.

He alluded to the happy and pure enjoyment experienced in the circle of friends, free from care or pain whilst changes passed,—referred to the fifty years spent in matrimonial union, and our having been spared by the all-governing Power, amidst joys and sorrows experienced under His wise dispensation, and how we had been guided by a powerful Father's hand. He wished that the Supreme Goodness would further watch over us, so that in the days of life's winter no heavy storms might approach or expose us to adversity or apprehension of danger,—that, under the increase of days, heaven's blessing might support us in the enjoyment of undisturbed rest,—that the sun of prosperity with golden rays might luminously spread on our offspring as the dew kissing the fields; and as we saw the silvery curls of life's cold winter covering our grey heads and gliding towards its destiny, he hoped that God would kindly support us, and that in the day of our weakness we might lean on His almighty power, and His love attend us in Christ, so that the evening of our life on earth be not involved in clouds of adversity or care. He then recited further :

“Your matrimonial day was long as our summer day,  
 Your eve be as such day—clear, calm, as after summer-heat,  
 There, where in the East the star of hope is glittering,  
 You have enjoyed sunshine together—and resisted the power  
     of heat and storm.  
 May the coolness of eve refresh you both until your sun  
     simultaneously sinks.  
 And then, I would wish you,—Where ?  
 There,—Where they neither marry nor are given in marriage  
     but are as the angels of God in Heaven.”

I feel that the beauty has been lost by the attempt at translation, but I think the substance has been preserved.

AAN DE JUBILANTEN,

WYNBERG, DEN 6DEN MEI, 1856.

By de Gouden Bruiloft van Oom en Tante BORCHERDS, den 4 Mei, 1856.

Hoe zalig is het rein genoeg  
Omringd door dezen vriendenkring,  
Dat Gij thans, zonder zorg of wroegen,  
Geniet, na zoo veel wisseling !  
Zoo rolden 50 huwelijksjaren,  
Die 't Albestuur u wilde sparen  
Vereenigd door den Echtenband ;  
Zoo moogt Gij nu na vreugd en lyden,  
U in Gods wijs bestuur verblijden,  
Geleid door 's Hoogsten Vaderhand.

O ! mogt de Algoedheid verder waken,  
Dat, daar des levens winter daag'  
Geen felle stormen U genaken,  
Geen ramp of vrees U schrik aanjaag'  
O ! mogt, bij 't klimmen uwer dagen,  
Des Hemels gunst U onderschragen  
Bij 't ongestoord genot van rust ;  
De Zon van heil, met gulden stralen,  
Verhelderd, op Uw nakroost dalen  
Gelijk de dauw de velden kust.

En daar wij reeds de zilvren vlokken  
Van 's levens kouden winter tijd,  
Zien kroonen Uwe grijze lokken,  
En 't leven naar den eindpaal glijdt ;  
Dat God de Heer U ondersteune  
Uw zwakheid op Zijne Almagt leune,  
Zijn liefd' in Christus U omring' !  
Dat d' avond van Uw aardsche leven  
Met geene wolken worden omgeven  
Van onheil of bekommering !

“ Uw huwlijksdag was lang, als onze zomerdagen ;  
 “ Uw avond zij den dag gelijk !  
 “ Een heldre avond, kalm na zomerhitte,  
 “ En waar aan 't Oost de Star der hope prijkt.  
 “ Te zaam hebt Gij het zonnelicht genoten,  
 “ En hitte en onweêrskracht weêrstaan ;  
 “ Te zaam verkwikke u nog de avondkoelte,  
 “ Tot eens uw zon *gelijk* moge onder gaan.”

En dan Wáár 'k U dan wensch ?  
 Dáár—

Waar men niet meer ten huwelijk neemt,  
 noch ten huwelijk gegeven wordt, maar  
 waar wij zijn als Engelen Gods—

In den Hemel !

Uw heilwenschende Neef en Vriend,

P. E. FAURE.

These addresses were delivered with great feeling and listened to with deep interest, for they seemed to have been dictated by warm hearts, and we received them as such.

I attempted to respond and express our thanks, but confess that I was overpowered ; and however well meant or appreciated, my answer was brief, but I hope sufficient to express our deep sense for the marked attention.

And now they and other kind friends (my children and theirs, and all relatives and guests), joined in proposing our health, wishing that we might be spared for mutual comfort, and the remainder of our days be spent in peace, and our approaching termination be that of the righteous, adding other expressions indicative of their best feelings. Their countenances dictated happiness ;

and the toast was cheerfully responded to, and drank with enthusiasm. The day and evening were spent in mirth and jollity, and real good feeling prevailed; and our friends did not leave before they had conducted the old bridegroom and his bride (for this they were pleased to designate us) to the bed-room. By midnight they had parted, and all again was quiet and at rest, leaving room for more serious thoughts and reflections; and in silence once more to offer thanks for the great benefits received and the blessings enjoyed; and to recommend ourselves and those near and dear to us to the care of our Father in Heaven.

It was to us most gratifying to see the arrangements made by our children and friends, and the taste displayed by garlands, flowers, &c., mingled with the number "fifty" in perspective; and the advantage taken to extend the rooms by covering in of the front and back verandahs with flags and the distribution of the lights, &c., so that the whole had quite a picturesque (to my partner and self) and enchanting appearance.

These arrangements were chiefly made by our affectionate daughter, Wilhelmina Hendrina Stokes, assisted by her sister, Johanna Titia Eveleigh, and Marian, wife of my son Richard, and by him also and the youngest son, Charles Robinson.

We found the table well supplied and tastefully decorated by them and some of our kind friends. The choicest fruits of the season were produced, and among them several contributions from Captain Blanckenberg and his lady, of New Constantia, Mr. Dirk Cloete, Hendrik son, and lady, of Alphen, and from an old friend, Mr. Jan Louw, of Swanenwyk, at the Steenberg.

They sent in several specimens of the fruit, vegetables, and flowers grown on their estates, which might have graced any exhibition as noble samples of size, beauty, and flavour, and proved the fertility of the soil.

Finally, the whole was a day so happy, that whilst we are spared it cannot be obliterated from our minds. It was in truth deeply interesting to ourselves, and one which will be ever kept in remembrance for the great benefits received, and of our duty and warm gratitude to the Great and Omnipotent Benefactor.

## SECTION XVIII.

Not very long after the happy event mentioned in the former section, I observed that Mrs. Borchers' health seemed more and more failing; and on the morning of Wednesday, 16th June, 1858, departed this life at Bellevue, on Wynberg Hill, my beloved wife, Janetta Johanna Blanckenberg, aged seventy years, one month and fourteen days, after our happy union of fifty-two years, one month, and twelve days.

She had been for many years more or less suffering, in consequence of attacks, chiefly apoplectic. Her health however, comparatively recovered, was precarious; for the powerful medicines and medical treatment required to relieve her from one of the severest fits, had broken the constitution and shaken (what I may almost say for forty years since our union) the uninterrupted state of health with which she had been blessed. Within the last twelve years of her life she often rallied, so that at intervals she could take gentle exercise and nourishment, and then she was cheerful and in good spirits. But these warnings prepared her mind to meet the great change which now followed with the resignation and hope of a Christian. Within the last week before her death she appeared to become gradually weaker, so that the aid of our physician, Doctor Samuel Bailey, was called in, and when he saw her on Monday evening previous to the Wednesday, the day of her demise, he examined her, and the indisposition appeared to him slight and only requiring mild treatment, when all would be right. This was the doctor's expression when he left, and they parted joking.



In the afternoon of the following day (Tuesday) she sat on her sofa in the parlour and received several visits from kind neighbours, but it appeared to us that her speech was rather impaired, and we were inclined to attribute this to the effects of the medicine taken. She dined at the family table as usual, and spent the evening with us at the fireside. However, during the night she was restless, and towards morning when I retired, having had scarcely a night's rest, my daughter, Mrs. Stokes, attended her, and she enjoyed a couple of hours' rest.

On her preparing to dress for breakfast, the maid who attended observed extraordinary weakness, and requested my daughter to persuade her to remain in bed; but when Mrs. Stokes spoke to her no distinct answer was received, and I was immediately called in. My poor wife was then speechless and appeared as if fainting, and with scarcely a sigh or convulsive appearance breath had escaped. I felt her pulse, it stood still, and my dearly-beloved partner was no more. Scarcely could I have been five minutes in the room when this happened.

I had been preparing to go to town to attend a meeting of the Central Road Board, so little did I apprehend immediate danger, relying that as usual she would rally after a little rest. About ten minutes later and I should probably have left, and not witnessed the death-bed and calm departure of this true and faithful wife and dear mother to my children.

Although my Heavenly Father, in this dispensation, had been most merciful in relieving her apparently without pain or struggle, yet the event was sudden and unexpected, and we were panic-struck.

My friend our minister, the Reverend Doctor P. E. Faure, for whom I had sent when I apprehended danger, attended immediately, and supported me under the grief and loss, by his consolation and kindness to make all the arrangements required for the burial; and my mind received much comfort and relief, and his lady Mrs. Faure (our niece) also remained during that day with my beloved and much-afflicted daughter.

However desirous to bow to the will of the Great Disposer of life and death, and to submit to it with christian resignation, and to keep in mind that we had received many blessings, and been spared longer than thousands of partners in matrimonial life, yet I could not help feeling a vacancy and the severity of the loss of her who (especially since my retirement from office) had become more and more a daily companion; nor could I refrain giving way to those feelings which human nature commends, and no reason can adequately conquer. For the knot which had been tied for upwards of half a century was sundered rapidly at the close, but not without leaving painful sensations, and a wound such as can only be healed by time and the interposition of that Power which inflicts sorrow for the benefit of His creatures, yet under the conviction that the time cannot be far distant when, by the mercy of our blessed Redeemer, we may meet again in the happier regions of eternal bliss.

On Friday, the 18th, in the afternoon, the remains of the departed were conveyed to the grave, which, under the supervision of Doctor Faure, had been prepared in the burial-ground of the Dutch Reformed Church at Wynberg. The funeral was attended by many relatives

and friends both from town, this place, and environs; and when the coffin had been lowered and deposited in the tomb, Doctor Faure had the first verse of the 182d of our evangelical hymns sung, and addressed in Dutch those assembled most feelingly and impressively on mortality, the uncertainty of life, and our duty to prepare for the awful event which sooner or later awaited us, when death shall also call us to leave the world and all near and dear to us. He also observed: "Even the grave itself is the comforter of the weeping Christian, for with an eye on it he joyfully raises his voice and sings,—Resting-place of virtues' warfare. May, by faith in Jesus Christ our Lord, the grave be thus to you, deeply afflicted aged friend, who justly mourns for a faithful spouse who accompanied you on your journey through life for upwards of half a century, who shared with you during this long period both pleasure and pain, who was to you such a faithful partner and to your offspring such an affectionate mother. The Lord be your comforter, and meet you with His presence and favour under the great loss you suffer at present. May He be the support of your old age, and the rock of your trust for ever and ever.

"Bemoan freely a dear mother, children and descendants of her whose remains will now be returned to dust. But be it at the same time your cordial prayer that the loss of your lamented mother may be profitable to your adoption as children of your Father in Heaven."

An impressive prayer closed the solemn scene, and I returned home with the children present, namely, my sons Allen Richard, Charles Robinson, and son-in-law William Smith, to meet my daughters Maria Smith and

the Widow Stokes, and other relatives, and to give vent to those feelings of sorrow which the departed so richly deserved, and which could not be restrained. Thus closed this day of painful affliction, and we received consolation by the soothing affection with which our friend Doctor Faure and others present sympathized in our grief.

The place of rest has since been covered with a tombstone inscribed with her name, &c., so as to mark the spot.

This solemn event and serious warning to prepare also for departure, led me to determine to arrange my worldly matters, so that the remainder of my pilgrimage might not (if possible) be troubled with pecuniary cares, and that those whom I should leave behind could receive my estate unincumbered, and have no trouble in arranging and finally closing the same ; so I resolved to commence by selling off Bellevue and furniture, and this sale was effected on the 2d September, 1858.

## SECTION XIX.

## TRIBUTE OF GRATITUDE.

As this section may probably be the last of my memoirs, I am about offering my thanks to my parents and those kind friends and gentlemen who have guided and promoted my interest and welfare both in public and private life, and contributed to my comfort and prosperity.

1. MY DEAR AND BELOVED FATHER!—To him I am indebted for the fundamental principles with regard to religion and education imparted to my mind, when under his guidance in the days of youth. His example, precepts, and doctrine as a minister of the Gospel, and as a tender parent at the head of a numerous family of children, I still keep most gratefully in remembrance and deep reverence. He opened to me the volume of Revelation, Peace and Grace, and drew my attention to the book of nature. He pointed to the heavenly bodies and traced their regular and majestic course, when we were sometimes in retirement, and often at that dear spot “the Summer-house,” at the bottom of his garden behind the house “La Gratitude” at Stellenbosch; and taught me to fix my hope and trust for the future on Him who governs the universe and provides for all as a benevolent Father; and he fixed my ultimate view to the distant prospect of eternal life by the redeeming power of our great Mediator! He confirmed me ultimately (before I left his home and the paternal roof) as a member of the Dutch Reformed Church, and gave his blessing to my matrimonial union. By his lessons in Latin and other useful branches of

knowledge, he prepared me for an intended professional career; and when even that was changed into the civil service of this colony, I found that I owed much to his tuition and tender care in the progress of my public and private life, and

TO MY DEAR AND BELOVED MOTHER.—She was affectionate and kind, and of a mild and cheerful disposition. The lessons she gave were always tenderly imparted; and to the care taken of my health and comforts as a child I attribute my present healthy constitution. A warm heart and a ready helping hand were always at her command to serve and distribute succour, happiness, and contentment. In fact, she was religiously guided, by a true christian spirit, and a tender maternal love and disposition.

BLESSED BE THEIR MEMORY!

2. MR. GEORGE KNOOP, the parish clerk and schoolmaster, from whom I received the first lessons in reading, writing, and arithmetic. His attention and kindness I cannot forget. He was an ornament to the village school, and his name is mentioned before in this memoir.

3. THE REVEREND DOCTOR DOLLING.—He kindly admitted me (whilst residing in our family) amongst his distinguished disciples, and gave me elementary instruction in the English language when a boy; this, both with regard to the rudiments and pronunciation, has been to me in after-life of the greatest service; and I was thus particularly fortunate, for in those days it was a matter of great difficulty to obtain at the village, and even in Cape Town, any instruction in that language. In one of the preceding sections he is also named.

4. MR. JOHANNES WEGE, who was secretary to the board of Landdrost and Heemraden at Stellenbosch. This gentleman kindly allowed me to frequent his office, and I joined it in 1799. It gave me an early opportunity of acquiring a knowledge of the routine of office duties connected with that then very extensive drostdy (now called division), including at that time Paarl, Caledon, Worcester, Tulbagh, Clanwilliam, Beaufort, Malmesbury, and part of Cape divisions, and others up to the border of the colony. I had also access to the records and judicial proceedings of the board; and as the secretary in those days was the only notary public in that division, I had an opportunity of learning something of notarial practice; in fact, that office was just calculated to give to a young beginner in the civil service some useful practical preparation and knowledge; and I cannot help thinking that to young men destined for the service such preparatory instruction would be of the greatest use, especially in the country districts. He was very kind, and treated me with great care, as much almost as any relative could have done, and took much interest in my proceedings. When I was about to be promoted, I obtained from him favourable testimonials expressive of his opinion when serving under him.

5. PETRUS JOHANNES TRUTER, SENIOR, ESQUIRE. —This was the hospitable gentleman who had been so kind to my father when he arrived in this colony, and he was also to me a true friend. His correctness and propriety of conduct, and methodical mode in conducting business, industry, and accuracy, were generally admitted. He held a membership in the Court of Justice for many years. In the Dutch Reformed Church he

was an elder, and afterwards political commissioner, and fond of bookkeeping on a large scale, and had excelled here in that branch when employed in the great mercantile office of the East India Company. He was once selected to conduct a trade on behalf of that company with Madagascar, and under the Batavian Government to examine and correct the public registry of bonds, &c. Early rising was a maxim he strongly recommended, and exemplified by his own observance.

To be under the guidance of such a friend was to me, as a rising youth, of no small advantage; and good fortune gave me the opportunity of working under him for one year of my life.

He was the gentleman who was appointed chief commissioner to the government expedition to explore Central Africa, &c., and to open a trade with the aborigines as before mentioned, and recommended me as assistant secretary, thereby giving me the opportunity of getting acquainted not only with the interior of the colony but also the country beyond the border (as described in former sections), and also some insight into bookkeeping and accounts, besides noting the journal of daily occurrences on our travels under his own eye. This appointment proved likewise of further advantage by getting me acquainted with the second commissioner,

6. DOCTOR WILLIAM SOMERVILLE, who was inspector of hospitals and considered a clever medical and scientific gentleman. He had the kindness to instruct me further in the English language, and daily I enjoyed his conversation and tuition, not confined to language only, but extending to subjects connected with



science, and other useful matters, such as natural history, anatomy, &c., during our travels. To both these gentlemen I therefore owe much, for their guidance has been to me in after-life of the utmost service. One of the most pleasing circumstances was, that it incidentally introduced me also to the secretary of the expedition,

7. MR. SAMUEL DANIEL.—He was an expert and skilful draftsman, and when he made his sketches I usually accompanied him, and thus saw the animals which he drew, and assisted in measuring them, so that he afterwards, on his arrival in England, had an opportunity of having his drawings engraved and printed, representing the scenery, natives, and animals of South Africa, coloured. The edition of the plates was splendid and in folio. The engravings were much admired, and exact representations.

This gentleman was of a most cheerful and humorous disposition. He created much amusement amongst us, and we passed many pleasant moments; and thus he proved an excellent companion.

This employment ended by receiving a satisfactory testimonial of my services; and my journal attracted the notice of the late Sir John Barrow, who appended some parts thereof to his volume of *A Voyage to Cochin China*.

8. MR. LAMBERT CHRISTIAAN HENDRIK SHUBBERG, LL.D.—He arrived in 1803, and held the appointment of President of the Batavian Court of Justice in the colony until it surrendered in 1806.

I owe to his kindness my first appointment of the Batavian Government before mentioned. He was always friendly and well disposed, and took an interest in my

progress. Even now I have a book (*A Compendium of the Civil and Criminal Law of Holland*) which he gave me as a present, and recommended me to study. He was brother-in-law to Commissary General de Mist.

9. MR. DANIEL DENYSSEN, LL.D.—When I entered the above office in March, 1803, he was acting Secretary of the Court of Justice, and to his indulgence and guidance in this (at first to me) novel position I owe much. He gave me many an opportunity of improving and getting acquainted with my duties, and, I may say, laid the foundation of extending my legal knowledge. In 1813 we became more closely and intimately connected, when I was appointed as Deputy Fiscal, and acted under and with him for about ten years. Both from him personally, and in his family circle, I received with mine much friendly intercourse and many marks of attention and courtesy.

10. MR. GERRIT BUYSKES, LL.D.—I had the honour of serving under him when he arrived as Secretary of the Court of Justice appointed in Holland, and I am bound to say that no superior could have been more friendly inclined and courteous than this gentleman. I soon became a familiar friend in his family circle, in which I enjoyed many a social hour, and he employed me so that I could acquire more extensive knowledge of judicial duties. He was a great freemason, and introduced me to the brotherhood, and I was accepted when he was grand master of the lodge the Goede Hoop.

Such was the good feeling towards me, that after the surrender of the colony, he having entered into practice as an advocate and notary, allowed me in the evening,

(in order to qualify myself for notarial practice) to keep the protocol and register of deeds, and this gave me an opportunity of qualifying myself, in case it should be my good fortune to be once appointed as a secretary and notary to one of the country districts; and his certificate, when I afterwards applied for that situation at Stellenbosch, was of great service to me.

11. The next gentleman with whom I came in official contact was Mr. GERARD BEELAERTS VAN BLOKLAND, LL.D. He had been originally appointed in Holland as Procureur Generaal (Attorney-General) of the colony, and acted as such under the Batavian Government.

Since the surrender of the colony he accepted the office of Secretary to the Court of Justice, and I served under him till 1809. My chief duty was entering the records and sentences, and registering the cases civil and criminal, besides extra duties out of office hours, in which he was pleased to employ me in his private office, so that thereby he also gave me an opportunity for improvement.

In his family I was received as a friend, and his being fond of literature and possessing a most happy memory rendered his conversation very instructive, and with him and his amiable and intelligent lady, I spent many a social hour. Scarcely do I recollect to have met one in any society, whose narratives of occurrences read were given in such minute detail; and with such accuracy, that one fancied he was actually hearing the reading thereof.

In his amicable advice he was always open and candid; and his abilities and legal talent were such, that after retiring from the office he held here he was on his

arrival in Holland, employed first in the judicial line and afterwards as minister of finance, and, I believe, member of the States-General.

I received by his recommendation, promotion in the office, and afterwards also in some degree to the secretaryship of Stellenbosch.

12. Accidentally going one morning to office I met the Receiver-General, Mr. FRANCIS DASHWOOD. He had lived at Stellenbosch, when I was a youth, for the benefit of his health, and was in the habit of visiting our family, and sometimes saw me busy with my lessons repeating them to my father. This otherwise insignificant circumstance attracted his notice, and seems to have been kept in remembrance. He kindly inquired what my prospects were, and circumstances in life, and I opened them frankly to him, and when he learned that I had chosen and fixed on the civil service in the colony he advised me to persevere, and offered to render any service in his power to promote my object; and I am under the impression that this trifling event laid the ground-work for my further promotion in the service.

Soon after this conversation the secretaryship of Stellenbosch became vacant. I communicated this to my old friend, and he kindly drafted my memorial and promised to support it. And I believe that through his recommendation and that of the Colonial Secretary, Mr. Alexander, and the testimonials of my secretary and former superior, Mr. G. Buyskes, as to my progress in notarial practice, that I succeeded in obtaining the appointment by Lord Caledon to that office in 1809, as before stated. My thanks are due to His Lordship,

for it was one of the greatest and longest steps on the ladder of my promotions.

13. SIR JOHN FRANCIS CRADOCK, GOVERNOR OF THIS COLONY.—In the beginning of 1813, the then Landdrost of Stellenbosch, Mr. Watze Sibius van Andringa, communicated to me that His Excellency contemplated appointing me as Deputy Fiscal in Cape Town in the room of Mr. D. F. Berrangé, who was to be promoted as Secretary to the Court of Justice; and I am under the belief that I was recommended for this situation by the Chief Justice, the late Sir John Truter, and my former Secretary, Mr. Beelaerts van Blokland, and I accepted the promotion. This brought me back to my old superior, Mr. Daniel Denyssen, then His Majesty's Attorney-General. Consecutive services of ten years under him created greater intimacy; and as a proof of his satisfaction with my duties, he made me once a donation of £75. He also is mentioned before.

Sir John and Lady Theodosia Cradock were handsome in appearance, and in manners exceedingly courteous. Her ladyship's amiable reception in the drawing-room, and the many invitations given to us to Government House, leave even now a pleasant recollection.

14. SIR JOHN ANDREAS TRUTER, KNIGHT, LATE CHIEF JUSTICE.—He was a man mild in disposition and gentlemanly in manners, and his figure commanded respect. He was born here, and his education in early days was confined to the colony; and he often related to me how he strove and obtained with difficulty some knowledge of the Latin language. However, his diligence and perseverance attracted notice, and a subscription

was raised for his pursuing his studies in Europe, and he left Africa, I believe, when he was twenty-three years of age. He so distinguished himself at the university that he attracted much notice, and had several applications (after being graduated as advocate) to join the bar before the High Court in Holland. However, with love for his country, and having a desire to be of service to his native land, he returned; and in 1790, I find from the public records that he was already appointed as Deputy Fiscal, and he subsequently held the situations of Secretary to the Court of Justice, Secretary to the Court of Policy, Fiscal or Attorney-General, Political Church Commissioner, and ultimately Chief Justice of the Colony, and knighted. When the old court was abolished and the Supreme Court introduced he received a pension and enjoyed it to his demise. He died as a Christian, calm and resigned, and in the full hope of receiving mercy by the mediation of his Redeemer.

In him I found a kind, warm-hearted friend. When as Deputy Fiscal my health was suffering under the laborious and incessant duties of office, he took me to his country seat at Klyn River, in Caledon district, and I experienced there every attention from himself and lady; and on my return found my health improved. With gratitude I still recollect this friendly act.

His advice was always readily given, and valuable to me in my position; for he was considered an eminent lawyer. He had an enlightened mind, and possessed great calmness and command of temper; in fact, he was a valuable guide, and with him I conversed and communicated on the most friendly and confidential terms.

I ascribe the commencement of that intercourse to my appointment, when Deputy Fiscal, as secretary of a commission of inquiry of which he was the chairman, when I drew his attention, and my manner of recording the proceedings was observed. And it became closer when, as member of a committee to frame a general placard for the colony, he was the president, and I laboured under his more immediate eye. And when I undertook to translate Van der Linden's criminal code for the information of the number of strangers who had settled in the colony and for general use, he kindly lent me his assistance; and I attribute my promotion as member of the Court of Justice and being raised to the bench to his recommendation.

Finally, I became an intimate friend, and his hospitable house and table were at all times open to me. No father could have taken more interest in my welfare than this kindhearted gentleman; and his opinion of my services is expressed in that testimonial to which I have before alluded. With gratitude, therefore, I keep this noble man in remembrance. Honoured and revered be his name to me and mine!

15. LORD CHARLES HENRY SOMERSET, GOVERNOR OF THIS COLONY.—This nobleman noticed me particularly. He was once pleased to offer me to be Sequestrator (an office now held by the Master of the Supreme Court), but averse to pecuniary responsibilities I preferred retaining my office as Deputy Fiscal. His Excellency also, about three years previous to my promotion, wished me to take a membership in the Court of Justice, but the important situation of a judge appeared to me also so responsible, at that period, that I declined; when I

had finished my translation of Van der Linden's code, he placed the Government press at my disposal, and a great part of that work had been printed when Mr. Henry's translation of the whole treatise arrived in the colony, and I found that mine was not necessary, and hence it was not completed for publication.

On several occasions His Excellency was kind and attentive to myself and family.

16. LIEUTENANT-COLONEL CHRISTOPHER BIRD, THE COLONIAL SECRETARY.—From this gentleman I also received instances of favourable consideration and an inclination to forward my views. At one time he seemed disposed to see me chief clerk in the Colonial Office, on another occasion he offered me to be Landdrost of Swellendam; but I preferred the office I then occupied, partly because I considered the judicial line, being the one I had been employed in for so many years, preferable, without pecuniary responsibility, and partly because my family could there not have such means of education as in town.

The conflict of duties in my office between the public prosecutor's and police department, and the detention in court to the detriment of the expedition required in the daily occurring police cases, led me to represent to the Secretary the advantage to the public of a separation of the prosecutor's duties from those of the police. He saw the necessity clearly, and an advocate was appointed as Second Deputy Fiscal, to attend in court to conduct the preliminary examinations and prosecutions in criminal cases, and this placed me exactly in the position of the present Superintendent of Police, and thereby the daily occurring cases were



considerably expedited, and I was consequently relieved of duties in court.

Another act of justice I experienced, namely, forwarding my memorial for increase of salary with his favourable recommendation, so that I obtained from home an addition as before mentioned. In personal intercourse I was met with civility, and when advice was required he gave it always readily and with candour.

17. THE COLONIAL SECRETARY, MR. ALEXANDER.—I cannot fail to remember gratefully how this kind-hearted gentleman recommended my promotion on all occasions in his power, and the liberal hospitality and urbanity of his manners, in which, with many other contemporaries, I had the honour to share.

18. SIR RICHARD BOURKE, K. C. B., LIEUTENANT-GOVERNOR.—It was during the absence of Lord Charles H. Somerset that he acted as Governor. The Commissioners of Inquiry, Messrs. Bigge, Colebroke, and Blair, were present at the same time in discharge of their commissions and duties.

Sir Richard Plasket was then Colonial Secretary, and my old friend, Mr. Dashwood, introduced me to that gentleman, who further brought me under the notice of the Lieutenant-Governor.

The period during his government was one to me of the deepest interest; and I had attracted the notice of the Commissioners of Inquiry. My brother judge, Mr. P. J. Truter, and myself on circuit in 1823 had to defend ourselves on certain charges made against our proceedings at Graham's Town. These were closely scrutinized and terminated to our satisfaction.

The commissioners attended from time to time the Court of Justice, and there had an opportunity of observing me as judge. They extended their examinations to the aboriginal tribes beyond the colony ; and my former travels and researches of the colonial records enabled me to furnish “notes for reference,” as printed and annexed to the report of the commissioners on the native tribes. These and other public proceedings did not escape Sir Richard Bourke’s observation, and served to lay the foundation of a most cordial intercourse, so that I was often a guest at his family table and country residence, and our relation continued uninterrupted until he left the colony ; and when I saw him on board the vessel with which he departed, his last words and expressions of feeling showed evidently that I had lost a valuable friend, and the colony a governor attached to its welfare. Subsequent to his Honour’s arrival at home, he sent me his original likeness as a keepsake ; and his private correspondence since proved that I was not mistaken in considering him a true friend.

He appointed me in 1825 a permanent Sitting Commissioner of the Court of Justice, for daily disposal of police and criminal cases, retaining my seat as member of the court, and raised my salary to £500. By his recommendation I received my appointment as Judge of Police in 1828, and he fixed my salary at £800 per annum. He added to that appointment the one of Resident Magistrate of Cape Town and District, and Cape District, including others already mentioned.

His Honour being considered a good classical scholar and literary character, and besides an experienced

magistrate and soldier, I derived great benefit from his social intercourse ; and never can I forget the attention received both from Sir Richard and Lady Bourke and family by Mrs. Borchers and myself.

19. SIR BENJAMIN D'URBAN.—To this Governor I was introduced in 1834 by the acting Governor, Colonel Wade, who had succeeded Sir Lowry Cole.

Shortly after His Excellency's arrival he communicated to me in an interview, with a feeling of regret, that my salary was for the future to be reduced to £500, under orders received from the Home Government. He felt the hardship of my case and took a deep interest in the matter ; he offered my retirement on a pension, but I continued in the service as before stated, and his representations on my behalf I will not repeat. His urbanity of manners, his friendly disposition, his noble mind in matters relating to the public welfare, his care and anxiety to procure me relief, and the social intercourse with himself and Lady D'Urban left on my mind a deep impression ; and I feel that gratitude is due to the memory of a gentleman who felt for me as a warm-hearted friend up to the moment of his departure. His testimonials left on record speak his sentiments.

20. SIR GEORGE NAPIER.—To this Governor I feel thankful for the interest he also took in my case to obtain an increase to my reduced salary and promotion. He expressed himself favourably regarding my claim and services in a despatch dated 15th March, 1844, and a testimonial of the 31st following. In our intercourse His Excellency was always friendly, and appeared well disposed.

21. **SIR HARRY SMITH, THE GOVERNOR.**—To his Excellency I had been known in my official capacity for many years before his appointment, and I owe obligations for his constantly kind and courteous treatment, and particularly for his favourable opinion in the minutes which he left, on the 3rd May, 1848, on record in the Colonial Office, with regard to my services, on my application for adding the house-rent to my salary.

22. **HIS HONOUR CHARLES HENRY DARLING, ESQ., THE LIEUTENANT-GOVERNOR.**—It was to him that I opened my case and suffering under the severe reduction of my salary. He received it, convinced of the justice of my claim, with proper feeling. During his administration I was treated with civility and attention; and on his leaving the colony he presented me with his portrait, with assurances of esteem.

Under his administration I was appointed as chairman of Commissioners of Inquiry on charges made in 1852 against the Superintendent-Surgeon at Robben Island, and received his letter of thanks. He also expressed his favourable opinion of my conduct as chairman of the committee of the Kafir War Voluntary Contribution Fund, raised in 1852. He forwarded to the Secretary of State my memorial, representing the case with favourable considerations, and recommended me as chairman of the Central Road Board to the Governor, Sir George Cathcart, who appointed me by proclamation in 1853. He received the address of the Legislative Council and House of Assembly in 1854 to bring my services to the notice of Her Majesty's Government, and returned a favourable message. He forwarded my memorial for redress to the Secretary of

State in 1854, and appeared to feel that my case deserved favourable consideration.

23. SIR GEORGE GREY, K.C.B.—This Governor had the kindness in May, 1855, with reference to the address of the House of Assembly and despatches of Lieutenant-Governor Darling regarding my case, to call the attention of the Assembly to the subject, and for reasons therein stated, proposing to decide in what manner and to what extent my claims should be met, assuring the Assembly that he would be happy to concur with Parliament in doing that which might be thought just and right in the case.

This proposal was graciously met by the House of Assembly on the 5th May, 1855, by the grant of £2,000. His Excellency's message to the address was favourable, and by Government letter of 9th June, 1855, this sum was placed at my disposal, as above stated; and he kindly expressed that it had afforded him much pleasure to recommend and sanction the act of the two Houses; and alluded to the mark of distinction and reward of my services, and congratulated me as the first officer to receive it from the newly-constituted Parliament in this colony.

Sir George further appointed me to act as Judge and Superintendent of Police in March, 1855, and I continued to act until May, 1856, when in a letter of the 29th of that month the Colonial Secretary, the Honourable Mr. Rawson W. Rawson, conveyed to me the Governor's high appreciation of the zeal and efficiency with which I had discharged these duties.

Besides these public acts, I have been favoured with many private instances of kindness, which

I cannot remember without a feeling of obligation and gratitude.

24. Amongst those who showed good feeling I cannot omit to mention Sir JOHN BELL, Secretary to Government under the Bourke, D'Urban, Cole, Napier, and Smith administrations. In our official intercourse he was always civil, open, and candid, and ready to meet my representations, and if my pecuniary losses could have been redressed by his exertions I feel confident that he would have done all in his power to meet my anxiety. He was particularly kind to my son-in-law, Mr. William Smith, when chief clerk under him in the Colonial Office.

25. THE ATTORNEY-GENERAL, THE HONOURABLE WILLIAM PORTER, ESQUIRE.—This gentleman has, since his arrival in the colony in 1839, been one of my official friends, and we always met on amicable terms. His communications were kind, and his advice on legal and other points to me valuable. I found him always ready to aid both in public matters and as a private friend. I received at his hands and hospitable board many acts which will be ever kept in remembrance; and his opinions of my services are amply expressed in a testimonial of 1852 before mentioned, and in his address when a piece of plate was presented by him in name of the subscribers on my retirement in 1857.

26. SIR JOHN WYLDE, KNIGHT, OUR LATE CHIEF JUSTICE.—It was under his Honour that, in 1828, I commenced my services when the new administration of justice was introduced by royal charter. The novelty of the system, and new rules adopted, caused me to apply several times for guidance. The receptions were courteous and my applications readily attended to. And

in the cases of appeal from my court to the Supreme (even when we differed in opinions) have had with me due weight ; and the expounding of the law on these occasions from the bench has been to me of real service. Our intercourse has always been friendly. And his opinion regarding my services was expressed not only in one testimonial given jointly with the Judges of the Supreme Court of 1836, but in another from himself in July, 1851.

27. Amongst those who interested themselves for me in Parliament, I feel particularly obliged to Mr. JOHN FAIRBAIRN, who moved, and Mr. HERCULES CROSSE JARVIS, who seconded the resolution regarding my services so favourably in the House of Assembly on the 19th September, 1854 ; also

28. SIR ANDRIES STOCKENSTROM, BARONET, who moved the resolution above quoted in the Legislative Council, unanimously adopted. It is to his energy and the powerful speech which appears in a former section that I ascribe my complete success in obtaining the gratuity of £2,000. I owe infinite obligation to that gentleman, who so nobly sustained my cause. He explained sufficiently my own and our relative positions, which I refrain from repeating or adding to, knowing his delicate feelings on that subject.

29. To my much respected, and now lamented friend, the late Honourable WILLIAM HOPE, Auditor-General, I feel also much obliged. It was he who generously made the special move in the House of Assembly to grant me at once the sum of £2,000, instead of £1,000 and an annual increase of £100, which was under discussion.

30. And I cannot but keep in thankful remembrance the deep interest evinced by the Honourable H. E. RUTHERFOORD, Member of the Legislative Council, by moving that my case should be brought forward, and his special inquiry on that subject.

31. I feel that I should not close without remembering with a sense of gratitude how the Honourable RAWSON W. RAWSON, C.B., our Colonial Secretary, received and forwarded my applications. He appeared to feel much for my position, and I am under the impression that he accelerated my wishes upon principles of justice and equity; and that it gave him real pleasure to convey to me the decision of his Excellency the Governor, and the Houses of Parliament, in the manner he did.

32. Last and not least, I feel much obliged to the now Honourable Mr. Justice E. B. WATERMEYER, for his legal opinion and the interest taken in my case, when advocate and in parliament. These have been to me of the greatest service.

33. Finally, I cannot withhold expressing my grateful feelings towards that Parliament who, under a liberal constitution granted by our Gracious Sovereign, felt justified to make a grant so liberal as they did in my case.

And now, allow me to record my sense of gratitude and obligation, for these and other acts of benevolence to myself and family, by kind relatives and friends, my fellow-servants and citizens; and to close with thanks to Him who, in His infinite goodness and mercy, has thus far guided my steps. May the rest of my days be devoted to His service, and my end be blessed, calm, and resigned, as that of my beloved partner in life!



In conclusion, I wish to observe that the idea of writing my autobiography originated from seeing that of the late Sir John Barrow, Bart. (the famous traveller in South Africa) in the Public Library. It struck me that I could not be very singular, or wrong, in copying his example.

Consequently, I made the attempt, intending to leave it as a legacy to my children, taking the lead from that volume; but when writing my manuscript I was induced to submit it successively to our respected Governor, Sir George Grey, whose opinion as being an author I was anxious to elicit; and when I had finished, His Excellency thought that it would be a work that would not only be read with interest in the colony, but also at home, and that it might be of use to my young African friends, to prove that the service of the colony could lead to establish character by application and perseverance.

And having taken this suggestion, and succeeded in obtaining subscribers to cover nearly the expense of printing and publishing, I introduce this my literary bantling, hoping that my descendants and friends will treat it tenderly and with indulgence; and that, if my "courteous reader" should feel inclined to attribute it to the love of self-praise, he should remember,

- 1st. That the documents tending towards that interpretation, are to be considered as mostly published officially long before, in furtherance of my case with Government and Parliament; and that the narrative would not be complete without them.
- 2d. That I can have no personal view or interest in the publication, for my public life is closed, and I have

no other pursuit by which I can calculate upon advantage for the future. I hope that the veteran of seventy-three years, who in the natural course of life (if he be spared) can but calculate upon a very short span, will, in charity and justice to his character, be considered above such vanity. The main object remains as originally intended, namely, to leave a memento to his children. But, if it have also the tendency, which Sir George Grey supposed, in furthering emulation among the beginners in the colonial service, I shall feel my trouble and expense amply rewarded.

- 3d. In wishing to note my relative position with the Government above mentioned, I could not avoid some repetitions of the Memoir—and intended to save reference.

## ADDENDA.

---

### ANNEXURES TO SECTION I, ON "THE ANCESTORS."

---

Poem by the Rev. Mr. Borchers, added to his Family Register.

IN DUTCH.

Gelyk de baren van de zee, zoo rollen jaren en geslachten  
Het eene voor, het andere na, voorby en heen, eer wy 't verwachten.  
Het voorgeslacht zonk weg in 't meer der Eeuwigheid ;  
Ons die nu leven is hetzelfde lot bereid,  
En gy ! myn lieve nageslacht zult eenmaal op den vloed der lyden  
Ook na datzelfde grondloos meer uw levenstroom zien henenglyden.  
Maar in den jongsten dag herleven w' allen weer ;  
Dan is de tyd voorby, dan heerscht de dood niet meer.  
Och ! mogt ik allen in Gods gunst u in dit tydstip zien ontwaken,  
En tot des Hoogen Rechterstroon met my blymoedig zien genaken  
Want wyl we allen eens gaan sterven, vroeg of spâe,  
Beveel 'k u allen aan, en bid om Zyn genâe.

TRANSLATION ATTEMPTED IN PROSE.

Such as the move of ocean's waves, thus roll years and generations.  
The one advances, the other succeeds and passes on—under  
anticipation.

And generations have sunk into the lake of Eternity ;  
We who now live are destined to submit to the same fate,  
And you, my dear posterity, shall once find in the flood of time  
Your stream of life glide towards that fathomless lake.  
But in the day of judgment we shall revive ;  
Time will be past and death shall reign no more.  
O ! may I see you all in that important eve rise favoured by the  
Lord,

And with me approach with joy, the Almighty Judge's Throne.  
For as we are destined to depart, be it early or late,  
I resign you to our Heavenly Father, and may He grant you grace.

Inscription on the Silver Vase presented to the Rev. Mr. Borchersds.

IN DUTCH.

Opgedragen door de gemeente te Stellenbosch aan den zeer waardigen Leeraar den Wel-Eerwaarden Heer Meent Borchersds, op den 22sten October, 1826, zynde den dag waarop zyn Wel-Eerwaarde deszelfs veertig-jarige leerrede heeft gedaan, als een blyk van hunne opregte achting en toegenegenheid voor de diensten welke zyn Wel-Eerwaarde gedurende opgemeld langdurig tydvak met zoo veel yver en getrouwheid aldaar heeft waargenomen.

TRANSLATED.

Presented by the congregation at Stellenbosch to the very worthy Minister, the Reverend Mr. Meent Borchersds, on the 22nd October, 1826, being the day upon which he preached the fortieth anniversary sermon at that place—in testimony of their true esteem and regard for the services which his Reverence performed during such a long period with so much zeal and fidelity.







UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY  
Los Angeles  
This book is DUE on the last date stamped below.

JAN 29 1969

CD  
RI

30 1969

RENEWAL MAY 14 1970



UC SOUTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY



**AA** 000 997 438 7

DT  
844.2  
B64A2

